

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 931SH.

- For proper handset use, read "First Step Guide" in 931SH Starter Guide and this guide beforehand.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 931SH is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.19-34**) about unclear or missing information.

Chapter Contents At A Glance

| | |
|---------------------------------|----|
| Getting Started | 1 |
| Basic Operations | 2 |
| Text Entry | 3 |
| Phone Book | 4 |
| Calling | 5 |
| Messaging | 6 |
| Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser | 7 |
| Digital TV | 8 |
| Camera & Imaging | 9 |
| Media Player | 10 |
| SI Applications | 11 |
| Data Folder & Memory Card | 12 |
| PIM/Lifestyle Tools | 13 |
| Clocks/Gauges Tools | 14 |
| Doc./Rec. Tools | 15 |
| Entertainment | 16 |
| Communication Services | 17 |
| Connectivity | 18 |
| Appendix | 19 |

■ Abbreviated Steps

In this guide, handset operations are abbreviated as follows. (Most operations described for Touch Panel and handset keys.)

Tap menu item, Softkey, indicator, etc. on Display or press the corresponding key.


MENU or  → **Tools** → **Highlight Doc./Rec. tab** → **ASCII Art** → **Select entry**


Tap item or tap it twice on Display, or use ,  or  to highlight the item and press .

■ Multi Selector





 Press center

 Press left/right

 Press up/down

 Press up/down/left/right

• "a" indicates key press point (e.g., : left, : up).

■ Side Keys



Key inscriptions are indicated in white on black.



• : Press  or 

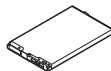
- Most operation descriptions are based on default settings with Slider open (P.1-2) in Standby (P.1-9).
- Operations and results may differ by handset status.
- Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only.
- Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or applications which require Japanese ability to use as intended.

| | | | | | |
|---|------|--|------|---|-------|
| Guide Usage Notes | ii | Troubleshooting | 4-12 | 8 Digital TV | |
| Table of Contents | iii | 5 Calling | | Digital TV | 8-2 |
| Accessory | v | Emergency Calls | 5-2 | TV Player | 8-7 |
| Safety Precautions | vi | Voice Calling | 5-3 | TV Timer | 8-10 |
| 1 Getting Started | | Video Calling..... | 5-6 | Additional Functions..... | 8-11 |
| Handset Parts | 1-2 | Decoration Call..... | 5-8 | Troubleshooting | 8-17 |
| USIM Card | 1-4 | Speed Dial | 5-9 | 9 Camera & Imaging | |
| Battery | 1-6 | Call Time & Call Cost | 5-11 | Camera | 9-2 |
| Charging Battery | 1-7 | Optional Services..... | 5-12 | Photo Camera | 9-4 |
| Power On/Off | 1-9 | Additional Functions..... | 5-14 | Video Camera | 9-6 |
| Indicators | 1-10 | Troubleshooting | 5-23 | Shooting Modes | 9-7 |
| Mobile Manners & Security Codes... 1-12 | | 6 Messaging | | Editing Images..... | 9-10 |
| 2 Basic Operations | | Messaging..... | 6-2 | Printing..... | 9-14 |
| Basic Operations..... | 2-2 | Sending Messages | 6-4 | Additional Functions..... | 9-15 |
| Accessing Functions | 2-6 | Incoming Messages | 6-8 | Troubleshooting | 9-19 |
| Motion Control..... | 2-15 | Handling Messages..... | 6-10 | 10 Media Player | |
| Basic Functions | 2-17 | Chat Folder | 6-13 | Media Player..... | 10-2 |
| Handset Security | 2-23 | Mail Groups..... | 6-14 | Music | 10-5 |
| Software Update | 2-26 | PC Mail | 6-15 | Video..... | 10-6 |
| Double Number | 2-27 | Additional Functions..... | 6-18 | Playlists | 10-7 |
| Additional Functions | 2-30 | Troubleshooting | 6-32 | Additional Functions..... | 10-8 |
| Troubleshooting | 2-38 | 7 Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser | | Troubleshooting | 10-11 |
| 3 Text Entry | | Internet Services | 7-2 | 11 S! Applications | |
| Text Entry | 3-2 | Yahoo! Keitai..... | 7-3 | S! Appli..... | 11-2 |
| User Dictionary..... | 3-7 | PC Site Browser | 7-4 | Additional Functions..... | 11-3 |
| Additional Functions | 3-8 | Browsing | 7-5 | Troubleshooting | 11-5 |
| 4 Phone Book | | Bookmarks & Saved Pages | 7-7 | 12 Data Folder & Memory Card | |
| Phone Book | 4-2 | RSS Feeds..... | 7-8 | Data Folder..... | 12-2 |
| S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)... 4-5 | | Additional Functions..... | 7-9 | Memory Card..... | 12-5 |
| Additional Functions | 4-8 | Troubleshooting | 7-16 | Backup..... | 12-9 |

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------|----------------------------------|-------|--------------------------|-------|
| Additional Functions | 12-11 | Create QR Code | 15-11 | Character Codes | 19-7 |
| Troubleshooting | 12-14 | Scan Card | 15-12 | Weather Indicators | 19-13 |
| 13 PIM/Lifestyle Tools | | Text Scanner..... | 15-13 | Specifications..... | 19-14 |
| Calendar & Tasks | 13-2 | Additional Functions | 15-14 | Menu List | 19-19 |
| Alarms..... | 13-6 | Troubleshooting | 15-20 | Index | 19-26 |
| Wakeup TV..... | 13-8 | 16 Entertainment | | Warranty & Service | 19-33 |
| Calculator | 13-10 | Mobile Widget..... | 16-2 | Customer Service..... | 19-34 |
| Expenses Memo..... | 13-11 | S! Quick News | 16-5 | | |
| Osaifu-Keitai® | 13-12 | S! Information Channel..... | 16-6 | | |
| Pretense Call | 13-15 | e-Books | 16-7 | | |
| Additional Functions | 13-16 | Additional Functions | 16-8 | | |
| Troubleshooting | 13-23 | Troubleshooting | 16-13 | | |
| 14 Clocks/Gauges Tools | | 17 Communication Services | | | |
| Stopwatch..... | 14-2 | S! Town & S! Loop | 17-2 | | |
| Countdown Timer | 14-3 | S! Friend's Status..... | 17-3 | | |
| World Clock | 14-4 | S! Circle Talk..... | 17-6 | | |
| Hour Minder..... | 14-5 | Near Chat | 17-8 | | |
| Pedometer | 14-6 | Additional Functions | 17-9 | | |
| Compass..... | 14-8 | Troubleshooting | 17-11 | | |
| S! GPS Navi | 14-9 | 18 Connectivity | | | |
| Battery Meter..... | 14-11 | Infrared..... | 18-2 | | |
| Additional Functions | 14-12 | IC Transmission | 18-5 | | |
| 15 Doc./Rec. Tools | | Bluetooth® | 18-7 | | |
| Dictionary | 15-2 | Mass Storage..... | 18-10 | | |
| Search..... | 15-4 | Additional Functions | 18-11 | | |
| Document Viewer..... | 15-5 | Troubleshooting | 18-13 | | |
| Notepad..... | 15-6 | 19 Appendix | | | |
| Scratch Pad | 15-7 | Troubleshooting | 19-2 | | |
| ASCII Art | 15-8 | Key Assignments | 19-4 | | |
| Voice Recorder | 15-9 | Pager Codes | 19-6 | | |
| Scan Barcode..... | 15-10 | | | | |

Accessory

■ Battery (SHBBZ1)



- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-34).
- Use specified Charger/Headphones (sold separately) only.

Safety Precautions







Read safety precautions before using handset.

- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

| | |
|--|---|
|  DANGER | Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use |
|  WARNING | Risk of death or serious injury from improper use |
|  CAUTION | Risk of serious injury or damage to property from improper use |

These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
|  | Prohibited actions |
| Prohibited | |
|  | Disassembly prohibited |
| Do Not Disassemble | |
|  | Exposure to liquids prohibited |
| Avoid Liquids Or Moisture | |
|  | Use with wet hands prohibited |
| Do Not Use Wet Hands | |
|  | Compulsory actions |
| Compulsory | |
|  | Unplug Charger from outlet |
| Disconnect Power Source | |

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card (Sold Separately)

DANGER

Use specified battery, Charger (sold separately) and Desktop Holder (sold separately) only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Compulsory

Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.



Do Not Disassemble

Do not expose handset or related hardware to liquids.

Do not leave handset or related hardware wet after exposure to water, pet urine, etc., and do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction. Use them in an appropriate place properly.



Avoid Liquids Or Moisture

Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).

May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.



Prohibited

Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

WARNING

Do not place handset, battery or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset/Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion; turn handset off before using Osaifu-Keitai® at gas stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).



Compulsory

Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.

Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:

Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger, turn off handset, then remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself.



Compulsory

Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from charging terminals or External Device Port.

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

CAUTION

Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.

Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; be especially careful when Vibration is set.



Prohibited

Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.

Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.



Compulsory

Safety Precautions

If your child is using handset and related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage. Misuse may cause injury, etc.



Compulsory

Battery

DANGER

Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Do not dispose of battery in fire.
Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.

Eyes may be severely damaged.



Compulsory

WARNING

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately.

May cause skin damage.



Compulsory

If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.

Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

CAUTION

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.

Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Prohibited

Handset

WARNING

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.

Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.



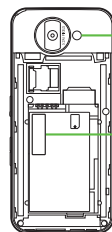
Prohibited

CAUTION:

Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.

EN60825-1:1994 A1:2002 & A2:2001

CLASS 1
LED Product



Mobile Light

CAUTION-CLASS 1M
LED RADIATION WHEN OPEN
DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH
OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS

■ Mobile Light LED Properties

- Emission Duration: Continuous
- Wavelength
White: 400 - 700 nm
- Maximum Emission Output
White: 840 μ W (1.2 mW inside handset)

Do not use handset while driving or cycling.

Accidents may result.

Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park in a legal parking space beforehand.



Prohibited

Turn handset power off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.

May cause electronic malfunctions, etc. Be especially careful near the following devices:

Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.



Compulsory

Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.

Cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.

Handset use may impair aircraft operation. Turning on handset power aboard aircraft is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty.



Compulsory

Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.

May cause heart damage.



Compulsory

If thunder is heard while outdoors, turn power off; find cover.

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.



Compulsory

Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions.

Eyesight may be affected.



Prohibited

Confirm there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently.

Handset may slip, resulting in injury or breakage.



Prohibited

**CAUTION****Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.**

Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.



Compulsory

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

Metal and other materials (P.19-14) may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.



Compulsory

Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.

Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.



Prohibited

Do not swing handset by strap.

May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.



Prohibited

Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.

Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.



Compulsory

Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Prohibited

Keep fingers, straps, etc. outside when opening/closing Slider.

May cause injury, breakage, etc.



Compulsory

Watch TV from a distance in good light.

Watching in poor light or too close may affect eyesight.



Compulsory

Moderate handset volume when using Headphones.

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Compulsory

Charger (Sold Separately)

 **WARNING**

Do not charge battery on unstable surfaces.

Handset may fall and disconnect from Charger or malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Do not cover/wrap Charger while charging.

Charger may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.

- AC Charger (sold separately):
AC 100V-240V Input
- In-Car Charger (sold separately); use
in negative earth vehicles only):
DC 12V/24V Input



Prohibited

Do not use power adapters. Using Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug and disconnect it.

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Disconnect Power Source

Use only the specified fuse for In-Car Charger (sold separately).

Non-specified fuse may cause fire or malfunction. See In-Car Charger manual for details.



Compulsory

If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug and disconnect it immediately.

May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Disconnect Power Source

If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with a dry cloth.

Fire may result.



Compulsory

Do not use In-Car Charger (sold separately) in positive earth vehicles.

May cause fire, etc. Use in negative earth vehicles only.



Prohibited

Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and Charger/Desktop Holder charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.



Compulsory

Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.

May cause electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Do Not Use Wet Hands

Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Prohibited

 **CAUTION**

Grasp plug and disconnect Charger before cleaning.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Disconnect Power Source

Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger.

Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.



Compulsory

Do not subject AC Charger (sold separately) to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.

May cause malfunction or injury.



Prohibited

Do not touch charging terminals of Desktop Holder (sold separately) while it is connected to the outlet.

May cause burn injuries.



Prohibited

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "**Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment**"

(Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "**Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc.**" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



WARNING

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.



Compulsory

If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.

Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.



Compulsory

Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:



Compulsory

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.

Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.



Compulsory

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of files saved on handset/Memory Card. Keep separate copies of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions/TV signal reception may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- For proper use of Memory Card (sold separately), read the manual beforehand.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
Eavesdropping
Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.
- An export license may be required to carry the handset into other countries if it is to be used by or transferred to another person. However, no such license is required when you take the handset abroad for personal use on a vacation or business trip and then bring it back. Export control regulations in the United States provide that an export license granted by the US government is required to carry the handset into Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan or Syria.

Handset & Hardware Care

- Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
 - Keep handset away from precipitation.
 - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
 - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (restroom, bath/shower room, etc.).
 - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
 - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5°C - 35°C (35% - 85% humidity).
- Avoid extreme temperatures and direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Battery may not charge properly if ports/terminals are obstructed by dust, etc. Clean with a dry cloth, cotton swab, etc.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid scratching handset Display.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
 - Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset inside handbags, packs, etc.

- Connect only specified products to Headphone Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.
- Do not remove Memory Card or turn off handset power while using the card; may result in data loss or malfunction.
- When walking outside, moderate handset volume to avoid accidents.
- Do not use Desktop Holder (sold separately) inside vehicles. Vibration may damage handset, etc.

Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Applications; TV. After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (P.2-30) to restore usability.

Mobile Camera

- Mind your manners when using handset camera.
- Test the camera before capturing/recording special moments.
- Do not use handset camera in places where photography or videography is prohibited.

Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

CE Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 931SH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address: <http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/>

Battery - CAUTION

Use specified battery or Charger only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide*. Highest SAR value:

| Model | At the Ear** | On the Body |
|-------|--------------|-------------|
| 931SH | 1.157 W/kg | 0.488 W/kg |

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network. The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

*Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.
**Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. Reorient/relocate the receiving antenna.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

Highest SAR value:

| Model | FCC ID | At the Ear | On the Body |
|-------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 931SH | APYHRO00078 | 0.518 W/kg | 0.728 W/kg |

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found at <https://fjallfloss.fcc.gov/oetcf/eas/reports/GenericSearch.cfm> under the Display Grant section after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table on the left). Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

Rights, Trademarks & Patents

Portrait Rights

Portrait rights protect individuals' right to refuse to be photographed or to refuse unauthorized publication/use of their photographs. Portrait rights consist of the right to privacy, which is applicable to all persons, and the right to publicity, which protects the interests of celebrities. Therefore, photographing others including celebrities and publicizing/distributing their photographs without permission is illegal; use handset camera responsibly.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA. See <http://www.mpegla.com>. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.



Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc. RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Safety Precautions

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application. Powered by JBlend™. Copyright 1997-2008 Aplix Corporation.

All rights reserved.

JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



microSDHC™, microSD™ and miniSD™ are trademarks of the SD Card Association.

NetFront®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.

Copyright© 1996-2008 ACCESS Co., Ltd. ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan or other countries.

This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

IrSimple™, IrSS™ and IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of the Infrared Data Association®.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license.

The frequency band utilized by handset Bluetooth® function is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereafter "other radio stations").

- 1 Before using Bluetooth®, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
- 2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or cancel Bluetooth® function immediately.
- 3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.

SoftBank Customer Center, General Information
From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.
From landlines, see **P.19-34** "Customer Service."

This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with FHSS modulation. Maximum transmission radius is 10 meters (32 feet).

2.4FH1

Microsoft, PowerPoint and Excel are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™. Mascot Capsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation.
©2002-2008 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
FeliCa is a registered trademark of FeliCa Network, Inc.

Osaifu-Keitai is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO, INC.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.



This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe Flash Lite Copyright © 2003-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

Smartlink, VeilView and Wakeup TV are trademarks or registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.



Document Viewer is enabled by Picstel Technologies.

Picstel, Picstel Powered, Picstel Viewer, Picstel File Viewer, Picstel Document Viewer, Picstel PDF Viewer and the Picstel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picstel Technologies Ltd.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

Genius English-Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

Genius Japanese-English Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

Meikyo Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

- All text in Wikipedia is available under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License.
- Genius EJ-Dic MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2008
- Genius JE-Dic MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2008
- Meikyo J-Dic MX.net ©KITAHARA Yasuo & Taishukan, 2008
- Imidas Encyclopedia ©SHUEISHA Inc.
- Encyclopedia Nipponica, Digital Daijisen, PROGRESSIVE English-Japanese Dictionary, PROGRESSIVE Japanese-English Dictionary ©Shogakukan Inc.
- Hot Pepper Pockets is a registered trademark of Recruit Co., Ltd.



EUPHONY™ (a comprehensive sound enhancement system utilizing a virtual sound source processing technology) is a trademark of DiMAGIC Co., Ltd.

PhotoSolid® and FaceSolid™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of Morpho, Inc.

SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

CP8 PATENT

Video Call, S! Application, Customized Screen, Movie Sha-mail, Sha-mail, 3D Pictogram, Input Memory, Near Chat, Multi Job, S! Mail, Graphic Mail, Feeling Mail, S! Information Channel, S! Town, S! Loop, PC Site Browser, Weather Indicator, S! Quick News, S! Addressbook Back-up, S! Circle Talk, S! Friend's Status, Lifestyle-Appli, S! Music Connect, PC Mail, S! GPS Navi, Double Number, Decoration Call, Navi Appli, Secure Remote Lock and Mobile Widget are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

931SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law. 931SH has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 0.894 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm>
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
<http://www.arib-empf.org/initiation/sar.html> (Japanese)

*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

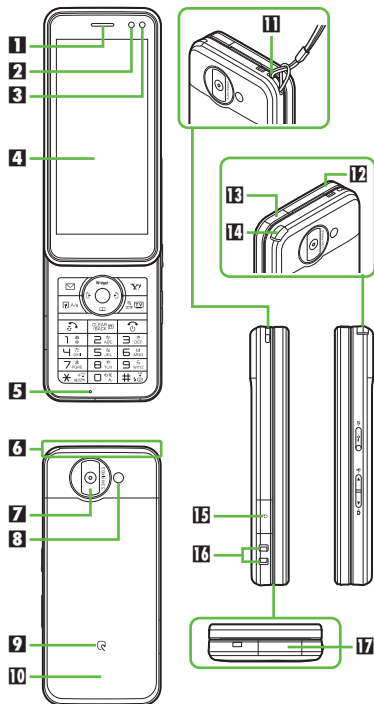
| | |
|---------------------------------------|------------|
| Handset Parts | 1-2 |
| Parts & Functions | 1-2 |
| USIM Card | 1-4 |
| About USIM Card | 1-4 |
| USIM Card Installation..... | 1-5 |
| Battery | 1-6 |
| Battery Installation..... | 1-6 |
| Charging Battery | 1-7 |
| Charging Battery (AC Charger) | 1-7 |
| Charging Battery (In-Car Charger).... | 1-8 |

| | |
|--|-------------|
| Power On/Off | 1-9 |
| Handset Power On/Off | 1-9 |
| Indicators | 1-10 |
| Mobile Manners & Security Codes ... | 1-12 |
| Manner Mode & Security Codes | 1-12 |

1

Getting Started

Parts & Functions



- 1** Earpiece
- 2** Small Light
- 3** Light Sensor
- 4** Display & Touch Panel
- 5** Microphone
- 6** Internal Antenna Location
- 7** External Camera (lens cover)
- 8** Mobile Light
- 9** Logo
- 10** Battery Cover
- 11** Strap Eyelet
- 12** Speaker
- 13** Infrared Port
- 14** Antenna (for TV reception)
- 15** Headphone Port (with Port Cover)
- 16** Charging Terminals
- 17** External Device Port (with Port Cover)

- For Touch Panel operations, see P.2-4 "Touch Panel."
- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over Light Sensor or Internal Antenna area.
- Replace Port Cover after Port use.
- Avoid metallic straps; Antenna sensitivity may be affected.

Slider Positions

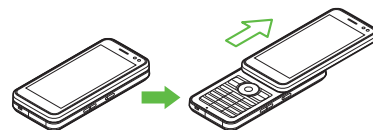
Slider Closed



Use Keypad Lock to prevent accidental operation/function activation.

Slider Open

Slide Display until it stops.

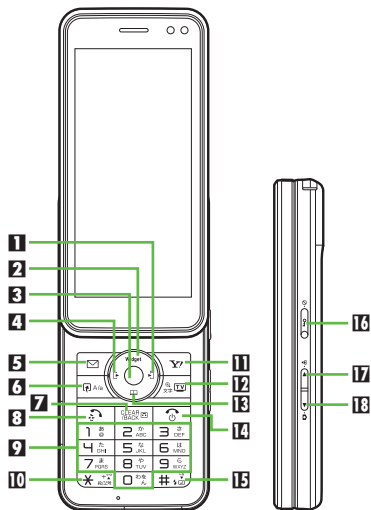


Slider Precautions

- Do not forcefully slide Display; damage may result.
- Avoid touching active Display when opening/closing Slider; may induce unintended Touch Panel operation.

Handset Keys

Keys are indicated in this guide as shown.


1 Multi Selector (right)

Open Received Calls. Long Press to activate/cancel infrared.

2 Multi Selector (up)

Open Mobile Widget window. Long Press to open PC Site Browser menu.

3 Center Key

Open Main Menu.

4 Multi Selector (left)

Open Dialed Numbers. Long Press to activate/cancel Bluetooth®.

5 Mail Key

Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open S! Mail Composition window.

6 Shortcuts & A/a Key

Open Shortcuts menu.

7 Clear/Back Key

Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.

8 Start Key

Open All Calls. Long Press to open Double Number Mode menu.

9 Keypad

Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to open Phone Book.

10 * Key

Enter *, +, P, ? and -. Long Press to open S! Friend's Status member list.

11 Yahoo! Keitai Key

Open Yahoo! Keitai portal. Long Press to activate Familink Remote.

12 TV & Text Key

Activate TV. Long Press to open Change Menu window.

13 Multi Selector (down)

Open Phone Book. Long Press to create new Phone Book entries.

14 Power On/Off Key

Toggle Standby display. Long Press to turn handset power off.

15 # Key

Enter #. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

Side Keys

16 Keypad Lock Key

Activate/cancel Keypad Lock. Long Press to activate VeilView.

17 Volume Up Key

Closed: Check e-money balance. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

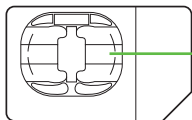
18 Volume Down Key

Show/hide Softkeys. Long Press to start Pretence Call.

About USIM Card

USIM Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset. Save Phone Book entries on USIM Card Phone Book to use them on other SoftBank handsets. Depending on the USIM Card in use, some entry items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

Precautions



IC Chip

- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result. Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-34).

USIM PINs

There are two Security Codes for USIM Card; both are **9999** by default.

| | |
|------|--|
| PIN | Security Code to prevent unauthorized use of handset |
| PIN2 | Required to clear Call Costs and to set Max Cost, etc. |

PIN Lock

- Entering incorrect PIN three consecutive times activates PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock, limiting handset use.

Canceled PIN Lock

- Contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-34) for your Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) and follow these steps:

Enter PUK Code ➔ OK or  ➔

Enter new PIN/PIN2 ➔ OK or  ➔

Re-enter new PIN/PIN2 ➔ OK or 

- Write down PUK code.

PUK Lock

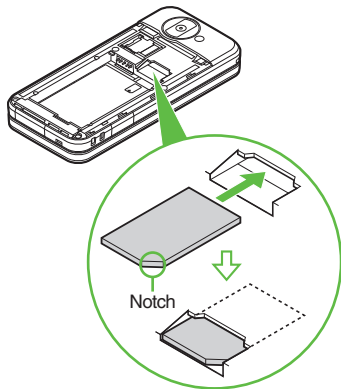
- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times activates PUK Lock, disabling handset. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-34) for recovery.

USIM Card Installation

- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

Inserting

- 1 Remove battery (P.1-6)
- 2 Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing down

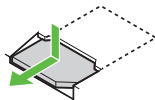


- Reinstall battery (P.1-6).

Removing

Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

- 1 Remove battery (P.1-6)
- 2 Gently slide out USIM Card as shown



- Reinstall battery (P.1-6).

After Repairs, USIM Card Replacement or Handset Upgrade/Replacement

- Some downloaded files may be inaccessible. In addition, S! Applications, BookSurfing®, S! Town and Near Chat may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.

Battery Installation

About Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable or affect files/settings.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Lithium-ion Battery

- This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

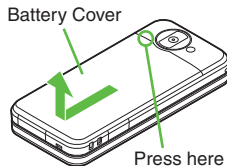


Li-ion00

- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown above.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not short-circuit or disassemble battery.

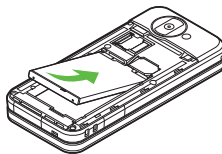
Inserting & Removing

1 Remove cover



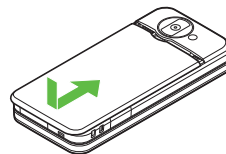
- Press and slide then lift as shown.

2 Insert battery



- With logo side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

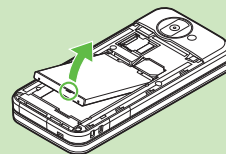
3 Close cover



- Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.

Removing

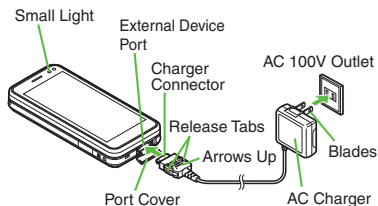
- Turn handset power off and lift battery as shown.



Charging Battery (AC Charger)

Battery must be inserted in handset to charge it.

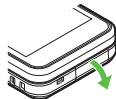
- Use specified AC Charger **ZTDAA1** (sold separately) only. In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger."
- Handset and AC Charger may warm during charging.



Important AC Charger Usage Note

- Fold back blades after charging. Do not pull, bend or twist the cord.

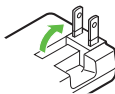
1 Open Port Cover as shown



2 Connect AC Charger

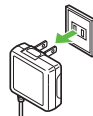
- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

3 Extend blades and plug AC Charger into AC outlet



- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

4 Unplug AC Charger



- Pull AC Charger straight out.

5 Disconnect handset

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.

6 Fold back blades and replace Port Cover

When Small Light Flashes

- Battery is unchargeable; may be defective or simply at the end of its life; replace it.

USB Charge

- Connect handset (with power on) to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

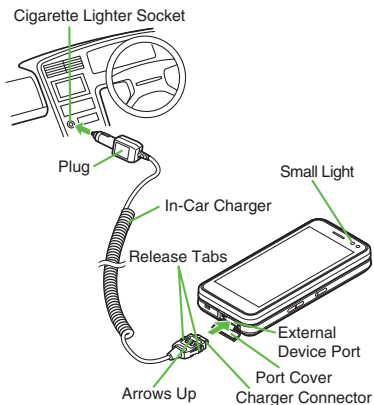
Charging Battery Overseas

- SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

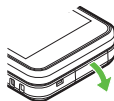
1 Charging Battery (In-Car Charger)

Getting Started

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.



1 Open Port Cover as shown



2 Connect In-Car Charger

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

3 Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket

4 Start car engine

- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

5 Unplug Charger

6 Disconnect handset

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.

7 Replace Port Cover

Important In-Car Charger Usage Notes

- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.






Handset Power On/Off

Power On

Follow these steps when powering on 931SH for the first time:

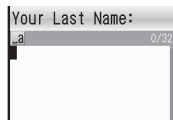
1 (Long)

- After Power On Graphic, follow the steps below.

 →  → **MENU** or  → **いいえ**
 → **設定** → **Language** → **English** →
 (Long) →  (Long) → Change
 Menu window opens

2 Select option

Guide descriptions are based on Standard Menu.



- My Details setup starts.

3 Enter last name → Done or → Enter first name → Done or

- Change Menu display option confirmation appears.

4 Yes or No






Standby

- Select **No** to enter Standby immediately after powering on.

When USIM Card is Not Installed

- Insert USIM Card** appears; insert the card to use handset.

Retrieving Network Information

Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when Touch Panel operation is performed or ,  or  is pressed for the first time in Standby.



Follow these steps to retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services and TV; retrieval automatically sets Clock:

1 Yes → Retrieval starts

- A confirmation appears after retrieval.

2 OK or

Power Off

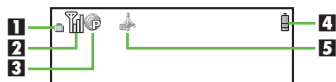
1 (Long)

- After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

Indicators

☑, 📶 and 📶 indicate line type in Dual Mode (P.2-27).

■ Basic Status



| | | |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | | International roaming in progress |
| 2 | | Signal Strength ¹ |
| 3 | | Waiting/packet transmission in progress (3G) |
| | | Waiting/packet transmission in progress (GSM) |
| | | Packet transmission available (3G) |
| 4 | | Packet transmission available (GSM) |
| | | Battery strength (% ² appears in turn) |
| 5 | | IP Service enabled ³ |

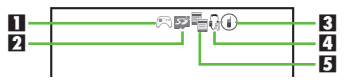
¹The more bars the better.

²Battery strength % is an approximation.

³Appears when Decoration Call, S! Appli communication or Mobile Widget is enabled.

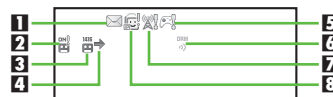
☑ accompanies 📶 even if packet transmission is not in progress. Both indicators disappear when Decoration Call, S! Appli Notification Setting and Mobile Widget Notification Setting are **Off**.

■ Function Status



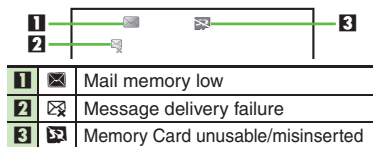
| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | | Active S! Application |
| | | Paused S! Application |
| | | Music playback in progress |
| | | TV recording in progress (handset) |
| | | TV recording in progress (Memory Card) |
| 2 | | Memory Card inserted |
| | | Memory Card in use |
| | | Memory Card formatting |
| 3 | | TV Timer/TV Recording Timer set |
| | | Compass Indicator |
| 4 | | Music playback in progress (via Bluetooth [®]) |
| | | Multiple functions (Multi Job) active |

■ Notifications



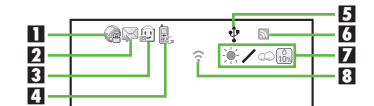
| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | | Unread mail |
| | | Unread Delivery Report |
| 2 | | Answer Phone active & message recorded |
| | | Answer Phone canceled & message recorded |
| 3 | | New Voicemail |
| 4 | | Missed Call or new mail on idle line |
| 5 | | S! Appli Notification |
| 6 | | Contents Key received |
| 7 | | Unread S! Information Channel info |
| | | Software Update result |
| 8 | | Unread S! Quick News info |
| | | Unread S! Friend's Status notification |

■ Warnings



| | | |
|---|--|----------------------------------|
| 1 | | Mail memory low |
| 2 | | Message delivery failure |
| 3 | | Memory Card unusable/misinserted |

■ Transmissions

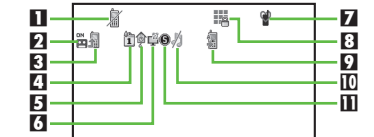


| | | |
|---|--|--|
| | | SSL browsing in progress ¹ |
| 1 | | Waiting packet transmission (3G) |
| | | Waiting packet transmission (GSM) |
| 2 | | Receiving mail |
| | | Sending mail |
| 3 | | S! Friend's Status online |
| 4 | | Software Update in progress |
| | | USB Cable connected |
| | | USB transmission in progress |
| | | Infrared transmission in progress |
| | | Infrared file transfer in progress |
| | | IC Transmission in progress |
| 5 | | Bluetooth® transmission ready |
| | | Bluetooth® transmission in progress (), appears for multiple connections) |
| | | Bluetooth® talk in progress |
| | | S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress |
| | | PC Site Browser in use |
| 6 | | RSS-compatible site |
| | | Positioning in progress ² |
| 7 | | Weather Indicator |
| 8 | | Infrared transmission ready |

¹Hidden while Mobile Widget is in use.

²Flashes while positioning.

■ Settings



| | | |
|----|--|--|
| 1 | | Offline Mode active |
| 2 | | Answer Phone active |
| 3 | | Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: Always) [*] |
| 4 | | Schedule/Task (Alarm set) |
| | | Schedule/Task (Alarm unset) |
| 5 | | Hour Minder active |
| 6 | | Wakeup TV set |
| | | Alarm set |
| | | Manner mode active |
| 7 | | Drive mode active |
| | | Original mode active |
| | | VeilView active |
| 8 | | Keypad Lock active |
| | | IC Card Lock active |
| 9 | | Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active |
| | | Ringtone (Silent) |
| 10 | | Ringtone (Increasing Volume) |
| | | Vibration active |
| 11 | | Show Secret Data active |
| | | Function Lock active |

^{*}Indicator does not appear when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls only, with Voicemail unset.

1 Manner Mode & Security Codes

Manner Mode

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Security Codes

These codes are required for handset use.

- Write down Security Codes.
- Do not reveal Security Codes. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Handset Code | 9999 by default; use or change some functions |
| Center Access Code | 4-digit code selected at contract; access Optional Services via landlines or change contract details |
| Network Password | 4-digit code selected at contract; restrict incoming/outgoing calls (Call Barring) |

*Change Handset Code (P.2-23) and Network Password (P.5-20) as needed.

Incorrect Code Entry

- **Handset code is incorrect!** appears; try again.
- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Basic Operations | 2-2 |
| Handset Operations..... | 2-2 |
| Window Description (Standby) | 2-3 |
| Touch Panel | 2-4 |
| Accessing Functions | 2-6 |
| Main Menu | 2-7 |
| Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu) ... | 2-10 |
| Shortcuts Menu & Key Shortcut | 2-11 |
| Standby Shortcuts | 2-12 |
| Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job) ... | 2-14 |
| Motion Control | 2-15 |

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------------|
| Basic Functions | 2-17 |
| Manner Mode & Offline Mode | 2-17 |
| Changing Font Size | 2-18 |
| Wallpaper | 2-19 |
| Customized Screen (Japanese) | 2-20 |
| Customizing Handset Responses ... | 2-21 |
| My Details & Basic Tools | 2-22 |
| Handset Security | 2-23 |
| Changing Handset Code | 2-23 |
| Operations Security | 2-24 |
| Information Security | 2-25 |
| Software Update | 2-26 |
| Double Number | 2-27 |
| Using Double Number | 2-27 |
| Modes..... | 2-28 |
| Additional Functions | 2-30 |
| Troubleshooting | 2-38 |

2

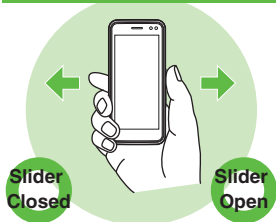
Basic Operations



Handset Operations

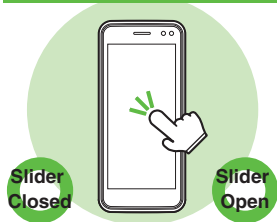
Use handset keys, Touch Panel or Motion Control. Keypad Lock prevents accidental operation/function activation via Touch Panel.

Motion Control



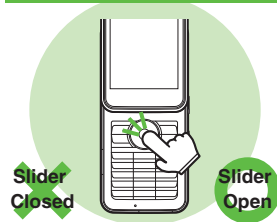
Move handset (e.g., shake it left or right) to execute functions, and more. (Complete setup beforehand.)

Touch Panel



Touch menu items or Softkeys; supports most handset operations.

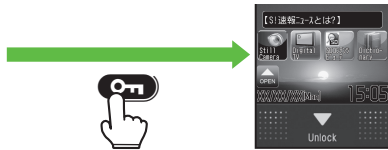
Handset Keys



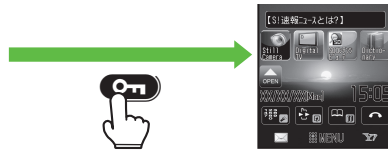
Use Keypad, etc.; supports most handset operations.

Touch Panel & Keypad Lock

With Slider closed, Display goes dark and Keypad Lock activates after a period of inactivity or pressing **On**.



Press **On** to illuminate Display. (Keypad Lock is still active.)



Press **On** again to cancel Keypad Lock. (Touch Panel is unlocked.)

- Alternatively, to cancel Keypad Lock, swipe a finger down across **▼Unlock**.

Advanced

- Disabling Keypad Lock activation when Display turns off
- Setting Keypad Lock to activate upon Slider close (P.2-31)



Window Description (Standby)

Display Orientation

With Slider closed, rotate handset 90 degrees counterclockwise for landscape view; rotate back for portrait view.

- Adjust setting to switch to widescreen with Slider open.



Softkeys

Tap to execute assigned functions/operations. Bottom three Softkeys correspond to handset keys below.



Long Touch to use functions/operations assigned to framed Softkeys.



Advanced

- Handling Information list (P.2-31)

Indicator Area



Standby Shortcuts

Execute functions/operations in Standby.

Mobile Widgets

Save various widgets (applications and services) to Standby.

Indicator Descriptions

Tap indicator area to check active indicators and their descriptions. (Status Touch)

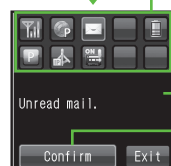


Indicator Area



Active Indicators

Touch indicators to view their descriptions.



Description

Operation Key

Tap to open menu/window.

Missed Calls, New Mail, Etc.

Information window opens at the bottom.

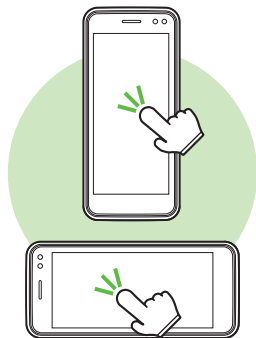


Tap an item or highlight an item and press ● to open it.



Touch Panel

Touch Display to select menu items, move pointer, scroll pages, etc.



Selection & Execution

■ Tap



Tap Display to open windows or execute Softkey functions/operations.

- Tap twice to execute certain operations.

Special Operations (Double Tap)

Tap twice in rapid succession (within approximately 0.6 seconds) to switch window size while Multi Job is active, to enlarge/reduce images, etc.


■ Long Touch



Touch and hold Display to execute certain functions/operations.

Long Touch Operations

Softkeys

Execute alternative function/operation assigned to Softkey (e.g., Long Touch  to open Dictionary).

Standby & Function Windows

Long Touch Display to open function/operation menu.

Internet Pages & Post-Image Capture Windows

Enlarge specific areas.

Text Entry Windows

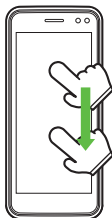
Long Touch onscreen hiragana key to open list of hiragana in that row with ' or ', etc.

Advanced

-  Adjusting Touch vibration (P.2-31)



Move/Draw (Drag)



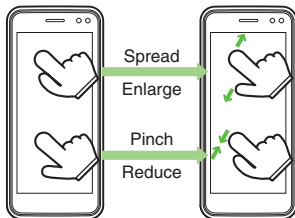
Touch and drag target item to move it; release your finger to stop/save. Move icons, scroll lists, etc.

Screen Scroll (Swipe)



To see items outside Display area, swipe a finger across Display in opposite direction.

Enlarge/Reduce (Spread/Pinch)



Pinch or spread your fingers to reduce or enlarge images, etc.

Important Usage Notes

- Touch Panel may not respond in these situations:
 - Use with gloved fingers/fingernails
 - Use of pens, pencils or other sharp objects
 - Use with objects placed on/against Display
- To prevent malfunctions, do not:
 - Touch Display with wet fingers
 - Subject Display to force/pressure
 - Place labels or stickers over Display
- Calibrate Touch Panel (P.2-9) to improve response.



Accessing Functions

Use the following methods as needed.

Main Menu



Repeat menu item selection.

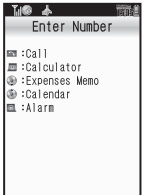


Select menu items

Enter numbers

Use shortcuts


Quick Operations



Open Slider


Enter numbers to access functions.
To activate functions, press the corresponding key.

Shortcuts



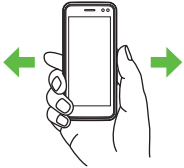
Access assigned functions (changeable).

Standby Shortcuts



Save functions to Standby.

Quick Shortcut



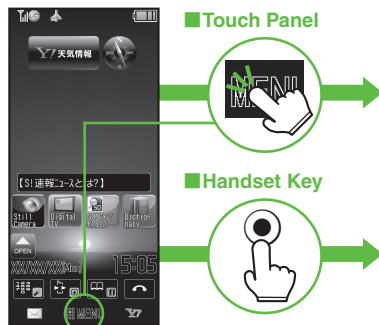
Shake handset to access assigned functions. (Complete setup beforehand.)

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active, then toggle function windows as needed.



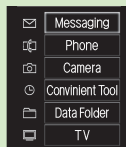
Main Menu

Opening Main Menu

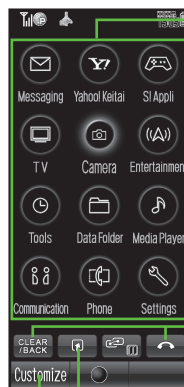


Simple Menu

- Simplify menus and enlarge fonts; ideal for users who use only basic handset functions.



Window Description



Main Menu Items

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Messaging | Open/create messages, etc. |
| Yahoo! Keitai | Browse the Internet |
| S! Appli | Use S! Applications including games |
| TV | Watch/record TV programs |
| Camera | Capture images or record video |
| Entertainment | Read e-Books, receive news updates, etc. |
| Tools | Manage schedules, set Alarm, scan QR Codes, etc. |
| Data Folder | Open files saved on handset/Memory Card |
| Media Player | Play/download media files |
| Communication | Communicate with other users in various ways |
| Phone | Search contacts, add entries, etc. |
| Settings | Customize handset interface, sounds, etc. |

Exit Main Menu

Handset returns to Standby. (Alternatively, press / .)

Open Shortcuts Menu

Access shortcuts. (Alternatively, press .)

Customize

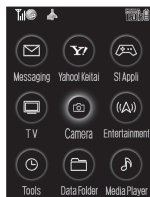
Use Customized Screen.



Follow these steps to open **Key Operation** in Phone Help via handset keys or Touch Panel:

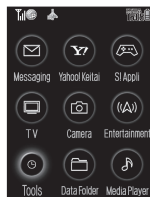
Menu Navigation (Handset Keys)

Press **HOME** in Standby



Open Main Menu

Use **UP** to highlight **Tools**



Select Item

Use **RIGHT** to highlight **Doc./Rec. tab**



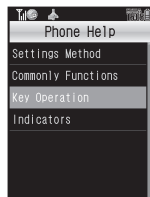
Open Tab

Use **DOWN** to highlight **Phone Help**



Select Item

Use **DOWN** to highlight **Key Operation**



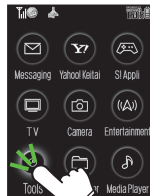
Go to P.2-9

Menu Navigation (Touch Panel)

Tap **MENU** in Standby



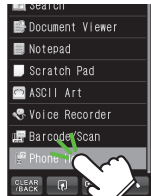
Tap **Tools**



Tap **Doc./Rec. tab**



Tap **Phone Help**



Tap **Key Operation**



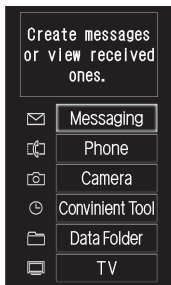
Go to P.2-9



Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)

Simple Menu Features

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.



- Fonts are enlarged and appear in bold.
- Clock is enlarged (Calendar is hidden).
- Only Display Change is available for Motion Control.

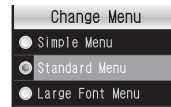
Menu Items

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Messaging | Received Msg., Create Msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent Messages, Unsent Msg., Create SMS |
| Phone | Phone Book, Add New Entry, Play Messages, Answer Phone, Call VM, My Details, Speed Dial/Mail |
| Camera | - |
| Convenient Tool | Calendar, Alarms, Calculator, Assignment, Dictionary, Notepad, S! GPS Navi, Pedometer, Compass, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Double Number Settings, Change Menu |
| Data Folder | - |
| TV | - |

Key assignments are largely the same as in Standard Menu.

Activating Simple Menu

- 1 **MENU** or **Settings**
- 2 In Phone menu, **Change Menu**



- 3 **Simple Menu**

While Using an Incompatible Function

- End the function before activating Simple Menu.

Canceling Simple Menu

- 1 **MENU** or **Convenient Tool**
- 2 **Change Menu**
- 3 **Standard Menu**

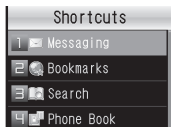


Shortcuts Menu & Key Shortcut

Shortcuts Menu

Access assigned functions via Shortcuts menu.

1 (Long) or




Shortcuts Menu


2 Select function

- Menu/window opens.

Changing Default Shortcuts









In 2, *Shortcut Settings* ➔ Highlight numbered function ➔ *Options* or  ➔ *Assign* ➔ Select menu item ➔ Select new item

Changing Item Order


In 2, *Shortcut Settings* ➔ Highlight numbered function ➔ *Options* or  ➔ *Move* ➔ Select target location

Key Shortcut

Long Press /  or /  or  to access assigned functions.

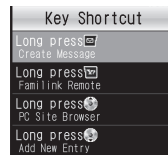
| | |
|--|---------------------------------|
|  or  | Open S! Mail Composition window |
|  or  | Activate Familink Remote |
|  | Open PC Site Browser menu |
|  | Create new Phone Book entries |
|  | Activate/cancel Bluetooth® |
|  | Activate/cancel Infrared |

Changing Assigned Functions

Follow these steps to assign Calculator to :

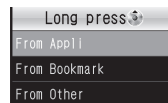
1 *MENU* or ➔ *Settings*

2 In Phone menu, *Set Key Shortcut*



Key Shortcut Menu

3 *Long press*



4 *From Appli*

5 *Tools* ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calculator*

Bookmark

In 4, *From Bookmark* ➔ Select title ➔ *Yes*

Bluetooth® or Infrared On/Off

In 4, *From Other* ➔ Select item

Canceling Assigned Function

In 4, *Off*

Advanced

-  Restoring default shortcuts (P.2-31)



Standby Shortcuts

Paste shortcuts to functions, files, folders, etc. to Standby for easy access. Most operations are described for Touch Panel.

Saving Shortcuts to Standby

1 (OPEN)



- When  (OPEN) does not appear, press  or .

2 Highlight tab



3 Drag item to Standby

- Corresponding icon appears in Standby.
- >> appears when more items are available.

4 (CLOSE) → Completed

Saving from Menu/Window



- In Options menu, select **Set as StbyShortcut**. (May not appear for some items.)

Removing Shortcuts from Standby Long Touch icon → Remove → Yes Moving Icons

- Drag icon to target location.

Using Shortcuts

1 Tap icon

- Menu/window opens or command is executed.
- When no icon appears, press  or .

Toggleing Sheets




Toggle sheets to use Standby shortcuts and widgets pasted on each sheet.

1 While (OPEN) appears, swipe finger left or right across Display



Swipe left ↓ ↑ Swipe right




- When  (OPEN) does not appear, press  or .
- Sheet name appears at the top, then disappears.
- Save Standby shortcuts as needed; corresponding icons appear on the current sheet.

Using Locked Sheets

 → Enter Handset Code → OK or 




















Handling with Handset Keys

To handle Standby shortcuts with handset keys, press  to activate pointer first.



Pointer

When finished, press  (pointer disappears).

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Saving Standby Shortcuts | Use  to point to  (OPEN) ➔  ➔ Highlight  tab ➔ Select item ➔  |
| Using Shortcuts | Use  to point to icon ➔  |
| Removing Shortcuts | Use  to point to icon ➔  ➔ <i>Remove</i> ➔ <i>Yes</i> |
| Moving Icons | Use  to point to icon ➔  ➔ <i>Change Layout</i> ➔ Specify target location ➔  |
| Moving Icons to Front/Back | Use  to point to icon ➔  ➔ <i>To Front</i> or <i>To Back</i> |
| Switching Sheets | Use  to point to blank area (no icons) ➔  |

Advanced

 ● Editing sheet names ● Locking sheets (P.2-32)

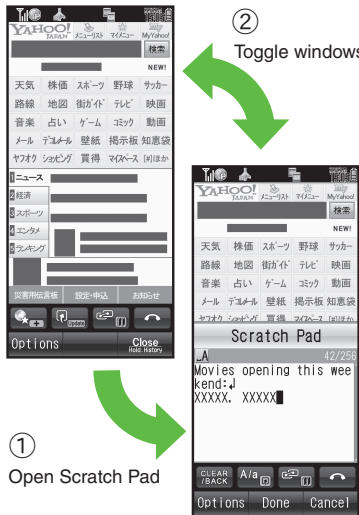


Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job)

Multi Job Feature

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active.

While browsing the Internet



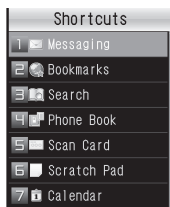
① Open Scratch Pad

② Toggle windows

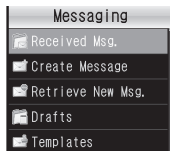
Jot down information

Using Multi Job

① In a function window, or In text entry/dial windows, Long Touch .

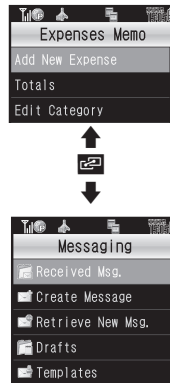


② Select function



• Menu/window opens.

③ Toggle active windows



• Double-tap function name to change window size.

④ or → Multi Job ends

• When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.



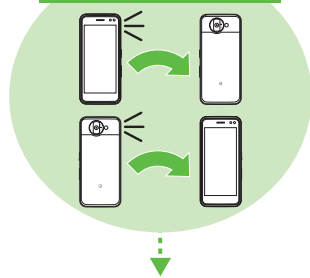
Multi Job may not be activated from some menus/windows (e.g., when selecting ringtone/ringvideo, etc.).

Motion Control

Sensor detects handset orientation or movement. Move handset to navigate pages, mute ringer, etc.

- Cancel Keypad Lock and activate Display first.
- Activate Motion Control by function beforehand.

Turn Over



Activate Quick Silent

Turn handset over to instantly mute ringer and stop vibration.

Ringer

Incoming Calls, Alarms, etc.

Vibration

Incoming Calls, Alarms, etc.

- Some tones may not be silenced.

Quick Shortcut

Shake handset left and right approximately three times in Standby to access assigned functions.

- Change assigned functions as needed.

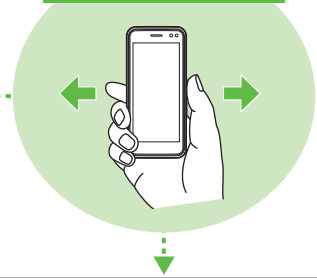
Activate Camera

Portrait Orientation

Activate TV

Landscape Orientation

Shake Left/Right



Navigate Functions

Shake to the left to navigate back, or right to navigate forward.

Music

Music Player

Channels

TV

Images

Data Folder (Pictures)

Pages

Document Viewer

Multi Job

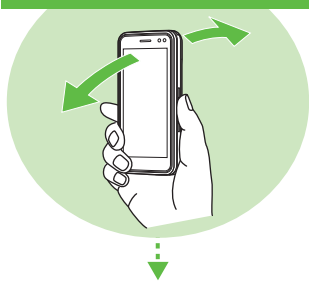
Shake to the left or right to toggle active windows

Toggle Windows

Multi Job



Shake Forward or Backward



Zoom In/Zoom Out

Shake forward to enlarge, or backward to reduce.

Fonts

Yahoo! Keitai
Message Window

Zoom Image

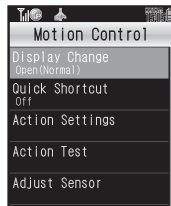
Data Folder
(Pictures)

Zoom Page

PC Site Browser
Document Viewer

Activating Motion Control by Function

- 1 **MENU** or **Settings**
- 2 In Phone menu, **Motion Control**



Motion Control Menu

- 3 **Action Settings**
- 4 **Select function**
- 5 **On**

Enabling Quick Shortcut

- 1 In Motion Control menu, **Quick Shortcut**
- 2 **Switch On/Off**
- 3 **On**

Activating Show Secret Data Temporarily
Enter Handset Code Shake handset left or right

- Close Slider in Standby; Show Secret Data is canceled when Display goes dark.

Important Motion Control Usage Notes

- Hold/shake handset correctly to avoid unintended results.
- Motion Control may be unavailable while handset is ringing/vibrating.
- Confirm there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently to avoid injury/breakage. Do not shake handset roughly; handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.

Advanced

- Locking Display in portrait view
- Setting Display rotation to Auto
- Changing Quick Shortcut items
- Practicing Motion Control actions
- Adjusting Motion Control sensor (P.2-32)



Manner Mode & Offline Mode

Manner Mode

Mutes most handset function sounds.

1  (Long)




• Manner mode is set.

When Manner Mode is Active

- Ringtones and other sounds are muted.
- 931SH vibrates for transmissions/alerts.
- Shutter click still sounds at fixed volume.

Canceling Manner Mode

 (Long)

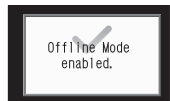
Offline Mode

Temporarily suspends all transmissions.

1 **MENU** or  **Settings** 
Highlight **Network** tab

2 **Offline Mode**

3 **On**



• Offline Mode is set.

Canceling Offline Mode

In , **Off**

Advanced

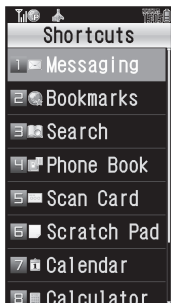
-   Changing handset modes  Creating a custom mode  Resetting Mode Settings (P.2-32)



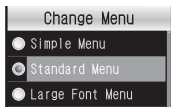
Changing Font Size

Enlarging All Fonts

Activate Large Font Menu to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc. as follows:



- 1 MENU or → Settings → In Phone menu, *Change Menu*



- 2 *Large Font Menu*

Canceling Large Font Menu
In 2, *Standard Menu*

Customizing Font Sizes

- 1 MENU or → Settings → In Phone menu, *Display*

- 2 *Font Settings*



Font Settings Menu

- 3 *Font Size* → Select item
- 4 Select size

Changing Font Weight

- 1 In Font Settings menu, *Font Weight*



- 2 Select weight

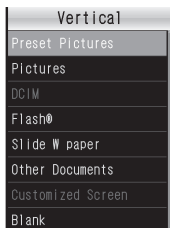


Wallpaper

1 MENU or  ➔ **Settings** ➔
In Phone menu, **Display**

2 **Wallpaper**

3 **Vertical or Horizontal**




Wallpaper Menu

4 **Preset Pictures** ➔ **Select image**

- Some files may not be usable.

Selecting Images with Limited Usage Period

- A confirmation appears. Follow these steps:
Yes ➔ **Assign** or 
If Double Number Mode Menu Opens
Select mode

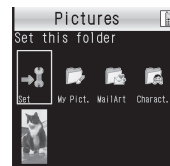
Slide Show Wallpaper

Set Slide Show to appear in Standby.
Some images may not appear.

1 In Wallpaper menu, **Slide Wallpaper**

2 **Folder Setting**

3 **Pictures or DCIM**



4 **Select sub folder**

- Omit **4** if there is no sub folder.

5 **Set this folder**

If There is No Image in Set Folder

- Preset images appear.

Using Preset Images

In **3**, **Preset Pictures**





Changing Pattern

In **2**, **Pattern Setting** ➔ **Select pattern**

2

Basic Operations

Advanced

-   Changing Clock/Calendar  Changing image enhancement option for Standby and video playback  Showing Network service provider name in Standby (And more on P.2-33)



Customized Screen (Japanese)

Downloading Customized Screen

Use preloaded Customized Screen or download new via handset as follows:
Read information (price, etc.) on Customized Screen download page.

- 1** **MENU** or  **Data Folder**
➔ **Customized Screen**





Customized Screen Menu


- 2** **Download Customized Screen**
- Handset connects to the Internet and source site list appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

Customized Screen Setup







To install the most recent version, apply the file then download the updated one.

- 1** In Customized Screen menu,
select **Customized Screen**
- 2** **Apply** or  **OK** or 

Applying Fee-based Customized Screen

- If Contents Key is required, follow these steps:
 - After **1**, **OK** or  ➔ **Yes**
 - Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.
- When Selected Customized Screen is Active**
 - Cancellation confirmation appears after **1**.

Advanced

-   Accessing Customized Screen source sites
-  Applying preset Customized Screen
-  Canceling Customized Screen
-  Canceling Customized Screen unconditionally
-  Deleting Customized Screens (P.2-33)

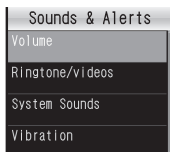


Customizing Handset Responses

When using Double Number in Dual Mode (P.2-27), press **▶** **B** or **** **Y** in Ringtone/videos menu to switch modes.

Ringtone

- 1** **MENU** or **○** **▶** **Settings** **▶** In Phone menu, **Sounds & Alerts**

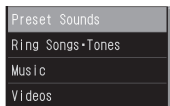


Sounds & Alerts Menu

- 2** **Ringtone/videos**

- 3** **Select item**

For **For New Message**, etc., select **Assign Tone**.



- 4** **Select folder**

- 5** **Select tone/file**

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail, etc.

After **⊕**, **Duration** **▶** Enter time **▶** **Accept** or **○**

Playing Video for Incoming Transmissions
In **4**, **Videos** **▶** **Select file**

If Portion of File Content is Specifiable

- After **⊕**, start point selection window opens; select start point.

Selecting Files with Limited Usage Period

- A confirmation appears. Select **Yes** to proceed.

Ringtone Volume

- 1** In Sounds & Alerts menu, **Volume**

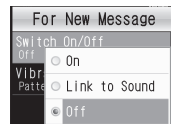
- 2** **Select item**

- 3** **Adjust level** **▶** **Accept** or **○**

Vibration

- 1** In Sounds & Alerts menu, **Vibration**

- 2** **Select item** **▶** **Switch On/Off**



- 3** **On**

- 4** **Vibration Pattern**

- To check vibration patterns, highlight one and press **Check** or **⊗**.

- 5** **Select pattern**

Setting Ringtones to Control Vibration
In **⊕**, **Link to Sound**

Precaution

- Cancel Vibration when charging battery to help avoid accidents.

Advanced

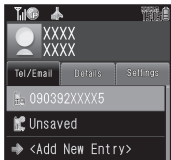
- Disabling System Sounds
- Changing System Sound duration
- Changing System Sound volume
- Setting illumination for missed incoming transmissions (And more on P.2-34)



My Details & Basic Tools


My Number

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Phone** ➔ **My Details**



- Handset phone number and the name entered at initial setup appear.

Pen Light


- 1  (Long)
 - Mobile Light illuminates.
- 2 **Side Key** ➔ **Mobile Light goes out**
 - First key press for other function use also turns off Mobile Light.

Important Pen Light Usage Note

- Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.



Phone Help

Access this handy guide to handset settings and key functions/shortcuts.

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ **Highlight Doc./Rec. tab**
- 2 **Phone Help**
- 3 **Select item**
 - Toggle guides as needed.

VeilView

Activate VeilView to prevent peeking.

- 1  (Long)
- Canceling VeilView
-  (Long)

Advanced

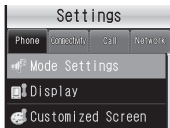
-  ● Editing/clearing My Details
- Toggling My Details in Dual Mode
- Changing VeilView pattern/density
- Disabling USB Charge (P.2-36)



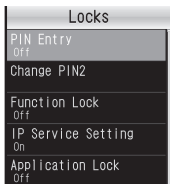
Changing Handset Code

Enter four to eight digits for new Handset Code.

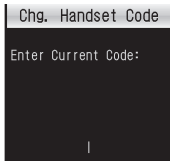
1 MENU or → Settings



2 In Phone menu, Locks



3 Chg. Handset Code



4 Enter current Handset Code → OK or



5 Enter new Handset Code → OK or



6 Re-enter new Handset Code → OK or



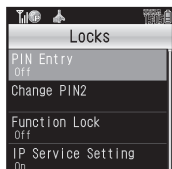
Operations Security

Function Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.

| | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Auto (Link to Slider) | Lock when Slider is closed |
| Auto | Lock when Display turns off |
| Once | One time lock |
| At Power On | Lock when handset is turned on |

- 1 MENU or  ➔ **Settings** ➔
In Phone menu, **Locks**




Locks Menu

- 2 **Function Lock**

- 3 **Select item** ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or 

Unlocking Temporarily

While handset is locked, enter **Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or 


- Canceling Function Lock cancels Keypad Lock.

When Function Lock is Active

- Turn handset on/off, answer calls, place callers on hold, end calls, etc.

PIN Entry

Activate PIN Entry to require PIN entry each time handset is turned on.

- 1 In Locks menu, **PIN Entry** ➔ **Switch On/Off**
- 2 **On** ➔ **Enter PIN** ➔ **OK** or 

Secure Remote Lock

Lock a lost handset remotely via PC or another handset. Secure Remote Lock disables all operations except turning handset on, and activates IC Card Lock (P.13-13).

For more about Secure Remote Lock, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (P.19-18) or contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-34).

Accessing My SoftBank

Access My SoftBank as needed.

- 1  or  ➔ **メニューリスト**
- 2 **My SoftBank** ➔ **English**

Advanced

-  ● Changing PINs ● Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message to appear (P.2-36)

Information Security

Application Lock

Restrict access to these functions:

Phone Book

Calendar/Tasks

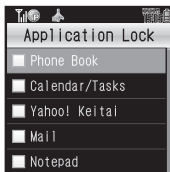
Yahoo! Keitai



Mail

Notepad

1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Settings** ➔
In Phone menu, **Locks**


2 **Application Lock**



3 Select item (✓ appears) ➔
OK or  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or 

- For Phone Book, select whether to show saved names in Call Log, etc.

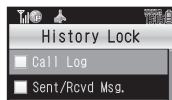
Temporary Access to Functions



- When accessing functions, enter Handset Code and press **OK** or .

History Lock


Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records.

1 In Locks menu, **History Lock**



2 Select item (✓ appears) ➔
OK or  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or 

Temporary Access to Records

- When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press **OK** or .

Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to access Secret entries.

1 In Locks menu, **Show Secret Data**

2 **On** ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or 

When Show Secret Data is Active

- Predictive is not available for text entry.

Activating Temporarily with Motion Control

1 In Standby, enter Handset Code ➔ **Shake handset left or right**

- Close Slider in Standby; Show Secret Data is canceled when Display goes dark.



Software Update

2

Basic Operations

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

Precautions

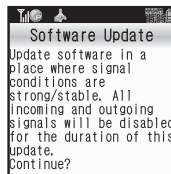
- Always back up important information. SoftBank cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.
- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Update failure may disable handset. To reduce failure risk, make sure signal is strong and stable, and charge battery beforehand.
- Update will not start if other functions are in use. Before updating software (or before scheduled update time), end all active functions/applications.
- Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.

Updating Software

- Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).
- Use handset keys.

1 **Settings** **In Phone menu, Software Update**

2 **Software Update**



- Follow onscreen instructions.

Setting Update Period (Japanese)

In **Update Period**

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Update Result

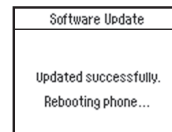
In **Update Result**

Scheduled Update

Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press or wait a while for update to start.

When Updated

A message appears and handset reboots.



After reboot, completion message appears and Information window opens.

Update Result

While Information window appears, Update Result

Reboot Failure

- If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart it. If it still does not restart, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.19-34).

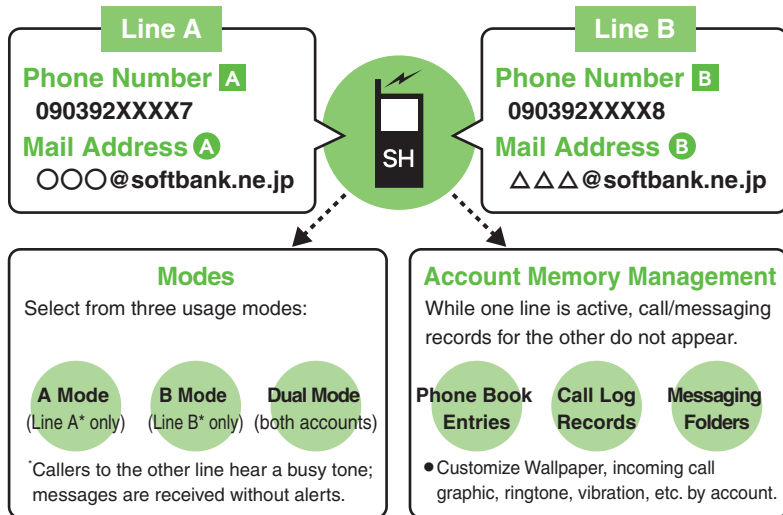


Using Double Number

Manage two accounts (Line A and Line B, with separate phone numbers and mail addresses) on one handset.

- Double Number requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (P.19-18).

Two Phone Numbers & Two Mail Addresses



Activating Double Number

Make sure signal is stable.

- 1 **MENU** or ➔ **Settings**
- 2 In Phone menu, **Double Number Settings**
- 3 **Switch On/Off**
- 4 **On**
- 5 **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or ➔ **Yes**

Canceling Double Number

In 4, **Off** ➔ 5

- When Double Number is canceled:
 - Line B calls and SMS messages are redirected to Line A Phone Number.
 - Initial portion of Line B S! Mail is redirected to Line A. (Full messages are irretrievable.)
 - Double Number account is not affected.

Advanced

- Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes
- Renaming Double Number modes (P.2-37)



Modes

Activate **A Mode** to use Line A only, **B Mode** to use Line B only, or **Dual Mode** to use both accounts. While abroad, any Line B messaging charges are applied to Line A.

A Mode

Receive Calls to Line A Only

- Place calls or send messages via Line A.

A Mode & B Mode Precautions

- Line indicators do not appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.
- When an operation affects information on the other line, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).

B Mode

Receive Calls to Line B Only

- Place calls or send messages via Line B.

B Mode Restrictions

- Handset connects to the Internet via Line A. (During Internet connections, place/receive calls via Line B.)
- S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call are unavailable.



Advanced

- Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line
- Hiding Internet connection confirmation (P.2-37)

Dual Mode

Receive Calls to Both Accounts

- Place calls or send messages via Line A (or the account of record for Phone Book entries or Call Log records) by default; toggle accounts as required.

Phone Book Entries

Specify A, B or Dual.

Messaging



Select Line A or Line B.
Sender Address changes accordingly.

Calling

Select Line A or Line B.
Caller ID changes accordingly.

- ,  and  indicate line type in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.

Switching Modes

- MENU** or  ➔ **Settings** ➔ In Phone menu, **Double Number Settings**
- Double Mode** ➔ **Select mode**
 - For **B Mode** confirmation appears.
- Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or 
- Yes**

Saving Modes to Phone Book Entries

- MENU** or  ➔ **Phone** ➔ **Add New Entry**
- Mode:** ➔ **Select mode**





















Entries Saved with Double Number Canceled



- Dual** is set automatically.




Advanced

-   Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode
-  Setting main line for Dual Mode (P.2-37)














| Date & Time | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Setting the date and time | MENU or  → Settings → In Phone menu, Date & Time → Set Date/Time → Enter the year → Enter the month → Enter the day → Enter the time → Accept or  |
| Correcting Clock manually | MENU or  → Settings → In Phone menu, Date & Time → Time Correction → Manual → Yes → Yes |
| Disabling auto Clock correction | MENU or  → Settings → In Phone menu, Date & Time → Time Correction → Auto Corr. Setting → Off |
| Setting auto Clock correction timing | MENU or  → Settings → In Phone menu, Date & Time → Time Correction → Auto Corr. Setting → Highlight On → Details or  → Select item ( ⇌ ) → Save or  |
| Activating Daylight Saving | MENU or  → Settings → In Phone menu, Date & Time → Daylight Saving → On |
| Changing Time Zone | MENU or  → Settings → In Phone menu, Date & Time → Set Time Zone → Specify area (tap world map to select from list or use  to toggle areas) → Accept or  |
| Adding custom time zone | MENU or  → Settings → In Phone menu, Date & Time → Set Time Zone → Custom or  → Enter city name → Done or  → Swipe up/down or  → Enter time difference → Accept or  • When using handset keys, press  before entering time difference. |
| Changing time format to 12 hour | MENU or  → Settings → In Phone menu, Date & Time → Time Format → 12 Hour |




| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Changing date format | MENU or  → Settings → In Phone menu, Date & Time → Date Format → Select option |
| Starting the Calendar week on Monday | MENU or  → Settings → In Phone menu, Date & Time → Calendar Format → Monday-Sunday |

| Network | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Retrieving Network Information | MENU or  → Settings → Highlight Network tab → Retrieve NW Info → Yes |
| Selecting a Network manually | MENU or  → Settings → Highlight Network tab → Select Network → Manual → Select Network |
| Editing preferred Networks | <small>(Start Here)</small> MENU or  → Settings → Highlight Network tab → Select Network → Set Preferred → See below |
| | Adding Select location → Insert → Select Network |
| | Adding to the End Select Network → Add to End → Select Network |
| | Deleting Select Network → Delete |



| | |
|--|--|
| Adding Networks | Start Here MENU or  ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Network tab ➔ Select Network ➔ Add New Network ➔ See below |
| | Adding Add ➔ Enter country code ➔ OK or  ➔ Enter Network code ➔ OK or  ➔ Enter name ➔ Done or  ➔ Select NW Type ➔ Select type • After selecting Add New Network , Network list appears if Network has already been added. To add more, press  again and proceed. |
| | Editing Added Networks Select Network ➔ Change ➔ Edit in the same manner as adding Networks Deleting Added Networks Select Network ➔ Delete |
| Switching Network services manually | MENU or  ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Network tab ➔ Select Service ➔ Manual ➔ Select service |
| Checking Network status | MENU or  ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Network tab ➔ Network Info |
| Editing access point names for communication with external devices | Start Here MENU or  ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Network tab ➔ External Device ➔ See below |
| | Renaming Access Points Select name ➔ Edit ➔ Done or  |
| | Clearing Access Point Names Options or  ➔ Reset ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or  ➔ Yes |


Keypad Lock

| | |
|---|---|
| Disabling Keypad Lock activation when Display turns off | MENU or  ➔ Settings ➔ In Phone menu, Touch Panel ➔ Keypad Lock ➔ Press  key |
| Setting Keypad Lock to activate upon Slider close | MENU or  ➔ Settings ➔ In Phone menu, Touch Panel ➔ Keypad Lock ➔ Close Slider |




Information

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| Handling Information list | Start Here MENU or  ➔ Phone ➔ See below |
| | Opening List Manually Information |
| | Clearing List Information ➔ Clear or  ➔ Yes |

Touch Panel

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Adjusting Touch vibration | Start Here MENU or  ➔ Settings ➔ In Phone menu, Touch Panel ➔ Touch Reaction ➔ See below |
| | Touch Vibration Always On (Vibrating) |
| | Touch Vibration Off in Manner Mode On(Except Manner Mode) |

Shortcuts

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Restoring default shortcuts |  (Long) or  ➔ Shortcut Settings ➔ Options or  ➔ Set to Default ➔ Yes |
|-----------------------------|---|



Sheets

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Editing sheet names | [Start Here] Long Touch blank area in Standby (no Softkeys, icons or widgets) → <i>Change Sheet Name</i> → See below |
| | Renaming Select sheet → Enter name → Done or ● |
| | Resetting All Sheet Names Reset or [✉] → Yes |
| Locking sheets | [Start Here] Long Touch blank area in Standby (no Softkeys, icons or widgets) → <i>Set Sheet Lock</i> → Enter Handset Code → OK or ● → See below |
| | Activating Lock Select sheet → On or ● |
| | Changing Method for Temporary Access <i>Unlock Method</i> → Action → OK or ● • Swipe a finger down across [] to unlock sheet temporarily. |

Motion Control

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Locking Display in portrait view | <i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>Settings</i> → In Phone menu, <i>Motion Control</i> → <i>Display Change</i> → Normal |
| Setting Display rotation to Auto | <i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>Settings</i> → In Phone menu, <i>Motion Control</i> → <i>Display Change</i> → Auto |
| Changing Quick Shortcut items | <i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>Settings</i> → In Phone menu, <i>Motion Control</i> → <i>Quick Shortcut</i> → <i>Shortcut Entry</i> → <i>Portrait</i> or <i>Landscape</i> → Select menu item → Select new item |

Practicing Motion Control actions

MENU or ● → *Settings* → In Phone menu, *Motion Control* → *Action Test* → Select item
• Follow onscreen instructions.









Adjusting Motion Control sensor













MENU or ● → *Settings* → In Phone menu, *Motion Control* → *Adjust Sensor*
• Follow onscreen instructions. (Keypad Lock activation interrupts calibration.)
• Avoid adjusting sensor near metal/magnetic objects or aboard trains or in vehicles.

Mode

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Changing handset modes | [Start Here] <i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>Settings</i> → In Phone menu, <i>Mode Settings</i> → See below |
| | Selecting a Handset Mode Select mode |
| | Customizing Handset Modes Highlight mode → Edit or [✉] → Select item → Adjust settings • Not available for Normal mode. |
| Creating a custom mode | <i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>Settings</i> → In Phone menu, <i>Mode Settings</i> → Highlight <i>Original</i> → Edit or [✉] → Select item → Adjust settings |
| Resetting Mode Settings | <i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>Settings</i> → In Phone menu, <i>Mode Settings</i> → Highlight mode → Reset or [Y] → Enter Handset Code → OK or ● → Yes |



| Language | |
|--|--|
| Switching interface between Japanese and English | <i>MENU</i> or  <i>Settings</i> <i>In Phone menu, Language</i> or <i>言語選択</i> <i>English</i> or <i>日本語</i> |
| Display | |
| Changing battery strength indicator pattern | <i>MENU</i> or  <i>Settings</i> <i>In Phone menu, Display</i> <i>Mini Battery</i> <i>Select pattern</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Remaining time</i> is approximated for current handset usage pattern. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Remaining time is hidden while charging. |
| Disabling display transition effects | <i>MENU</i> or  <i>Settings</i> <i>In Phone menu, Display</i> <i>Display Effects</i> <i>Off</i> |
| Changing Clock/Calendar | <i>MENU</i> or  <i>Settings</i> <i>In Phone menu, Display</i> <i>Standby Display</i> <i>Clock/Calendar</i> <i>Select type</i> |
| Changing image enhancement option for Standby and video playback | <i>MENU</i> or  <i>Settings</i> <i>In Phone menu, Display</i> <i>Vivid Mode</i> <i>Select option</i> |
| Showing Network service provider name in Standby | <i>MENU</i> or  <i>Settings</i> <i>In Phone menu, Display</i> <i>Standby Display</i> <i>Show Operator Name</i> <i>On</i> |
| Showing a message each time handset is turned on | <i>MENU</i> or  <i>Settings</i> <i>In Phone menu, Display</i> <i>Greeting Message</i> <i>Edit Message</i> <i>Enter message</i> <i>Done</i> or  <i>Switch On/Off</i> <i>On</i> |

| Changing font of numbers entered in Standby | <i>MENU</i> or  <i>Settings</i> <i>In Phone menu, Display</i> <i>Dial Number</i> <i>Select pattern</i> |
|---|--|
| Customized Screen | |
| Accessing Customized Screen source sites | <i>MENU</i> or  <i>Data Folder</i> <i>Customized Screen</i> <i>Highlight Customized Screen</i> <i>Options</i> or  <i>Web Access</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Follow onscreen instructions. |
| Applying preset Customized Screen | <i>MENU</i> or  <i>Customize</i> or  <i>Preset Screens</i> <i>Select pattern</i> <i>Apply</i> or  |
| Canceling Customized Screen | <i>MENU</i> or  <i>Customize</i> or  <i>Off</i> <i>Yes</i> |
| Canceling Customized Screen unconditionally |  (Long) or  <i>Menu List</i> <i>Settings</i> <i>In Phone menu, Customized Screen</i> <i>Off</i> <i>Yes</i> |
| Deleting Customized Screens | <i>MENU</i> or  <i>Data Folder</i> <i>Customized Screen</i> <i>Highlight Customized Screen</i> <i>Options</i> or  <i>Delete</i> <i>Yes</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the corresponding Contents Key has been downloaded, select <i>Yes</i> or <i>No</i>. |



Sounds & Alerts











■ System Sound

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Disabling System Sounds | <i>MENU</i> or ● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ In Phone menu, <i>Sounds & Alerts</i> ➔ <i>System Sounds</i> ➔ Select item ➔ <i>Tone</i> ➔ <i>Off</i> ● Not available for <i>S! Circle Talk</i> . |
| Changing System Sound duration | <i>MENU</i> or ● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ In Phone menu, <i>Sounds & Alerts</i> ➔ <i>System Sounds</i> ➔ Select item ➔ <i>Duration</i> ➔ Highlight/enter time ➔ ○/ <i>Accept</i> or ● ● Not available for <i>Keypad Tones</i> or <i>S! Circle Talk</i> . |
| Changing System Sound volume | <i>MENU</i> or ● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ In Phone menu, <i>Sounds & Alerts</i> ➔ <i>Volume</i> ➔ <i>General Volume</i> ➔ <i>Adjust level</i> ➔ <i>Accept</i> or ● |
| Enabling Keypad Tones | <i>MENU</i> or ● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ In Phone menu, <i>Sounds & Alerts</i> ➔ <i>System Sounds</i> ➔ <i>Keypad Tones</i> ➔ Select tone |
| Activating/canceling Speaker surround | <i>MENU</i> or ● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ In Phone menu, <i>Sounds & Alerts</i> ➔ <i>Surround</i> ➔ <i>On</i> |


























■ Light & Illumination

| | |
|--|---|
| Setting illumination for missed incoming transmissions | <i>[Start Here]</i> <i>MENU</i> or ● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ In Phone menu, <i>Sounds & Alerts</i> ➔ <i>Status Light</i> ➔ Select item ➔ See below Enabling/Disabling <i>Switch On/Off</i> ➔ <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> Setting Color <i>Light Color</i> ➔ Select color |
| Setting illumination for incoming transmissions | <i>[Start Here]</i> <i>MENU</i> or ● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ In Phone menu, <i>Sounds & Alerts</i> ➔ <i>Event Light</i> ➔ See below Enabling/Disabling Select item ➔ <i>Switch On/Off</i> ➔ <i>On</i> , <i>Link to Sound</i> or <i>Off</i> ● When using Double Number in Dual Mode (P.2-27), press ➔ [E] or [X7] in Event Light menu to switch modes. Setting Color Select item ➔ <i>Light Color</i> ➔ Select color ● When using Double Number in Dual Mode, press ➔ [E] or [X7] in Event Light menu to switch modes. |
| Changing Display/Keypad Backlight illumination time | <i>MENU</i> or ● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ In Phone menu, <i>Display</i> ➔ <i>Backlight</i> ➔ <i>Time Out</i> ➔ Select time |



| | |
|--|---|
| Changing Display Brightness | [Start Here] MENU or  Settings In Phone menu, Display Backlight See below |
| | Adjusting Directly Brightness Adjust level Accept or  |
| | Canceling Light Sensor Brightness Uncheck or  (□) Accept or  |
| Changing inactivity time after which Display turns off | MENU or  Settings In Phone menu, Display Display Saving Select period |
| Disabling Keypad light illumination | MENU or  Settings In Phone menu, Set Key Light Off |
| Changing inactivity time with Slider closed after which Display Backlight and Display turn off | MENU or  Settings In Phone menu, Display CLS Disp. Time Select option |
| Specifying Backlight inactive period with Slider closed | MENU or  Settings In Phone menu, Display Display Manner Lights out period At Start Time: or At End Time: Enter time Accept or  Save or  Switch On/Off On |

Handset Response

| | |
|---|---|
| Selecting images that appear for incoming calls, etc. | [Start Here] MENU or  Settings In Phone menu, Display System Graphics Select item See below |
| | Preset Images Preset Animation (or select pattern) |
| | Data Folder Images Select folder Highlight image Assign or  Specify display area Assign or  |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some images may be usable without specifying display area. When using Double Number in Dual Mode (P.2-27), press  or  in System Graphics menu to switch modes. |
| Hiding caller info when Slider is closed | Customized Screens Customized Screen Assign or  |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not available for Power On or Power Off. When using Double Number in Dual Mode, press  or  in System Graphics menu to switch modes. |
| Answering calls with other keys | MENU or  Settings In Phone menu, Display Caller Display Off |
| Muting ringer with other keys | MENU or  Settings In Phone menu, Sounds & Alerts Any Key Answer On |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use  - , , ,  or  in addition to . |
| | MENU or  Settings In Phone menu, Sounds & Alerts Any Key Answer Only Mute |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use  - , , ,  or  in addition to . |



Disabling Speaker when using Headphones

MENU or → **Settings** → In Phone menu, **Ringer Output** → **Earphone**

My Details

Editing/clearing My Details

(Start Here) **MENU** or → **Phone** → **My Details** → See below

Editing My Details

Highlight tab/item → **Edit** or → Select item → **Edit** → **Save** or

Clearing My Details

Options or → **Reset My Details** → **Yes**

Toggling My Details in Dual Mode

MENU or → **Phone** → **My Details** → **Options** or → **Switch to B** or **Switch to A**

Handset Security

Changing PINs

(Start Here) **MENU** or → **Settings** → In Phone menu, **Locks** → See below

Changing PIN

PIN Entry → **Change PIN** → Enter current PIN → **OK** or → Enter new PIN → **OK** or → Re-enter new PIN → **OK** or

- Activate PIN Entry first.

Changing PIN2

Change PIN2 → Enter current PIN2 → **OK** or → Enter new PIN2 → **OK** or → Re-enter new PIN2 → **OK** or

Disabling IP Service

MENU or → **Settings** → In Phone menu, **Locks** → **IP Service Setting** → **Off** → Enter Handset Code → **OK** or

- When **Off**, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Decoration Call and S! Appli Notification Setting are disabled.

Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message to appear

(Start Here) **MENU** or → **Settings** → In Phone menu, **Locks** → **Set Lock Message** → See below

Saving Message

Message → Enter Handset Code → **OK** or → Enter message → **Done** or → **Yes**

Checking Message

Check Message

VeilView

Changing VeilView pattern/density

(Start Here) **MENU** or → **Settings** → In Phone menu, **Display** → **VeilView** → See below

Pattern

Pattern Setting → Select pattern → Select scale or **animation**

Density

Density Setting → Select density

USB Charge

Disabling USB Charge

MENU or → **Settings** → Highlight **Connectivity** tab → **USB Charge** → **Disable**



Double Number

All Modes

| | |
|--|--|
| Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes | <i>MENU</i> or OK → <i>Settings</i> → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number Settings</i> → <i>Password Entry</i> → <i>Off</i> → Enter Handset Code → OK or OK |
| Renaming Double Number modes | <i>MENU</i> or OK → <i>Settings</i> → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number Settings</i> → <i>Mode Name</i> → Select mode → Enter name → <i>Done</i> or OK → Select icon |

A Mode & B Mode

| | |
|---|---|
| Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line | <i>MENU</i> or OK → <i>Settings</i> → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number Settings</i> → <i>Show Missed</i> → <i>On</i> |
| Hiding Internet connection confirmation | <i>MENU</i> or OK → <i>Settings</i> → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number Settings</i> → <i>Packet Warning</i> → <i>Off</i> • Available for B Mode. |

Dual Mode

| | |
|---|---|
| Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode | <i>MENU</i> or OK → <i>Settings</i> → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number Settings</i> → <i>Reject By Line</i> → Select line → <i>On</i> |
| Setting main line for Dual Mode | <i>MENU</i> or OK → <i>Settings</i> → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number Settings</i> → <i>Send Priority</i> → Select option |

Reset

Restoring default handset settings

- MENU* or **OK** → *Settings* → In Phone menu, *Master Reset* → *Reset Settings* → Enter Handset Code → **OK** or **OK** → *Yes* → *Yes*
- Some default settings may not be restored.
 - A confirmation may appear before entering Handset Code; end the current function to proceed.
 - When Double Number is active, regardless of usage mode setting, Reset Settings restores all default settings (Double Number is canceled), and Reset All clears all user files.

Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.

- MENU* or **OK** → *Settings* → In Phone menu, *Master Reset* → *Reset All* → Enter Handset Code → **OK** or **OK** → *Yes* → *Yes*
- Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osafu-Keita[®] service providers for details.)
 - Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Reset All deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications.
 - Handset Code returns to the default setting.
 - A confirmation may appear before entering Handset Code; end the current function to proceed.
 - When Double Number is active, regardless of usage mode setting, Reset Settings restores all default settings (Double Number is canceled), and Reset All clears all user files.



Battery Meter



--- appears

- Calculating time; not a malfunction.



100% does not appear

- This is by design; not a malfunction.



Battery runs out faster

- A low ambient temperature reduces battery time.
- An older battery may run out faster.



Remaining time changes suddenly

- Time estimated by handset status; estimate may take time to appear.

Customized Screen



Customized Screen is not applied

- Some Customized Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.

USB Charge



Connecting handset to PC via USB Cable does not charge battery even when USB Charge is enabled

- Are PC and handset both on? USB Charge is not available if off.



| | |
|-------------------------------------|------------|
| Text Entry | 3-2 |
| Basics | 3-2 |
| Entering Hiragana & Kanji | 3-3 |
| Entering Other Characters | 3-4 |
| Quick Entry & Handy Conversions ... | 3-5 |
| Editing Characters | 3-6 |
| User Dictionary | 3-7 |
| Saving Frequently Used Words | 3-7 |
| Additional Functions | 3-8 |

3

Text Entry



Basics

Use handset keys or Touch Panel to enter text.

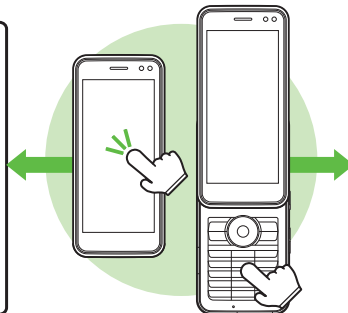
Slider Closed



Use Onscreen Keyboard to enter text. Hide Onscreen Keyboard to edit text in expanded window.

Touch Panel

Handset Keys

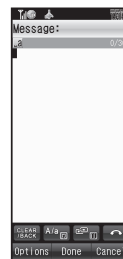


Slider Open

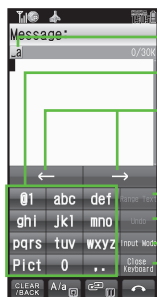
Use handset keys to enter text. Touch Panel is available for selecting words from suggestion list, using Options menu, etc.

Touch Panel

Handset Keys



Text Entry Window with Slider Closed



Entry Mode

Onscreen Keyboard

Move Cursor

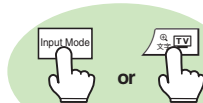
Highlight Text Range

Undo

Switch Entry Mode

Hide Onscreen Keyboard

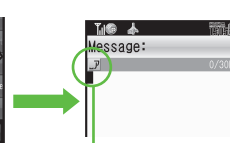
Switching Entry Modes



or



Select mode



Entry Mode

Entry Modes:

| | | | |
|-------|--|----------------|--------------------|
| Kanji | Kanji (hiragana) | 123 | Single-byte number |
| アイウ | Double-byte katakana | Pictogram | Pictogram List |
| 717 | Single-byte katakana | My Pictograms | My Pictogram List |
| A b c | Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case) | Symbols | Symbol List |
| Abc | Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case) | Character Code | Character Code |



Entering Hiragana & Kanji

Follow these steps to enter **すぎ** or **鈴木** in kanji (hiragana) mode:

To type characters assigned to the same key, advance cursor first by pressing **→** or **↻**.

Long Touch onscreen hiragana key to open list of available variants such as hiragana with [◌] or [◌] and small hiragana (っ, etc.). Alternatively, type hiragana and press **絵** to add [◌] or [◌].

Touch Panel

さ, さ, さ <ず>

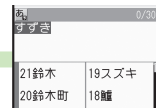
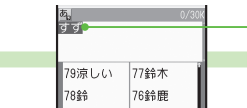
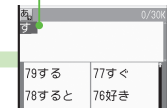
→

ざ (Long) ▶ ず <ず>

か, か <き>

No Conv

Hiragana Entry



Handset Keys



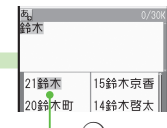
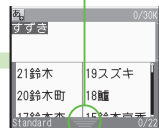
Word suggestions appear and change as hiragana is typed. (Predictive)

Alternatively, press *** 絵** once to add [◌], twice to add [◌] and three times to remove.

すぎ is entered.

Touch Panel

Kanji Conversion



Handset Keys



Words likely to follow the entry appear based on previous entries. (Previous Usage)

When Target Word is Not Listed

- Press **←Range/Range→** or **☑/∧** to segment hiragana to convert separately.

Phonetic Conversion

- Type reading in hiragana and press **Kanji** or **☑/∧**.

Advanced

- Inserting line breaks
- Inserting spaces
- Changing Font Size
- Disabling suggestions based on entered characters (And more on P.3-8)

3

Text Entry



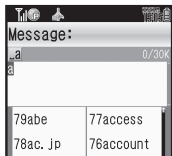
Entering Other Characters

Alphanumerics Mode

Word suggestions appear and change as letters are typed.

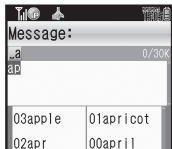
Example: To enter *april*

1 Type *a*



- Words starting with *a* appear.

2 Type *p*



- Words starting with *ap* appear.

3 *april*

Pictograms & Symbols


May be unavailable depending on the entry mode.

1 *Pict* or



- Pictogram/Symbol Log appears.

2 *Pict 1/Symbols 1* or

- In Pictogram List, press *A/a* or  to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.

3 *Select Pictogram or Symbol*

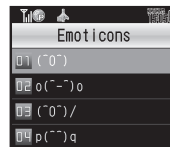
- Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte modes.

4 *CLEAR/BACK* or

- List closes.

Emoticons

1 *Options* or *Emoticons*



2 *Select emoticon*

Alternative Emoticon Entry Method

- In kanji (hiragana) mode, type *かお* or a descriptive word such as *可愛い* or *うーん*, then convert the word.

EmoticonWordLink

- Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as *嬉しい* or *悲しい*, corresponding emoticons may appear in the suggestion list.

Advanced

-  Using Character Codes
-  Using Pager Code (P.3-8)



Quick Entry & Handy Conversions

Mail & Web Extensions

Enter `.co.jp`, `http://`, etc., easily.

- 1 **Options** or  **Quick Address List**



- 2 **Select extension**

- Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

One-Hiragana Conversion

Type the first hiragana to access previously selected words.

Example: **鈴木** was previously selected after conversion.

- 1 **Type す** \Rightarrow **Swipe suggestion list** or 



Advanced

-  Inserting ASCII Art into message text
-  Inserting Phone Book entry items (P.3-8)

- 2 **Select word/phrase <鈴木>**

Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) mode.

Example: To enter **PM**

- 1 **ま** or  \Rightarrow **は** or  \Rightarrow **Kana** or 










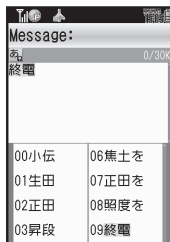
- 2 **Select word/phrase <PM>**

Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Example: To enter **終電**

- 1 **さ** or  \Rightarrow **や** or  \Rightarrow **あ** or  \Rightarrow **た**
絵 or  or  \Rightarrow **だ**
 \Rightarrow **わ** or  \Rightarrow **Quick Conversion** or 



- 2 **Select word/phrase <終電>**

One Hiragana Word Call


- Type the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and use Quick Conversion.



Editing Characters


Highlighting Characters to Edit

One Character

Tap the character or use  to move cursor over it.



Jumping to End/Top of Text with Handset Keys

Options or  ➔ *Cursor Position*
➔ *Jump to End* or *Jump to Top*

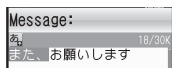
Text Range

Follow these steps to highlight text range using Touch Panel:

1 Range Text

- Alternatively, double-tap a character.

2 Touch first character ➔ Drag text range



- Tap **Quit** to cancel Range Text.

Deleting & Editing

Follow these steps to correct **また、お願いします** to **明日またお願いします**:

1 Highlight character



2 CLEAR/BACK or




- The highlighted character is deleted.


3 Highlight target location ➔ Enter characters



Recovering Deleted Characters

- Press **Undo** or  once for each character after deletion.

Deleting All Text

- Long Touch **CLEAR/BACK** or Long Press  at the end of text. To delete characters on and after cursor, do the same at the cursor point.

Copy/Cut & Paste

To copy/cut and paste using handset keys, see Advanced (below).

1 Highlight character or text range



2 Cut or Copy

3 Highlight target location ➔ *Options* ➔ *Paste*

4 Select text



Advanced

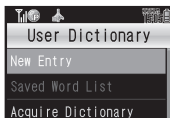
-  Undo conversion or recover deleted characters
-  Using handset keys to copy/cut and paste (P.3-8)

Saving Frequently Used Words



Saving Words (Japanese)

Saved words appear among suggestions.




- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Settings** ➔
In Phone menu, **User Dictionary**



User Dictionary Menu

- 2 **New Entry** ➔ Enter word ➔
Done or 
- 3 Enter reading ➔ **Done** or 

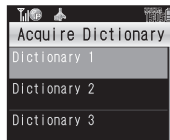
Editing Entries

In , **Saved Word List** ➔ Select word ➔ **Edit** ➔ **Done** or  ➔ **Edit reading** ➔ **Done** or  ➔ **Yes**

931SH Download Dictionary (Japanese)



Download specialized 931SH Download Dictionaries from SH-web Mobile Internet site. Activate dictionaries to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among suggestions. Some dictionary files may not be usable.

- 1 In User Dictionary menu,
Acquire Dictionary





- 2 **Select number** ➔ **Select dictionary**
 - Existing dictionary is replaced.



Canceling Dictionary

In , highlight dictionary ➔ **Options** or  ➔ **Cancel**

Viewing Dictionary Information















In , highlight dictionary ➔ **Options** or  ➔ **Info**










Advanced

-   Deleting entries (P.3-8)





Text Entry

| | |
|---|--|
| | <p>At the End of Text In a text entry window, double-tap or </p> <p>Mid-Entry In a text entry window, <i>Pict</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Symbols 1</i> or  \rightarrow \neq</p> |
| Inserting line breaks | |
| Inserting spaces | In a text entry window, \rightarrow or  |
| Changing Font Size | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Insert/Font Size</i> \rightarrow <i>Font Size</i> \rightarrow Select size |
| Disabling suggestions based on entered characters | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Input/Conversion</i> \rightarrow <i>Predictive</i> \rightarrow <i>Off</i> |
| Disabling suggestions based on entered words | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Input/Conversion</i> \rightarrow <i>Previous Usage</i> \rightarrow <i>Off</i> |
| Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Input/Conversion</i> \rightarrow <i>EmoticonWordLink</i> \rightarrow <i>Off</i> |
| Switching suggestion modes | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Input/Conversion</i> \rightarrow <i>Personal Mode</i> \rightarrow Select mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • With Slider closed, type hiragana and tap <i>Personal Mode</i> to toggle suggestion modes (Standard, Business, Male and Female). |
| Lowering type priorities in suggestion list | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Input/Conversion</i> \rightarrow <i>Set Low Priority</i> \rightarrow Select type ( : Lower \leftrightarrow  : Normal) \rightarrow <i>OK</i> or  |
| Using Keypad to enter words/phrases from suggestion list | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Input/Conversion</i> \rightarrow <i>Select Candidate</i> \rightarrow <i>Enable 1-9, 0, *, #</i> |

| | |
|---|--|
| Clearing entry log | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Input/Conversion</i> \rightarrow <i>Reset Log</i> \rightarrow <i>Yes</i> |
| Using Character Codes | In a text entry window, <i>Input Mode</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Character Code</i> \rightarrow Enter four digits (P.19-7) |
| Using Pager Code | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Input/Conversion</i> \rightarrow <i>Input Method</i> \rightarrow <i>Pager Code</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Return to text entry window and enter two digits (P.19-6). |
| Inserting ASCII Art into message text | In message text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Call ASCII Art</i> \rightarrow Select entry |
| Inserting Phone Book entry items | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Insert/Font Size</i> \rightarrow <i>Phone Book</i> \rightarrow Select entry \rightarrow Select item |
| Undo conversion or recover deleted characters | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Undo/Recover</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Alternatively, press <i>Undo</i> or . |
| Using handset keys to copy/cut and paste | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Cut or Copy</i> \rightarrow Select first character \rightarrow Select text range \rightarrow Highlight target location \rightarrow  (Long) |

User Dictionary

| | |
|------------------|---|
| Deleting entries | <i>MENU</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Settings</i> \rightarrow In Phone menu, <i>User Dictionary</i> \rightarrow <i>Saved Word List</i> \rightarrow Highlight word \rightarrow <i>Delete</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Yes</i> |
|------------------|---|



| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Phone Book | 4-2 |
| Creating Phone Book Entries | 4-2 |
| Using Phone Book | 4-4 |

| | |
|---|------|
| S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) ... | 4-5 |
| About SAB | 4-5 |
| Backup & Restore | 4-7 |
| Additional Functions | 4-8 |
| Troubleshooting | 4-12 |

4

Phone Book





Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, phone number and mail address (enter at least one of these items) and classify the entry.

- 1 MENU or  ➔ Phone ➔ Add New Entry**



- 2 Last Name: ➔ Enter last name ➔ Done or  ➔ First Name: ➔ Enter first name ➔ Done or **



- Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

- 3 Add Phone Number: ➔ Enter phone number ➔ Done or  ➔ Select type**



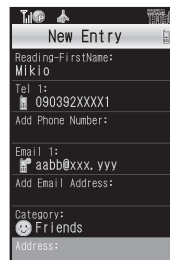
- To save additional phone numbers, repeat **3**.

- 4 Add Email Address: ➔ Enter mail address ➔ Done or  ➔ Select type**



- To save additional mail addresses, repeat **4**.

- 5 Category: ➔ Select Category**



Phone Book Entry Window

- 6 Save or **

- Entry is saved to Phone Book.

Incoming Calls while Creating Entry









- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Selecting Mode in Dual Mode (P.2-27)

[Phone Book Entry Window] Mode:

- ➔ Select mode

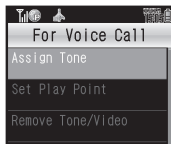
Advanced

-   Saving other information
-  Setting Light Color
-  Changing vibration pattern
-  Editing Phone Book entries
-  Setting incoming mail ring time
-  Renaming Categories
-  Moving Categories (P.4-8 - 4-9)

Personal Ringtone

Set tone for calls from saved numbers.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, select item, e.g., *Tone-Voice Call*:



- 2 *Assign Tone* → Select folder
- 3 Select tone/file

Saving Secret Entries

Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, *Secret*:
- 2 *On*

Accessing Secret Folders

☰ or 🔒 → *Options* or ✉ →
Unlock Temporarily → Enter
 Handset Code → OK or ⏻

Customizing Response by Category

- 1 *MENU* or ⏻ → *Phone* →
Category Control



Category Control Menu

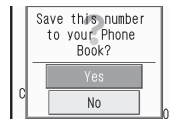
- 2 Highlight *Category* → *Options* or ✉ → Select item
- 3 Select item → Select item, e.g., *Assign Tone* →
Customize responses →
Confirm or ⏻
 - Customize responses in the same way as Phone Book entries.
 - Not available for USIM Card.

Responses Set by Phone Book Entry

- Settings for each entry take priority.

Saving Numbers After Calls

After a call, save number to Phone Book.



- 1 When confirmation appears, *Yes*



- 2 *As New Entry* → Complete other fields → *Save* or ⏻

Saving to an Existing Entry

In 2, *As New Detail* → Select entry →
 Complete other fields → *Save* or ⏻



Using Phone Book

Dialing via Phone Book

- 1  or  ➔ Highlight katakana row



Entry Search Window (By a-ka-sa-ta-na)


- When using Double Number in Dual Mode (P.2-27), Line indicators appear.

- 2 Select entry
- 3 Select phone number
- 4 Call

Placing Video Calls


In , **Video Call**

Dialing with Slider Closed

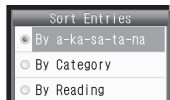
In , highlight entry ➔ **Call**

- When multiple numbers are saved, select one to proceed.

Changing Search Method

- 1 In entry search window, **Options** or  ➔ **Ph.Book Settings**


- 2 **Sort Entries**



- 3 **Select method**

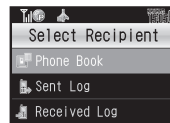
- Phone Book Search Methods:

| | |
|------------------|--|
| By a-ka-sa-ta-na | Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row |
| By Category | Opens entries in the specified Category |
| By Reading | Shows all entries in Reading order (katakana, alphabetical then numerical) |

Changing Search Method Temporarily
[Entry Search Window] Switch or
 (press repeatedly to toggle search methods)

Opening from Other Functions


Example: Enter a recipient via Phone Book when sending a message.



Select Recipient Window

- 1 **Phone Book**
 - Entry search window opens.
- 2 **Select entry**
- 3 **Select phone number or mail address**



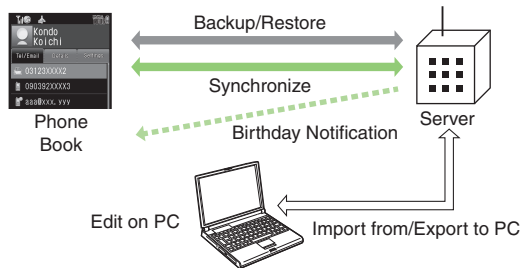
- Recipient is entered.
- Omit  if only one number or address is saved.

Advanced

-  ● Changing view for entry search window ● Messaging via Phone Book ● Deleting Phone Book entries (And more on P.4-8 - 4-10)

About SAB

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (P.4-6).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online.
- For more about SAB, see the corresponding Website (P.19-18).
- Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronize) all incur transmission fees.

SAB Sync Commands & Features

| | | |
|--------------------------------|--|--|
| Backup/Restore | Backup | Export Phone Book content to SAB ¹ |
| | Restore | Import SAB content to Phone Book ² |
| Synchronize | Synchronize | Synchronize Phone Book and SAB ³ |
| | Sync from Client | Add Phone Book changes to SAB ⁴ |
| | Sync from Server | Add SAB changes to Phone Book ⁵ |
| Edit on PC | Import from PC | Upload PC address book info to SAB |
| | Export to PC | Export SAB content to PC address book |
| Send Notice⁶ | Birthday Notification | SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset |
| | Email Address Notification⁷ | Send new handset mail address to specified addresses |
| | "Disaster Message Board" Message Notification⁸ | Send emergency message board update to specified addresses |
| Spam Filter | Tomodachi Email Filter⁹ | Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB |

¹Any existing SAB content is deleted.

²Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

³If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.

⁴Unrelated SAB changes remain.

⁵Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.

⁶Access this function via handset or a PC.

⁷Backup resets notification setting; handset address is sent to all addresses.

⁸Backup resets notification setting; updates are not sent to any address.

⁹Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.



Service Usage Outline

Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank Shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank (Japanese) via Yahoo! Keitai.



Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, user ID and password arrive via SMS.

- User ID and password are required to use SAB via a PC.



Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

Precautions

■ Unsynchronizable Items

SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:

- Picture, Tone/Video, Light, Vibration
- **Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion**
 - When no Phone Book content exists, selecting **Synchronize**, **Sync from Client** or **Backup** deletes all SAB content.
 - When no SAB content exists, selecting **Synchronize**, **Sync from Server** or **Restore** deletes all Phone Book content.

■ Phone Book ↔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronization reflects lower limit.

■ Contract Termination

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

■ SAB Transfers to New Handsets

- **SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets**
SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.
- **Other 3G Handsets**
SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.
- **V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series**
Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

■ When Double Number is Active

Regardless of usage mode setting, all Phone Book content is backed up.

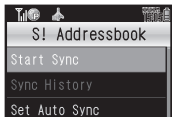


Backup & Restore



Backup (Phone Book → SAB)

Any existing SAB content is deleted.

- 1 MENU or  ➔ Phone ➔ S! Addressbook Backup**



S! Addressbook Menu



- 2 Start Sync ➔ Backup**
- 3 Yes ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or **
 - Backup starts; when completed, details appear.
- 4 OK or  ➔ Backup complete**

Canceling Backup


Cancel or  ➔ Yes

Restore (SAB → Phone Book)

Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

- 1 In S! Addressbook menu, Start Sync ➔ Restore**
- 2 Yes ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or **
 - Restore starts; when completed, details appear.
- 3 OK or  ➔ Restore complete**

Canceling Restore



Cancel or  ➔ Yes

Synchronizing Phone Book

Synchronize Options:

| | |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| Synchronize | Synchronize Phone Book and SAB |
| Sync from Client | Add Phone Book changes to SAB |
| Sync from Server | Add SAB changes to Phone Book |

If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), Synchronization is performed via Synchronize regardless of selection.

- 1 In S! Addressbook menu, Start Sync ➔ Select option**
- 2 Yes ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or **
 - Synchronization starts; when completed, details appear.
- 3 OK or  ➔ Synchronization complete**

Canceling Synchronization

Cancel or  ➔ Yes

Advanced

-  ● Confirming user ID & password ● Auto synchronization ● Opening log (P.4-11)



Phone Book

View Settings

| | |
|---|---|
| Changing view for entry search window | [Start Here] MENU or → Phone → Ph.Book Settings → See below |
| | <p>Portrait Orientation Vertical Display → List+Preview(business card)</p> <p>Landscape Orientation Horizontal Display → Name+Email</p> |
| Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions | [Start Here] MENU or → Phone → Add New Entry → Picture: → See below |
| | <p>Assigning Images Assign Picture → Select image</p> <p>Capturing Images Take Picture → Frame image on Display → or → or </p> |
| Hiding confirmation after calls to/from unsaved numbers | MENU or → Phone → Ph.Book Settings → New Number Prompt → Incoming Call or Outgoing Call → Off |

Phone Book Entry

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Saving other information | [Start Here] MENU or → Phone → Add New Entry → See below |
| | <p>Address Address: → Select item → Complete field → OK or </p> |
| | <p>Office Office: → Select item → Enter text → Done or → OK or </p> |
| | <p>Homepage Homepage: → Enter URL → Done or → Select type</p> |
| | <p>Note Note: → Enter text → Done or </p> |
| Setting Light Color | <p>Birthday Birthday: → Enter date → Accept or </p> |
| | <p>Location Information Location Info.: → Enter Location Information</p> |
| | MENU or → Phone → Add New Entry → Select item, e.g., Light-Voice Call: → Switch On/Off → Select option → Light Color → Select color |
| Changing vibration pattern | MENU or → Phone → Add New Entry → Select item, e.g., Vibration-Message: → Switch On/Off → Select option → Vibration Pattern → Select pattern → CLEAR/BACK or |



| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Editing Phone Book entries | <p>☐ or Ⓞ → Highlight katakana row → Highlight entry → Options or ☐/ → Edit → Select item → Edit → Save or ☐/</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Edit Reading after editing names. |
| Setting incoming mail ring time | <p>☐ or Ⓞ → Highlight katakana row → Highlight entry → Options or ☐/ → Edit → Tone-New Message: → Duration → Enter time → Accept or ● → Save or ☐/</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available for compatible ringtones. |
| Renaming Categories | <p>MENU or ● → Phone → Category Control → Select Category → Edit Name → Enter name → Done or ●</p> |
| Moving Categories | <p>MENU or ● → Phone → Category Control → Highlight Category → Move or ☐/ → Select target location</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> View for By Category Phone Book search changes accordingly. |

Using Entries

| | |
|--|---|
| | <p>Start Here ☐ or Ⓞ → Highlight katakana row → Select entry → See below</p> <p>Phone Numbers Select phone number → Create Message → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message → Send or ☐/</p> <p>Mail Addresses Select address → Complete message → Send or ☐/</p> |
| Messaging via Phone Book | |
| Placing Decoration Calls via Phone Book | <p>☐ or Ⓞ → Highlight katakana row → Select entry → Select phone number → Deco. Call → Deco. Call File → Deco. Call Folder → Select file → Call Type → Voice Call or Video Call → Call or ☐/</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When placing a Decoration Call for the first time, a confirmation appears. |
| Initiating S! Circle Talk via Phone Book | <p>☐ or Ⓞ → Highlight katakana row → Select entry → Select phone number → Call S! Circle Talk → Call or ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set My Status to Online first. |
| Placing international calls via Phone Book | <p>☐ or Ⓞ → Highlight katakana row → Select entry → Select phone number → Int'l Call → Select country → Call or ● → Call</p> |
| Using Location Information via Phone Book | <p>☐ or Ⓞ → Highlight katakana row → Select entry → Highlight Settings tab → Highlight Ⓞ → Options or ☐/ → Set to Destination → Follow onscreen instructions</p> |



■ Managing Entries

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Deleting Phone Book entries | <p>One Entry <input type="checkbox"/> or → Highlight katakana row → Highlight entry → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Delete</i> → <i>Yes</i></p> |
| | <p>All Entries <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Phone</i> → <i>Manage Entries</i> → <i>Delete All</i> → Select entry type → <i>Yes</i> → Enter Handset Code → <i>OK</i> or </p> |
| Checking memory status | <p><i>MENU</i> or → <i>Phone</i> → <i>Manage Entries</i> → <i>Memory Status</i></p> |
| Copying Phone Book entries | <p>One Entry (Handset → USIM Card) <input type="checkbox"/> or → Highlight katakana row → Highlight entry → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Manage Entries</i> → <i>Copy Entry to USIM</i> → <i>Yes</i></p> |
| | <p>One Entry (USIM Card → Handset) <input type="checkbox"/> or → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Ph.Book Settings</i> → <i>Select Phone Book</i> → <i>USIM Memory</i> → Highlight katakana row → Highlight entry → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Manage Entries</i> → <i>Copy Entry to Phone</i></p> |
| | <p>All Entries <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Phone</i> → <i>Manage Entries</i> → <i>Copy All</i> → Select method → <i>Yes</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If handset/USIM Card memory is low, some entries may not be copied. |






| | |
|--|--|
| Editing Categories on USIM Card | <p><small>[Start Here]</small> <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Phone</i> → <i>Category Control</i> → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Change to USIM</i> → See below</p> |
| | <p>Renaming Categories Select Category → <i>Edit Name</i> → Enter name → <i>Done</i> or </p> |
| | <p>Moving Categories Highlight Category → <i>Move</i> or → Select target location</p> |
| | <p>Changing Icons Select Category → <i>Change Icon</i> → Select type</p> |
| Changing default storage media for new entries | <p><i>MENU</i> or → <i>Phone</i> → <i>Ph.Book Settings</i> → <i>Save New Entry</i> → <i>USIM Memory</i> or <i>Ask Each Time</i></p> |
| Switching reference Phone Book | <p><i>MENU</i> or → <i>Phone</i> → <i>Ph.Book Settings</i> → <i>Select Phone Book</i> → <i>USIM Memory</i> or <i>Both</i></p> |

■ Mode Settings

Activate Double Number first.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Changing mode of all entries at once | <p><i>MENU</i> or → <i>Phone</i> → <i>Manage Entries</i> → <i>Change Mode(All)</i> → Select mode → Enter Handset Code → <i>OK</i> or </p> |
| Changing mode of multiple entries | <p><input type="checkbox"/> or → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Manage Entries</i> → <i>Multiple Selection</i> → Select entry (↔ <input type="checkbox"/>) → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Change Mode</i> → Select mode</p> |
| Changing mode of entries by Category | <p><input type="checkbox"/> or → Select Category → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Manage Entries</i> → <i>Change Mode(Category)</i> → Select mode → Enter Handset Code → <i>OK</i> or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set search method to <i>By Category</i> first. |



| S! Addressbook Back-up | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Confirming user ID & password | <p>Y! or  ⇒ <i>メニューリスト</i> ⇒ <i>My SoftBank</i> ⇒ <i>English</i> ⇒ <i>Password confirmation for S! Address Book</i> ⇒ Follow onscreen instructions</p> |
| Auto synchronization | <p><small>(Start Here)</small> MENU or  ⇒ <i>Phone</i> ⇒ <i>S! Addressbook Backup</i> ⇒ <i>Set Auto Sync</i> ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ OK or  ⇒ See below</p> <p>Activating <i>Set On/Off</i> ⇒ <i>On</i></p> |
| | <p>Changing Auto Sync Frequency <i>Set On/Off</i> ⇒ <i>On</i> ⇒ <i>Set Frequency</i> ⇒ Select frequency ⇒ Enter/select date/time/day of the week ⇒ <i>Accept</i> or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For <i>After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)</i>, omit steps for date, time, etc. |
| | <p>Changing Auto Sync Command <i>Set On/Off</i> ⇒ <i>On</i> ⇒ <i>Set Sync Mode</i> ⇒ Select command</p> |
| Opening log | <p>MENU or  ⇒ <i>Phone</i> ⇒ <i>S! Addressbook Backup</i> ⇒ <i>Sync History</i> ⇒ Select record</p> |



Phone Book



Assigned images do not appear for incoming transmissions

- Source files may be deleted or moved to Memory Card; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Images do not appear if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Images do not appear for incoming Decoration Calls including image/video.
- Images may not appear when another function is active, etc.



Handset does not ring for incoming transmissions as set

- Source files may be deleted; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Ringtone/ringvideo settings are disabled if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Ringtones do not sound for incoming Decoration Calls with sound.
- Memory Card with source files may be removed; reinsert the card to restore settings.



Cannot enter 16 characters for Category names

- Character entry limit for Category names may be lower depending on the USIM Card in use.



Emergency Calls 5-2
Voice Calling..... 5-3
Video Calling 5-6
Decoration Call..... 5-8
Speed Dial..... 5-9

Call Time & Call Cost 5-11
Optional Services 5-12
Additional Functions 5-14
Troubleshooting..... 5-23

5

Calling



Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets. (Emergency Location Report)

931SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with **184**). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Not available during international roaming.

Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

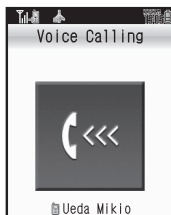
| Active Restriction | Emergency Calls |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| Max Cost (P.5-18) | Possible |
| Function Lock (P.2-24) | |
| Outgoing Calls (P.5-20) | |
| Offline Mode (P.2-17) | Restricted |
| Keypad Lock (P.2-2) | |
| PIN Entry (P.2-24) | |





Voice Calling

Answering a Voice Call


Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Voice Call Window


- 1 **Answer** or  to accept the call
 - Call connects.
- 2 **End Call** or  ➔ Call ends

Incoming Calls while Keypad Lock is Active

- To answer calls with Touch Panel, press  to cancel Keypad Lock.

Muting Ringer Temporarily

[Incoming Voice Call Window]




Ringer Off or 

After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers


- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

Placing a Voice Call

Follow these steps to dial via Phone Book:

- 1  or  ➔ **Highlight katakana row**
- 2 **Select entry** ➔ **Select phone number**
- 3 **Call**
 - Handset dials the number; wait for connection.
- 4 **End Call** or  ➔ Call ends



Specifying Lines in Dual Mode (P.2-27)

In , **Select Line(Voice)** ➔ **Select line**


Earpiece Volume

During a call,  or 









Entering Phone Numbers Directly

- 1 **Enter phone number with area code**
- 2 **Call** or  ➔ **Call**
 - Handset dials the number.
- 3 **End Call** or  ➔ Call ends

Using Touch Panel

With Slider closed,  ➔ Enter phone number with area code ➔ **Call**

Advanced

-   Rejecting calls  Placing calls on hold  Answering with Headphones (P.5-14)
-  Sending/blocking Caller ID  Muting Microphone  Placing calls on hold (And more on P.5-15 - 5-16)
-  Activating auto call answer upon Slider open (P.5-21)



Placing an International Call

- 1 Enter phone number with area code ➔  or 




- 2 Select country ➔ *Call* or  ➔ *Call*

• Handset dials the number.





- 3 End Call or  ➔ Call ends

Calling Unlisted Countries

In 2, Enter Code ➔ Enter country code ➔ OK or  ➔ *Call* or  ➔ *Call*

Placing Calls while Abroad

See below to place a call to Japan from abroad.
Apply for Global Roaming beforehand.
http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/global_service/

- 1 Enter phone number with area code ➔  or 
- 2 日本(JPN) ➔ *Call* or  ➔ *Call*
• Handset dials the number.
- 3 End Call or  ➔ Call ends

Calling SoftBank Handsets

• In 2, always select 日本(JPN).


Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country

• Perform steps in "Placing a Voice Call" on P.5-3.

Calls Overseas

• Calling may not be possible outside Japan.
Connections depend on available network, signal strength, and handset settings.

Advanced

-  • Placing calls by entering country code directly • Adding a country code automatically when placing calls • Saving frequently used international prefix
• Adding/changing/deleting country codes (P.5-15)



Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset. Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off or out-of-range. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.


1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Highlight Call** tab

2 **Answer Phone** ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔ **On**

Answering Calls while Recording

- No message will be recorded.

Using a Single Key

- Long Press  to activate/cancel Answer Phone.

Playing Messages

1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Phone** ➔ **Play Message**










2 **Select record**

- Playback ends automatically after all messages have played.

Using a Single Key

 ➔ **2**

Playback Operations

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Volume Control |  or  |
| Replay/ Skip Backward |  or  |
| Stop |  or  |
| Skip Forward |  or  |
| Delete | Delete or  ➔ Yes |

Advanced

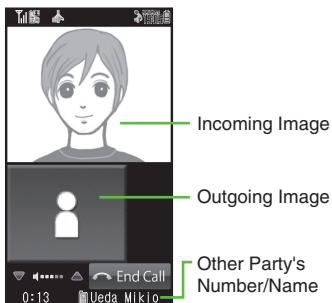
-   Recording caller messages
-  Changing ring time
-  Sampling outgoing message
-  Muting Earpiece (P.5-14)



Video Calling

View the other party's image or send an Outgoing Image to compatible handsets.

Window Description



Incoming Image

Outgoing Image

Other Party's
Number/Name

Engaged Video Call Operations

■ Toggle View

Options or ➔ **Switch Images** ➔
Select option

■ Toggle Outgoing Image

SW or

■ Open Help

Options or ➔ **Help**

Advanced

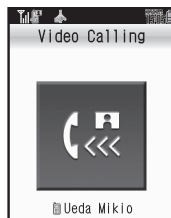
- Rejecting calls ● Placing calls on hold ● Answering with Headphones ● Answering Video Calls automatically ● Editing Auto Answer List ● Changing ring time (P.5-14)

Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are using handset models without internal cameras, Video Call cannot be used as intended.
- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Video Calls cannot be placed while TV is active.

Answering a Video Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Video Call Window

- 1 Answer** or to accept the call
- 2 End Call** or ➔ **Call ends**

Incoming Calls while Keypad Lock is Active

- To answer calls with Touch Panel, press to cancel Keypad Lock.

Answering with External Camera Image

[Incoming Video Call Window] ➔ **No**

Muting Ringer Temporarily

[Incoming Video Call Window]

Ringer Off or



After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers

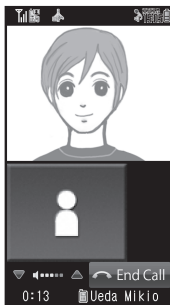
- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.



Placing a Video Call

Follow these steps to dial via Phone Book:

- 1  or  ➔ **Highlight katakana row**
- 2 **Select entry ➔ Select phone number**
- 3 **Video Call**





- Call is accepted and image appears.

- 4 **End Call** or  ➔ **Call ends**


Specifying Lines in Dual Mode (P.2-27)

In , **Select Line(Video)** ➔ **Select line**








■ Entering Phone Numbers Directly

- 1 **Enter phone number with area code**
- 2 **Call** or  ➔ **Video Call**
 - Handset dials the number.
- 3 **End Call** or  ➔ **Call ends**

Using Touch Panel

With Slider closed,  ➔ **Enter phone number with area code ➔ Options ➔ Video Call**

Advanced

-   Sending/blocking Caller ID  Muting Microphone  Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness (And more on **P.5-15 - 5-16**)
-  Changing Alternative Image  Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls  Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls (And more on **P.5-22**)



Decoration Call

Show decorative message in incoming call windows on recipient's handset.

- Available without a separate contract.
- Recipient's handset must be Decoration Call-compatible.
- Charges apply to the caller when Decoration Call is placed successfully.


Answering a Decoration Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Decoration Call Window

If Softkeys do not appear, handle incoming Decoration Call like any other call.


1 Answer or  to accept the call

- Call connects.

2 End Call or  ➔ Call ends

- Open/save Decoration Call files from received call records.

Incoming Calls while Keypad Lock is Active

- To answer calls with Touch Panel, press  to cancel Keypad Lock.

Note

- Decoration Call file may not play depending on recipient handset settings.


Placing a Decoration Call


Follow these steps to place a Decoration Call by entering a phone number:

1 Enter phone number ➔ Call or  ➔ Deco. Call

2 Deco. Call File

3 Deco. Call Folder ➔ Select file



- To check selected file, press **Play** or .

4 Call or 

- Handset dials the number. (It may take some time.)

5 End Call or  ➔ Call ends






Placing Your First Decoration Call

- A confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.
 - To disable confirmation, press **Cancel** or  (.

Placing Decoration Video Calls

After , **Call Type ➔ Video Call ➔ 4**

Advanced

-   Creating Decoration Call files
-  Editing Decoration Call files
-  Saving received Decoration Call files
-  Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls (And more on P.5-16)



Speed Dial

Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial/Mail list for easy dialing.

- 1 **MENU** or **Phone**
- 2 **Speed Dial/Mail**
- 3 **Select number** → **Highlight katakana row** → **Select entry**
- 4 **Select phone number**



- Select mail address prompt appears.

- 5 **Do not Assign**
To save mail address instead, select one.

6 **Save** or **Y** → **Saved**

- To save additional phone numbers, repeat 6 - 6.

Using Headphones for Speed Dial

- Save a phone number to **□**.

Canceling Speed Dial Entries

- In 2, highlight entry → **Options** or **□** → **Remove Selected or Remove All** → **Yes**
- Omit entry selection step when canceling all entries.

Using Speed Dial

- 1 **Enter 0 - 99** (entry number)
- 2 **Call** or **Phone** → **Speed Dial**

Placing Video Calls

- In 2, **Call** or **Phone** → **Speed Video**

Placing Decoration Calls

- In 2, **Call** or **Phone** → **Speed Deco. Call** → **Deco. Call File** → **Select/create file** → **Call** or **□**

Using Headphones

- In Standby, Long Press Call Button until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in **□**. To end the call, Long Press Call Button until a beep sounds.



Call Log


Open recent dialed/received call records.

1  or 



- All Calls, Dialed Numbers, Dialed Frequency and Received Calls are separated by tabs.
- When using Double Number in Dual Mode (P.2-27), Line indicators appear except for Dialed Frequency.









2 **Highlight tab (log type) ➔**
Select record

- Select Decoration Call record and press **Play** or  to open the corresponding file.

When the Same Number is Dialed More Than Once Using the Same Call Option

- Only the last record appears. (All records appear for S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call.)

Advanced

-   Dialing from records
-  Sending messages from records
-  Saving Phone Book entries from records
-  Deleting records
-  Placing Decoration Calls from records
-  Initiating S! Circle Talk from records
-  Hiding Dialed Frequency (P.5-17 - 5-18)



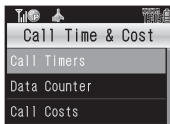
Call Time & Call Cost

Call Time

Check estimated time of the most recent call and all calls.

1 **MENU** or **ⓘ** ➔ **Settings** ➔
Highlight **Call** tab

2 **Call Time & Cost**



Call Time & Cost Menu

3 **Call Timers**



4 **Dialed Calls or Received Calls**

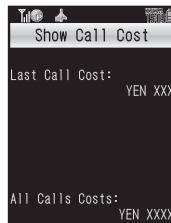
Call Cost

Check estimated call charges of the most recent call and all calls.

Call Costs (including Max Cost) may be unavailable depending on subscription status.

1 In **Call Time & Cost** menu,
Call Costs

2 **Show Call Cost**



Advanced

- Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls
- Showing Call Cost after each call
- Limiting Call Costs
- Checking packet transmission volume (And more on P.5-18 - 5-19)



Optional Services

Call Forwarding and Voicemail can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Call Forwarding | Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number |
| Voicemail | Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access messages from handset/touchtone phones |
| Call Waiting* | Answer incoming calls or open another line during a call |
| Group Calling* | Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for teleconferencing |
| Call Barring | Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions |
| Caller ID | Show or hide your own number when placing calls |

*A separate contract is required.

Initiating Call Forwarding

Follow these steps to divert calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book after selected ring time (**No Answer** set):

1 **MENU** or **Settings** **Call** tab

2 **Voicemail/Divert**



Voicemail/Divert Menu

3 **Diverts** **Select call type**

4 **No Answer**

5 **Phone Book** **Highlight katakana row** **Select entry**

6 **Select phone number**

• Omit if only one number is saved.

7 **Done** or

8 **Select ring time**

Diverting Calls without Handset Response

In , **Always** -

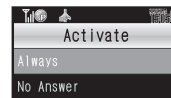
Entering Forwarding Number Directly

In , **Enter Number** **Enter phone number** **Done** or

Initiating Voicemail

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (**No Answer** set):

1 In **Voicemail/Divert menu**, **Voicemail** **Activate**



2 **No Answer** **Select ring time**

Diverting Calls without Handset Response

In , **Always**



Advanced

Checking service status (P.5-19)

Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

- MENU** or **Call** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Highlight Call** tab



Call Menu

- out** **Missed Calls** ➔ **Call** or **Call**
 - When using Double Number in Dual Mode (P.2-27), select a line.
 - Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Playing Messages

- In **Call** menu, **Voicemail/Divert**



Voicemail/Divert Menu

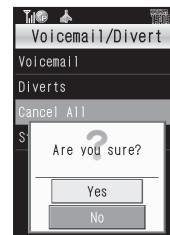
- Voicemail**
- Call Voicemail**

- When using Double Number in Dual Mode, select a line.
- Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Hiding New Voicemail Message Indicator
In **Call**, **Delete Icon** ➔ **Yes**

Canceling Call Forwarding/Voicemail

- In **Voicemail/Divert** menu, **Cancel All**



- Yes**

Advanced

- Activating Call Waiting
- Talking on multiple lines simultaneously
- Rejecting calls by number
- Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction
- Setting/canceling incoming call restriction (And more on P.5-19 - 5-21)



Receiving a Call

■ Handling Incoming Calls

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Rejecting calls | Voice Call When a call arrives, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Reject</i> |
| | Video Call When a call arrives, <i>Reject</i> or <i>Reject</i> |
| Placing calls on hold | When a call arrives, <i>Hold</i> or <i>Hold</i> • Press <i>Answer</i> or to answer the call on hold. |
| Answering with Headphones | When a call arrives, <i>Long Press Call Button</i> • To end the call, <i>Long Press Call Button</i> . |

■ Answer Phone

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Recording caller messages | When a Voice Call arrives, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Record Message</i> |
| Changing ring time | <i>MENU</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Highlight Call tab</i> ➔ <i>Answer Phone</i> ➔ <i>Answer Time</i> ➔ <i>Enter time</i> ➔ <i>OK</i> or |
| Sampling outgoing message | <i>MENU</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Highlight Call tab</i> ➔ <i>Answer Phone</i> ➔ <i>Outgoing Message</i> • Press <i>CLEAR/BACK</i> or to stop playback. |
| Muting Earpiece | <i>MENU</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Highlight Call tab</i> ➔ <i>Answer Phone</i> ➔ <i>Volume</i> ➔ <i>Silent</i> |

■ Remote Monitor

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Answering Video Calls automatically | [Start Here] MENU or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Highlight Call tab</i> ➔ <i>Video Call</i> ➔ <i>Remote Monitor</i> ➔ <i>Enter Handset Code</i> ➔ <i>OK</i> or ➔ <i>See below</i> |
| | Saving Numbers from Phone Book <i>Auto Answer List</i> ➔ <i>Highlight <Empty></i> ➔ <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Change</i> ➔ <i>From Phone Book</i> ➔ <i>Highlight katakana row</i> ➔ <i>Select entry</i> ➔ <i>Select phone number</i> • To enter a phone number directly, select <i><Empty></i> . |
| | Saving Numbers from Call Log <i>Auto Answer List</i> ➔ <i>Highlight <Empty></i> ➔ <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Change</i> ➔ <i>From Call Log</i> ➔ <i>Select record</i> |
| Editing Auto Answer List | Activating Remote Monitor <i>Switch On/Off</i> ➔ <i>On</i> ➔ <i>OK</i> or • A tone sounds for calls answered via Remote Monitor. (Tone and volume are fixed.) |
| | [Start Here] MENU or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Highlight Call tab</i> ➔ <i>Video Call</i> ➔ <i>Remote Monitor</i> ➔ <i>Enter Handset Code</i> ➔ <i>OK</i> or ➔ <i>Auto Answer List</i> ➔ <i>See below</i> |
| Changing ring time | Editing Numbers <i>Select entry</i> ➔ <i>Edit</i> ➔ <i>Done</i> or |
| | Deleting Entries <i>Highlight entry</i> ➔ <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔ <i>Yes</i> |
| Changing ring time | <i>MENU</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Highlight Call tab</i> ➔ <i>Video Call</i> ➔ <i>Remote Monitor</i> ➔ <i>Enter Handset Code</i> ➔ <i>OK</i> or ➔ <i>Answer Time</i> ➔ <i>Enter time</i> ➔ <i>OK</i> or |



Placing a Call

Basic Operations

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Adjusting Earpiece Volume | <i>MENU</i> or \rightarrow <i>Settings</i> \rightarrow In Phone menu, <i>Earpiece Volume</i> \rightarrow Adjust level |
| Sending/blocking Caller ID | After phone number entry, <i>Options</i> or \rightarrow <i>Hide My ID</i> or <i>Show My ID</i> |

International Calls

| | |
|--|--|
| Placing calls by entering country code directly | (+ appears) \rightarrow Enter country code \rightarrow Enter phone number with area code \rightarrow <i>Call</i> or \rightarrow <i>Call</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Omit the first 0 of the area code except when calling Italy or some other countries. |
| Adding a country code automatically when placing calls | <small>Start Here</small> <i>MENU</i> or \rightarrow <i>Settings</i> \rightarrow Highlight <i>Call</i> tab \rightarrow <i>Int'l Calling</i> \rightarrow <i>Auto Add Code</i> \rightarrow See below |
| | Activating Auto Add Code <i>Switch On/Off</i> \rightarrow <i>On</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When Auto Add Code is active, preset country code is added to all phone numbers (except emergency call numbers) unless + is included. |
| | Selecting a Country from List <i>Country Code</i> \rightarrow Select country |
| | Specifying a Country Code <i>Country Code</i> \rightarrow \rightarrow <i>Enter Code</i> \rightarrow Enter country code \rightarrow <i>Done</i> or |
| Saving frequently used international prefix | <i>MENU</i> or \rightarrow <i>Settings</i> \rightarrow Highlight <i>Call</i> tab \rightarrow <i>Int'l Calling</i> \rightarrow <i>Int'l Prefix</i> \rightarrow Enter Handset Code \rightarrow <i>OK</i> or \rightarrow Enter prefix \rightarrow <i>Done</i> or |

Adding/changing/deleting country codes

Start Here *MENU* or \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow Highlight *Call* tab \rightarrow *Int'l Calling* \rightarrow *Country Codes* \rightarrow See below

Adding

 <Empty> \rightarrow Enter name \rightarrow *Done* or \rightarrow Enter country code \rightarrow *Done* or

Changing

 Select country \rightarrow *Change* \rightarrow Enter name \rightarrow *Done* or \rightarrow Enter country code \rightarrow *Done* or

Deleting

 Select country \rightarrow *Delete* \rightarrow *Yes*

During a Call

| | |
|--|---|
| Muting Microphone | Voice Call During a call, <i>Mute</i> or (press again to cancel) |
| | Video Call During a call, <i>Options</i> or \rightarrow <i>Mute</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To cancel, select <i>Unmute</i>. |
| Recording caller voice (Voice Call only) | During a call, <i>Options</i> or \rightarrow <i>Record Caller Voice</i> \rightarrow Recording starts \rightarrow <i>Stop</i> or \rightarrow Recording ends |
| Activating/canceling Loudspeaker | Activating Loudspeaker for Voice Call During a call, or \rightarrow While message appears, <i>OK</i> or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To cancel, press or . |
| Switching sound output | Canceling Loudspeaker for Video Call During a call, or (press again to activate) |
| | During a call, <i>Options</i> or \rightarrow <i>Transfer Audio</i> \rightarrow <i>To Phone</i> or <i>To Bluetooth</i> |



| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Opening Phone Book | During a call, Options or ➔ Phone Book ➔ Highlight katakana row ➔ Select entry • Press CLEAR/BACK or twice to return to call window. |
| Opening My Details | During a call, Options or ➔ My Details • Press CLEAR/BACK or to return to call window. |
| Saving Phone Book entries | During a call, Options or ➔ Phone Book ➔ Options or ➔ Add New Entry ➔ Complete fields ➔ Save or • Press CLEAR/BACK or to return to call window. |
| Disabling touch tone signaling | During a call, Options or ➔ Disable DTMF |
| Placing calls on hold | During a call, Options or ➔ Hold • Subscription to Call Waiting or Group Calling is required to place Voice Calls on hold. • To resume Voice Calls, press Options or , then select Retrieve . • To resume Video Calls, press Retrve or . |
| Opening messages (Voice Call only) | During a call, Options or ➔ Messaging ➔ Select Messaging folder ➔ Select folder ➔ Select message • Press CLEAR/BACK or three times to return to call window. |
| Creating messages (Voice Call only) | During a call, Options or ➔ Messaging ➔ Create Message or Create New SMS ➔ Complete message ➔ Send or |
| Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness | During a Video Call, Options or ➔ Exposure ➔ Adjust level ➔ OK or • Alternative Image brightness is fixed. |

Decoration Call

| | |
|--|---|
| Creating Decoration Call files | [Start Here] MENU or ➔ Data Folder ➔ Decoration Call ➔ Options or ➔ Create New File ➔ Text Input ➔ Enter text ➔ Done or ➔ Images ➔ See below Using Still Images Picture ➔ Pictures ➔ Select file ➔ Sounds ➔ Select folder ➔ Select file ➔ Save or ➔ Save here Using Video Video ➔ Videos ➔ Select file ➔ Save or ➔ Save here Using Animation Flash® ➔ Select file ➔ Save or ➔ Save here |
| Editing Decoration Call files | MENU or ➔ Data Folder ➔ Decoration Call ➔ Highlight file ➔ Options or ➔ Edit ➔ Edit ➔ Save or ➔ Save as New or Overwrite • For Save as New , select Save here . |
| Saving received Decoration Call files | or ➔ Highlight tab (log type) ➔ Highlight record ➔ Options or ➔ Save File ➔ Save here |
| Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls | MENU or ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Call tab ➔ Decoration Call ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ Off ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or |
| Hiding incoming Decoration Call window | MENU or ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Call tab ➔ Decoration Call ➔ Play in Receiving ➔ Off |



| | |
|---|--|
| Using mobile camera to create Decoration Call files | <p>Start Here MENU or ➔ Data Folder ➔ Decoration Call ➔ Options or ➔ Create New File ➔ Text Input ➔ Enter text ➔ Done or ➔ Images ➔ See below</p> <p>Capturing Still Images Picture ➔ Take Picture ➔ Capture image ➔ or ➔ Save or ➔ Save here</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Combine image with sound as needed. <p>Recording Video Video ➔ Record Video ➔ Record video ➔ Save ➔ Save or ➔ Save here</p> |
| Removing image/video/sound | <p>Start Here MENU or ➔ Data Folder ➔ Decoration Call ➔ Highlight file ➔ Options or ➔ Edit ➔ See below</p> <p>Removing Image/Video Images ➔ Remove Image ➔ Save or ➔ Save as New or Overwrite</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For Save as New, select Save here. <p>Removing Sound Sounds ➔ Remove Sound ➔ Save or ➔ Save as New or Overwrite</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For Save as New, select Save here. |
| Showing options upon Decoration Call failure | <p>MENU or ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Call tab ➔ Decoration Call ➔ Notice ➔ On</p> |

Call Log

| | |
|--|---|
| Dialing from records | <p>Calling Dialed Numbers (Redial) or ➔ Highlight Dialed or Dialed (Freq.) tab ➔ Select record ➔ Call or ➔ Call</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To place Video Calls, select Video Call. <p>Calling from Received Call Records or ➔ Highlight Received tab ➔ Select record ➔ Call or ➔ Call</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To place Video Calls, select Video Call. |
| Sending messages from records | <p> or ➔ Highlight tab (log type) ➔ Highlight record ➔ Options or ➔ Create Message ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ Complete message ➔ Send or </p> |
| Saving Phone Book entries from records | <p> or ➔ Highlight tab (log type) ➔ Highlight record ➔ Options or ➔ Save to Phone Book ➔ As New Entry ➔ Complete other fields ➔ Save or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail. |
| Deleting records | <p>One Record or ➔ Highlight tab (log type) ➔ Highlight record ➔ Options or ➔ Delete ➔ Yes</p> <p>All Records or ➔ Options or ➔ Delete All ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or ➔ Yes</p> |
| Placing Decoration Calls from records | <p> or ➔ Highlight tab (log type) ➔ Highlight record ➔ Options or ➔ Deco. Call ➔ Deco. Call File ➔ Select/create file ➔ Call or </p> |



| | |
|--|--|
| Initiating S! Circle Talk from records | <p>☰ or ☰ → Highlight tab (log type) → Highlight record → Options or ☑ → Call S! Circle Talk → Call or ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set My Status to <i>Online</i> first. |
| Hiding Dialed Frequency | <p>MENU or ● → Phone → Call Log Setting → Hide Dialed Freq.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Handset Code is required to re-select <i>Show Dialed Freq.</i> |

Call Time/Call Cost/Data Communication

■ Call Time



| | |
|--|---|
| Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls | <p>MENU or ● → Settings → Highlight Call tab → Minute Minder → On</p> |
| Hiding Call Time during calls | <p>MENU or ● → Settings → Highlight Call tab → Disp. Time/Cost → Call Time Counter → Off</p> |
| Resetting Call Timers | <p>MENU or ● → Settings → Highlight Call tab → Call Time & Cost → Call Timers → Clear Timers → Enter Handset Code → OK or ● → Yes</p> |

■ Call Cost

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Showing Call Cost after each call | <p>MENU or ● → Settings → Highlight Call tab → Disp. Time/Cost → Display Call Cost → On</p> |
| Resetting Call Costs | <p>MENU or ● → Settings → Highlight Call tab → Call Time & Cost → Call Costs → Show Call Cost → Reset or ☑ → Enter PIN2 → OK or ● → Yes</p> |
| Limiting Call Costs | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ● → Settings → Highlight Call tab → Call Time & Cost → Call Costs → See below</p> <p>Setting a Limit</p> <p>Max Cost/Residual → Set or ☑ → Set → Enter PIN2 → OK or ● → Enter amount → Accept or ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> May be unavailable depending on subscription status. <p>Changing the Limit</p> <p>Max Cost/Residual → Edit or ☑ → Enter PIN2 → OK or ● → Enter amount → Accept or ●</p> <p>Checking Remaining Amount</p> <p>Max Cost/Residual</p> |
| Showing amount in another currency | <p>MENU or ● → Settings → Highlight Call tab → Call Time & Cost → Call Costs → Cost Units → Edit or ☑ → Enter PIN2 → OK or ● → Enter currency → Done or ● → Enter exchange rate (per yen) → Accept or ● → OK or ● → OK or ●</p> |



■ Data Communication





| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Checking packet transmission volume | <p>Start Here MENU or  ⇒ Settings ⇒ Highlight Call tab ⇒ Call Time & Cost ⇒ Data Counter ⇒ See below</p> |
| | <p>Most Recent Volume Last Data</p> |
| | <p>All Volume All Data</p> |
| Resetting Data Counter | <p>MENU or  ⇒ Settings ⇒ Highlight Call tab ⇒ Call Time & Cost ⇒ Data Counter ⇒ Clear Counter ⇒ Yes</p> |

Optional Services





■ All Services

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Checking service status | <p>MENU or  ⇒ Settings ⇒ Highlight Call tab ⇒ Select service ⇒ Status</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For Call Barring, select restriction. |
|-------------------------|---|





■ Call Waiting (Contract Required)

| | |
|---|---|
| Activating Call Waiting | <p>MENU or  ⇒ Settings ⇒ Highlight Call tab ⇒ Call Waiting ⇒ On</p> |
| Placing Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2 | <p>A tone sounds during a Voice Call ⇒ Hold & Answer or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press Swap or  to switch between lines. Press End Call or  to end active line and re-engage the party on hold. |

■ Group Calling (Contract Required)

| | |
|--|--|
| Opening another line during a call | <p>During a Voice Call, enter phone number ⇒ Call or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternatively, select a number from Call Log records. |
| Switching between open lines (Swap Calls) | <p>During a Voice Call, Swap or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press Swap or  to switch between lines. |
| Talking on multiple lines simultaneously | <p>While switching between lines, Options or /</p> <p>⇒ Group Calling ⇒ Conference All</p> |
| Switching to private conversation during Group Calling | <p>During a Voice Call, select number/name ⇒ Private</p> |

■ Call Barring





| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| Rejecting calls by number | <p>Start Here MENU or  ⇒ Settings ⇒ Highlight Call tab ⇒ Call Barring ⇒ Rejected Numbers ⇒ Black List ⇒ See below</p> |
| | <p>Saving Numbers Set Reject Number ⇒  ⇒ <Empty> ⇒  ⇒ Enter phone number ⇒ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When using Double Number in Dual Mode (P.2-27), select a line type. |
| | <p>Activating Black List Switch On/Off ⇒ On</p> |



| | |
|--|--|
| Rejecting calls without designating numbers | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ⊙ ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Call tab ➔ Call Barring ➔ Rejected Numbers ➔ See below</p> <p>Calls from Unsaved Numbers <i>Unknown</i> ➔ <i>On</i></p> |
| | <p>Calls with No/Undisplayable Caller ID or from Public Phones <i>Withheld</i> ➔ <i>On</i></p> |
| Changing Network Password | <p>MENU or ⊙ ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Call tab ➔ Call Barring ➔ Change NW Password ➔ Enter current Network Password ➔ OK or ⊙ ➔ Enter new Network Password ➔ OK or ⊙ ➔ Re-enter new Network Password ➔ OK or ⊙</p> |
| Designating numbers to reject from saved information | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ⊙ ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Call tab ➔ Call Barring ➔ Rejected Numbers ➔ Black List ➔ Set Reject Number ➔ Highlight <Empty> ➔ Options or ☑ ➔ See below</p> |
| | <p>From Phone Book <i>Ph. Book List</i> ➔ Select entry</p> |
| | <p>From Call Log Records <i>From Call Log</i> ➔ Select record</p> |
| | <p>From S! Friend's Status Member List <i>From Friend's Status</i> ➔ Select member</p> |






| | |
|---|---|
| Editing Black List | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ⊙ ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Call tab ➔ Call Barring ➔ Rejected Numbers ➔ Black List ➔ Set Reject Number ➔ See below</p> |
| | <p>Editing Numbers Select number/name ➔ Edit ➔ Done or ⊙</p> |
| Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction | <p>Deleting Numbers Highlight number/name ➔ Options or ☑ ➔ Delete ➔ Yes</p> |
| | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ⊙ ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Call tab ➔ Call Barring ➔ Outgoing Calls ➔ See below</p> <p>Setting Restriction Select restriction ➔ On ➔ Enter Network Password ➔ OK or ⊙</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Outgoing S! Circle Talk requests are not affected. • Following restrictions are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ All Outgoing Calls: Restrict all non-emergency calls ■ Bar Int'l Call: Restrict all international calls ■ Local & Home Only: Restrict all international calls except to Japan |
| | <p>Canceling All Restrictions Cancel All ➔ Enter Network Password ➔ OK or ⊙</p> |



| | |
|---|---|
| Setting/canceling incoming call restriction | <p>Start Here MENU or  ⇒ Settings ⇒ Highlight Call tab ⇒ Call Barring ⇒ Incoming Calls ⇒ See below</p> <p>Setting Restriction Select restriction ⇒ On ⇒ Enter Network Password ⇒ OK or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Incoming SI Circle Talk requests are not affected. • Following restrictions are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ All Incoming Calls: Reject all calls ▪ Bar if Abroad: Reject calls when outside Japan <p>Canceling All Restrictions Cancel All ⇒ Enter Network Password ⇒ OK or </p> |
| | <p>Caller ID</p> <p>Showing/hiding Caller ID MENU or  ⇒ Settings ⇒ Highlight Call tab ⇒ Show My Number ⇒ On or Off</p> |










Settings

Voice Call & Video Call

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Activating auto call answer upon Slider open | MENU or  ⇒ Settings ⇒ Highlight Call tab ⇒ Slider Settings ⇒ Open to Answer ⇒ On | |
| Activating auto end call upon Slider close | MENU or  ⇒ Settings ⇒ Highlight Call tab ⇒ Slider Settings ⇒ Close to End Call | |
| Voice Call | | |
| Answering Voice Calls automatically when using Headphones | <p>Start Here MENU or  ⇒ Settings ⇒ Highlight Call tab ⇒ Auto Answer ⇒ Enter Handset Code ⇒ OK or  ⇒ See below</p> <p>Activating Auto Answer Switch On/Off ⇒ On</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone even in Manner mode; cancel afterward. <p>Changing Ring Time Answer Time ⇒ Enter time ⇒ OK or </p> | |
| | | |
| | | |



Video Call

| | |
|---|---|
| Changing Alternative Image | <p>MENU or  Settings Highlight Call tab Video Call Camera Picture Alternative Image Select folder Select file Assign or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen images. |
| Changing quality of Incoming/Outgoing Images | <p>MENU or  Settings Highlight Call tab Video Call Incoming Picture or Outgoing Picture Select quality</p> |
| Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls | <p>MENU or  Settings Highlight Call tab Video Call Loudspeaker Off</p> |
| Sending External Camera image when initiating Video Calls | <p>MENU or  Settings Highlight Call tab Video Call Camera Picture Default Image External Camera</p> |
| Setting image that is sent while call is on hold | <p>MENU or  Settings Highlight Call tab Video Call Hold Guidance Pict Select folder Select file Assign or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen images. |
| Setting Backlight status | <p>MENU or  Settings Highlight Call tab Video Call Backlight Select option</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Selecting Normal Setting applies Display Backlight setting. |
| Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls | <p>MENU or  Settings Highlight Call tab Video Call Mute Microphone On</p> |



Receiving a Call

? Cannot use Answer Phone or Caller Voice




- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are disabled when less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded. Delete messages.
- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are not available for Video Calls.

Placing a Call


? Cannot place call via Speed Dial

- Speed Dial is not available when Phone Book access is restricted by Application Lock.

? Cannot place call

- If  appears, cancel Keypad Lock (P.2-2).
- If  appears, cancel Function Lock (P.2-24).
- If  appears, cancel Offline Mode (P.2-17).

? Call won't connect and there's a beeping tone

- Did you include the area code or the first 0? Dial the number including the area code or 0.
- Handset may be out-of-range ( appears). Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

During a Call

? Outgoing Image is distorted during Video Calls

- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.

? Conversation is hampered

- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise.
- Check Earpiece Volume when using Loudspeaker. Increasing Earpiece Volume may cause feedback/interference.

? Call is choppy or cut off

- Network signal may be weak. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.
- Battery may need to be charged or replaced. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Clicking noise is heard during call

- Handset may be moving into another service area. Noise is heard when Network signal switches. This is normal.

? Cannot hear other party's voice

- Earpiece Volume may be low. Increase Earpiece Volume (P.5-15).
- Sound output may be set to use handsfree device. Set Transfer Audio (P.5-15) to *To Phone*.

Other

? Talk Time on Display seems incorrect

- Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. (On hold time is counted.)

? Cannot save phone number for Call Forwarding

- Does the number start with 1, 00, 0120 or 0990? Public service numbers, international call numbers starting with 00, toll-free numbers and fee-based service numbers cannot be saved.



| | |
|--|-------------|
| Messaging | 6-2 |
| Basics | 6-2 |
| Customizing Handset Address | 6-3 |
| Sending Messages | 6-4 |
| Sending S! Mail | 6-4 |
| Sending SMS..... | 6-7 |
| Incoming Messages | 6-8 |
| Opening & Replying..... | 6-8 |
| Handling Messages | 6-10 |
| Managing & Using Messages..... | 6-10 |
| Sorting Messages into Designated Folders..... | 6-12 |

| | |
|--|-------------|
| Chat Folder | 6-13 |
| Using Chat Folders..... | 6-13 |
| Mail Groups | 6-14 |
| Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail ... | 6-14 |
| PC Mail | 6-15 |
| Additional Functions | 6-18 |
| Troubleshooting | 6-32 |

6

Messaging



Basics

Use the following messaging services.

SMS

Exchange up to 160 alphanumeric characters with SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail

Exchange up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc; attach media files, etc.

Send Graphic Mail; set Feeling Setting in subject field when messaging SoftBank handsets.

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages. Use 931SH to handle PC Mail messages like SMS or S! Mail.

Available Entry Items

| | Recipient | Subject | Message | Attachment |
|---------|------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| SMS | Available* | N/A | Available | N/A |
| S! Mail | Available | Available | Available | Available |
| PC Mail | Available | Available | Available | Available |

*SoftBank handset numbers only.

- A separate contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
- For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (P.19-18).

Auto Retry Function

If recipient's handset is off/out-of-range, a sent message is saved in Server Mail Box and delivery attempted at regular intervals. (Undeliverable messages are deleted.)

Auto Resend

When Auto Resend is active, handset automatically resends unsent messages up to two times. Cancel to disable (P.6-28).



Customizing Handset Address

Change alphanumerics before @ of the default handset mail address.

For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (P.19-18).

Changing Address

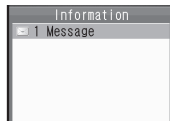
1  or  → **Settings**

2 **Address Settings**

- Handset connects to the Internet.
Select **English**, then follow onscreen instructions.

Saving Address

When handset address is changed, SoftBank sends new address confirmation via S! Mail.



To save new address to My Details, follow these steps. (New address is effective even if not saved.)

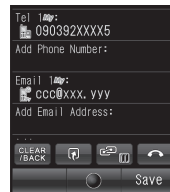
1 **Message**



2 **Information**



3 **Yes**





4 **Save or**



Sending S! Mail


Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book:

- 1  or  ➔ **Create Message**
When a PC Mail Account exists, select **S! Mail**.



S! Mail Composition Window

- 2 **Add Recipient**
- 3 **Phone Book**
- 4 **Highlight katakana row ➔**
Select entry

- 5 **Select number or mail address**
 - Omit  if only one number or address is saved.
 - When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana in message text or subject.

- 6 **Enter Subject ➔ Enter subject ➔ Done or **

- 7 **<Enter Text>**



Text Entry Window

- 8 **Enter message ➔ Done or **





S! Mail Composition Window

- 9 **Send or  ➔ Transmission starts**
 - To cancel, press **Cancel** or  during transmission.


Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Previewing Outgoing Message

After , **Options** or  ➔ **Preview Message**

Pictogram Entry











- In Pictogram List, press **A/a** or  to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.
- Pictogram appearance may differ by carrier.

Switching Lines in Dual Mode (P.2-27)

[S! Mail Composition Window]

Options or  ➔ **Switch Line ➔ Select line**

Advanced

-  Using other recipient entry methods
-  Adding recipients
-  Inserting signature automatically
-  Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on **P.6-18**)
-  Saving without sending
-  Requesting delivery confirmation
-  Designating/editing reply-to address (And more on **P.6-19 - 6-20**)
-  Requesting Delivery Report for all messages
-  Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages
-  Hiding progress bar while sending messages (And more on **P.6-28**)



Attaching Files

Send attachments to compatible handsets.
Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail:

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, **Attach File**



- 2 **Picture** → Select folder

- 3 Select file

When a size list appears, select attachment size.



- 4 **Send or** →
Transmission starts

Attaching Non-Image Files

- In ②, select a folder other than *Picture*, then select a file.

Attaching Multiple Files

- After ③, **Attach (1)** → **Attach File** →
From ②

Sending Feeling Mail

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, **Options** or → **Feeling Settings**



- 2 Select category, e.g., **Happy/Glad**

- 3 Select item, e.g., **I Love You**



- 4 **Send or** →
Transmission starts

Canceling Feeling Mail

- [S! Mail Composition Window] Select subject field → Select Pictogram, e.g., → **CLEAR/BACK** or → **Done** or

Advanced

- Capturing/recording and attaching ● Set Auto Play File (P.6-20) ● Disabling image auto-resize ● Enabling/disabling image auto-open or sound auto-play ● Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved (P.6-30)



Sending Graphic Mail

Follow these steps to:

- Change font size and background color
- Insert images and My Pictograms
- Scroll text

1 In text entry window, *Options*
or  ➔ *Add Art*() (long)

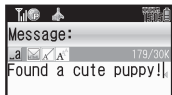


Graphic Mail Window

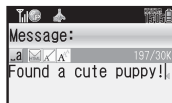
2 *SIZE*



3 Select size ➔ Enter text






4 Add Art or  ➔ *BG* ➔
Select color



5 Add Art or  ➔ *IMAGE* ➔
Select folder ➔ Select file



6 Select location ➔ *CLEAR/BACK* or 

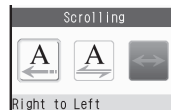
7 Add Art or  ➔ *MY PICT*
➔ *MyPict* or  ➔ Select
file ➔ *CLEAR/BACK* or 



8 Add Art or  ➔ *EFFECT*



9 *Scrolling*



10 Scroll direction ➔ Enter text


11 *Done* or  ➔ *Send* or 
➔ Transmission starts

Canceling Last Action


[Graphic Mail Window] *UNDO*

Cancelling All Graphic Mail Settings

[Graphic Mail Window] *CANCEL* ➔ Yes
Saving as Templates

After **10**, *Done* or  ➔ *Options* or

 ➔ *Save as Template* ➔ Enter

name ➔ *Done* or  ➔ *Save here*

- Only the message text is saved.

Advanced

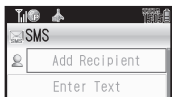
- Creating Graphic Mail from templates
- Changing text color, size & effect
- Changing text color
- Inserting background sound
- Inserting Flash® file
- Inserting horizontal line
- Flashing text
- Aligning text (left/right/center) (P.6-20 - 6-21)



Sending SMS

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book:

- 1  or  ➔ **Create New SMS**



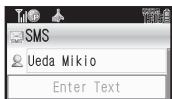
SMS Composition Window

- 2 **Add Recipient**

- 3 **Phone Book**

- 4 **Highlight katakana row ➔ Select entry**

- 5 **Select number**



- Omit 5 if only one number is saved.

- 6 **Enter Text**



Text Entry Window

- 7 **Enter message ➔ Done or** 



SMS Composition Window

- 8 **Send or**  ➔ **Transmission starts**


Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

When Message Text Exceeds Limit

- A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, select **Yes**.

Switching Lines in Dual Mode (P.2-27)

- [SMS Composition Window] **Options**
or  ➔ **Switch Line ➔ Select line**

Advanced

- Using other recipient entry methods
- Adding recipients
- Using Speed Dial/Mail list
- Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on P.6-18)
- Saving without sending
- Sending automatically later
- Requesting delivery confirmation
- Changing Server sent message storage limit (And more on P.6-19 - 6-20)
- Changing Server sent message storage limit
- Changing SMS Server number
- Changing character encoding for composing messages (P.6-31)



Opening & Replying

Opening New Messages

Information window opens for new mail.

- See P.6-17 to receive PC Mail.



- By default, complete S! Mail messages including attachments are retrieved; transmission fees apply depending on the price plan.
- Automatic message retrieval while abroad may incur high charges since flat-rate packet transmission plans do not apply during international roaming. Set handset to retrieve initial portion of message text, then manually retrieve complete message as needed.

Delivery Report

- Information window opens for Delivery Report. Follow these steps to open it:
Delivery Report ➔ **Select message with report** ➔ **Report** or

Advanced

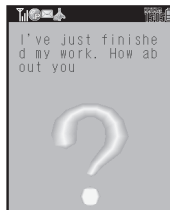
- Opening new mail out of Standby
- Retrieving new S! Mail manually
- Retrieving Server Mail list
- Retrieving remaining portions (And more on P.6-21)
- Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders
- Hiding graphics above Information window
- Disabling 3D Pictogram (And more on P.6-28 - 6-29)
- Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval in Japan
- Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval abroad
- Retrieving specified messages (P.6-29 - 6-30)

1 Message



Message List

2 Select message



- Message text appears in 3D animation (3D Pictogram).

3 Select 3D Pictogram option

- Message window opens.

Mail Notice

- When Message DL is not set to **Auto (All)**, Server sends initial portion of message text in each of the following cases:
 - The message was sent to multiple recipients
 - Files are attached to the message

Receiving Feeling Mail

- Small Light, Vibration and ringtone respond according to settings.

Attached Images

- Attached images open automatically.

Messages with Quiz

Enter or select answer

- Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered or selected.

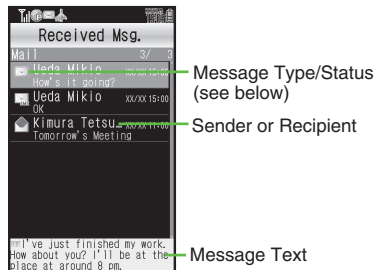
Animation View

- When a specific Pictogram is included in subject or message text, corresponding animation appears in message window background.



Window Description

Message List



Message Type/Status

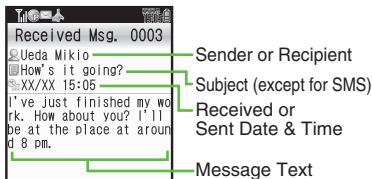
| | | | |
|--|----------------------|--|--|
| | Unread | | Mail Notice (remaining portion exists) |
| | Read | | Unread Delivery Report |
| | Sent | | Attachments |
| | Failed | | Protected |
| | Replied | | Priority (High) |
| | Forwarded | | Priority (Low) |
| | Send Reservation set | | USIM Card SMS |

SMS or PC appears for SMS/PC Mail messages (✉, etc.).

Advanced

- Using linked info
- Saving attachments to Data Folder
- Looking up message text words in dictionaries
- Jumping to message top/bottom
- Replying without quoting original message text
- Opening received message for reference
- Replying quickly using fixed text
- Replying to messages automatically (And more on P.6-22 - 6-23)
- Selecting quote option (P.6-28)

Message Window



Drag/swipe finger left or right across Display or press or to open previous (older) or next (newer) messages.

Line Indicators

- When using Double Number in Dual Mode (P.2-27), Line indicators (and) appear in message list.

Replying to Messages

- 1 In message window, **Reply** or



- Original message text is quoted (except for SMS and Graphic Mail).

- 2 Complete message ➔ **Send** or ➔ **Transmission starts**

Replying to Messages Addressed to Multiple Recipients

After 1, To **Sender** or **Reply All** ➔

Auto Reply

- Handset sends a reply automatically when receiving messages from saved numbers or addresses in specified mode.



Managing & Using Messages

Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.



Received Messages

Incomplete/
Unsent Messages

Sent Messages

Failed or Send
Reservation Messages

Auto Delete

- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. Protect important messages to avoid unintentional deletion.

Opening Help

- Follow these steps in folder list, message list or message window:

Options or **Help**

Checking Messages

- 1 or **Received Msg. or Sent Messages**



Folder List

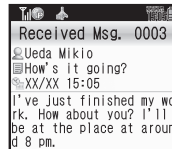
- When a PC Mail Account exists, folder with the name specified in Account Name appears.
- Highlight a folder and press or to hide/show sub folders. To open full message list, hide sub folders and select **Mail**.

- 2 **Select folder**



Message List

- 3 **Select message**



Message Window

Protecting Messages

- 1 **In message list, highlight message** **Options** or **Manage Msg.**

- 2 **Lock**

Canceling Protection
In , **Unlock**





Advanced

- Selecting multiple messages Color-tagging messages Deleting messages Deleting all Server Mail directly from Server (And more on P.6-24 - 6-25)
- Forwarding messages Sending from Drafts Sending unsent messages Checking Server Mail message count and volume Changing message window scroll unit Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages (And more on P.6-27 - 6-28)



Searching Messages

Search messages by message text, sender/recipient address, etc. Follow these steps to search by subject or message text:

- 1  or  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages**
- 2 **Options** or  ➔ **Search**
- 3 **Search All Msg.**
- 4 **Subject or Message Text** ➔ Enter text ➔ **Done** or 


Searching within Mail Folder

In 3, **Search Folder** ➔ 4





Searching by Address (Exact Match)

In 4, **Address(Exact)** ➔ **Select method** ➔ **Select/set number/address**

Searching by Address (Partial Match)




In 4, **Address(Include)** ➔ Enter text ➔ **Done** or 

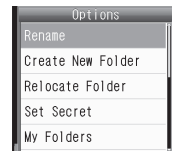
Searching within Message Text

- Follow these steps to find specific words/phrases; limit search by character type. [Message Window] **Options** or  ➔ **Search Text** ➔ Enter text ➔ **Done** or 
 - Press **Next/Prev.** or /  to jump to next/previous search result.

Hiding Folders



Messages appear in Chat Folders even if source messages are sorted into Secret folders.

- 1  or  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages**
- 2 **Highlight folder** ➔ **Options** or 




- 3 **Set Secret** ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ **OK** or  ➔ **OK** or 

Accessing Secret Folders

After 1, **Options** or  ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ **OK** or 

Advanced

-  ● Moving messages manually ● Renaming folders ● Deleting folders ● Adding folders ● Moving folders ● Changing status of all messages within folders to read ● Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders ● Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder ● Canceling Secret ● Searching messages within specified folder (P.6-25)



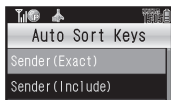
Sorting Messages into Designated Folders

Sort messages by sender/recipient or partially matching text in sender/recipient address, subject or SMS message text.

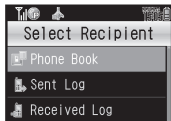
1  or  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages**

2 Highlight target folder ➔ **Options** or 

3 **My Folders** ➔ Select blank entry






4 **Sender(Exact)**
(**Recipient(Exact)** for Sent Messages)



5 Select method ➔ **Select/set number/address**

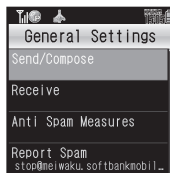
6 **Confirm** or  ➔ **Saved**

Sort by Partially Matching Text
In , **Sender(Include)**
(**Recipient(Include)** for Sent Messages) or **Subject** ➔ Enter text
➔ **Done** or  ➔ 

Filtering Spam

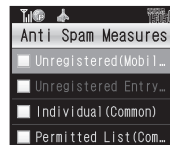
Follow these steps to filter messages from handset numbers/addresses not saved in Phone Book into Spam Folder:

1  or  ➔ **Settings** ➔ **General Settings**





2 **Anti Spam Measures**






3 Enter Handset Code ➔ **OK** or 



4 **Unregistered (Mobile)** ()

5 **Confirm** or  ➔ **OK** or 





Exempting Messages from Filtering

After , highlight **Permitted List (Common)** ➔ **Edit** or  ➔ Select blank entry ➔ Select key ➔ Select/set number/address/subject ➔ **Confirm** or  ➔ **Check** or  () ➔ 

When a PC Mail Account Exists

- Filter PC Mail messages from addresses not saved in Phone Book.

Advanced

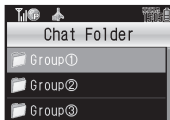
  Re-sorting messages  Sorting spam by setting keys  Editing/deleting sort keys (P.6-26)

Using Chat Folders

Organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat members' handsets.
To hide messages, set Chat Folder to Secret.

Saving Members

1  or  ➔ **Chat Folder**



Chat Folder List

2 **Highlight folder** ➔ **Options**
or 



3 **Add New Member**



4 **Select blank entry**

- Select saved member to edit number/address.

5 **Select method** ➔ **Select/set number/address**



- Repeat 4 - 5 to add members.

6 **Confirm** or  ➔ **Saved**

Changing Members

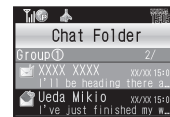
In 4, highlight member ➔ **Options** or
 ➔ **Change Member** ➔ **From** 

Deleting Members

In 4, highlight member ➔ **Options**
or  ➔ **Delete** ➔ **Yes** ➔ 

Opening Chat Folders

1 **In Chat Folder list, select folder**



2 **Select message**

Advanced

 ● Deleting folders ● Deleting all messages ● Resetting Chat Folders (P.6-26)



Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.

1 ✉ or ✉ ➔ **Settings**

2 **Set Mail Group**



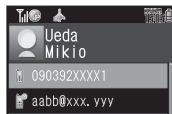
Mail Group Entry Window

3 **<Add New Group>** ➔ Enter name ➔ **Done** or

4 **Select Group**



5 **<Assign New Entry>** ➔ Highlight katakana row ➔ Select entry



6 **Select number or mail address**



- Omit if only one number or address is saved.
- Repeat - to add members.

7 **Confirm** or ➔ **Saved**

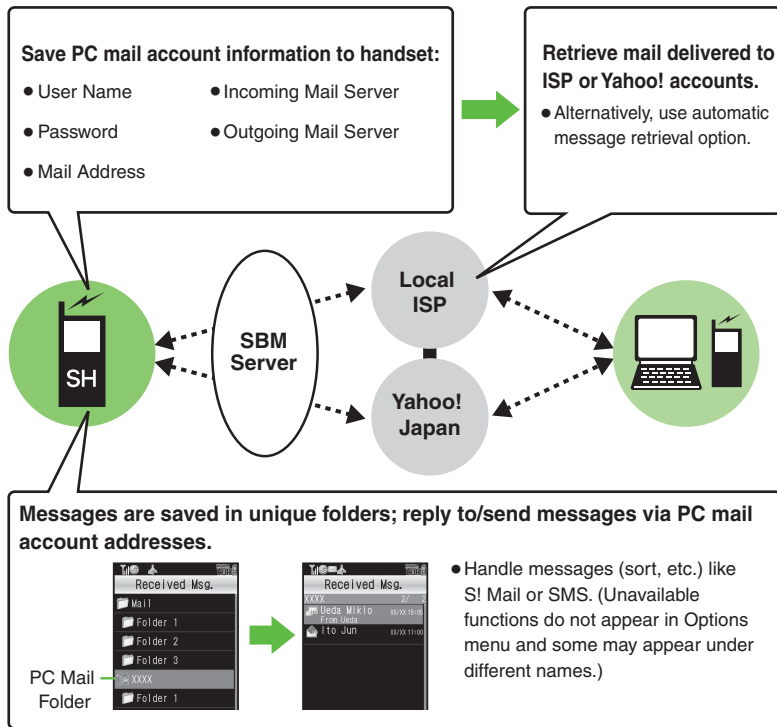


Advanced

- Renaming Mail Groups Deleting Mail Groups/Group members Changing Mail Group members (P.6-26)

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages.



Important PC Mail Usage Notes

- Receiving PC Mail for the first time after PC Mail Account setup may incur high charges due to large-volume packet transmissions.
- Setting handset to retrieve PC Mail automatically may incur high charges; remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
- Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages.
- Checking for new messages may incur transmission fees even when none exists.
- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.
- When messages sent from handset to PC mail account are retrieved by handset (then opened, replied with quotes, forwarded, etc.), included Pictograms may not appear or may appear as different characters.



PC Mail Account Setup

- Proceed with setup according to information supplied by ISP.
- PC Mail services may be unavailable depending on the services, settings or contract details for your PC mail account. Confirm compatibility with POP/SMTP message retrieval/transmission via e-mail software beforehand.


Mandatory Items for Retrieval

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| User Name | Required to connect to incoming mail server |
| Password | Required to connect to incoming mail server |
| ReceivingServer | Incoming mail server address |

Mandatory Items for Transmission

| | |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| Mail Address | Address to use PC Mail |
| Sender Server | Outgoing mail server address |

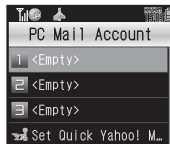
Setting Other Items

- Edit information as needed; for description, highlight an item and press **Help** or .

1  or  ➔ **Settings** ➔ **PC Mail Settings**



2 **PC Mail Account**



3 **<Empty>**

4 **Account Name** ➔ **Enter name** ➔ **Done** or 

5 **Set Receiving** ➔ **Select item** ➔ **Select/set item** ➔ **OK** or 

- User Name, Password and ReceivingServer are mandatory.

6 **Set Sending** ➔ **Select item** ➔ **Select/set item**

- Mail Address and Sender Server are mandatory.

7 **OK** or  ➔ **Confirm** or  ➔ **OK** or 




- When a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Using Yahoo! Mail Addresses



In , **Set Quick Yahoo! Mail** ➔ **Yes** or **No**

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Select **No** to create a new account.

Editing Accounts








In , **select account** ➔  - 

Deleting Accounts

In , **highlight account** ➔ **Delete** or  ➔ **Yes**

Saving User ID & Password for Transmission





- If User Name and Password are unset Set Receiving items are automatically used for SMTP authentication. Follow these steps if ISP requires User Name and Password:

In , **Set Sending** ➔ **Sender Auth.** ➔ **Highlight SMTP Auth.** ➔ **Edit** or  ➔ **User Name** ➔ **Enter name** ➔ **Done** or  ➔ **Password** ➔ **Enter password** ➔ **Done** or  ➔ **OK** or  ➔ **CLEAR/BACK** or  ➔ 




Retrieving New PC Mail

Retrieve new messages from created accounts. If message count is high, some may not be received on the first attempt.

- 1  or  ➔ **Get or** 
- 2 **PC Mail or** 
- 3 **Select folder ➔ Select message**




Message Window

- Press **More** or  to retrieve full message.
- Message window is similar to that of S! Mail.


When Handset is Set to Retrieve Messages Automatically

- Messages are received after set intervals. (Information window opens.)



Deleting Messages

[Message List] **Highlight message ➔ Options or**  ➔ **Delete ➔ Select option ➔ Yes**



Checking Received PC Mail

- 1  or  ➔ **Received Msg.**
➔ **Select folder**
 - Message list appears. Message list is similar to that of S! Mail.
- 2 **Select message**
 - Message window opens.

Replying to PC Mail

- 1 **In message window, Reply or** 
- PC Mail Composition window opens.
- Original message text is quoted (except for HTML messages).
- 2 **Complete message ➔ Send or**  ➔ **Transmission starts**

Replying without Quoting Original Message Text

[Message Window] **Options or** 
➔ **Reply ➔ PC Mail ➔ Complete message ➔ Send or** 

Changing Account for Outgoing Messages


[PC Mail Composition Window]
Select recipient field ➔ **From:** ➔
Select account

Sending PC Mail

Follow these steps to create and send PC Mail:

- 1  or  ➔ **Create Message**
- 2 **Select PC Mail Account**
- 3 **Complete message ➔ Send or**  ➔ **Transmission starts**







Converting PC Mail to S! Mail

After 2, **Options or**  ➔ **Convert to S! Mail ➔ Yes**

Note

- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.

Advanced

-   Retrieving complete PC Mail messages
-  Retrieving new messages automatically
-  Disabling automatic word wrap
-  Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses
-  Restricting complete message retrieval by size (And more on **P.6-30 - 6-31**)



Creating Messages

Recipient

| | |
|---|--|
| Using other recipient entry methods | In Mail Composition window, Add Recipient ➔ Select method ➔ Select/set number/address |
| Adding recipients | In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ➔ Add Recipient ➔ Select method ➔ Select/set number/address ➔ Confirm or Y |
| Switching recipient status (To, Cc and Bcc) | In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ➔ Highlight recipient ➔ Options or ☒ ➔ Select status <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc. |

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Using Speed Dial/Mail list | Saving Recipients ☒ or ☒ ➔ Settings ➔ Speed Dial/Mail ➔ <Empty> ➔ Highlight katakana row ➔ Select entry ➔ Select number or mail address ➔ Do not Assign ➔ Save or Y |
| | Creating Messages In Standby, enter 0 - 99 (Speed Dial/Mail entry number) ➔ Mail or ☒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select S! Mail or SMS. |

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Editing/deleting recipients | Start Here In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ➔ See below |
| | Editing Recipients Select recipient ➔ Edit ➔ Done or ⊙ |
| | Deleting a Recipient Highlight recipient ➔ Options or ☒ ➔ Delete |
| | Deleting All Recipients Highlight recipient ➔ Options or ☒ ➔ Delete All ➔ Yes |

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Editing Speed Dial/Mail list | Start Here ☒ or ☒ ➔ Settings ➔ Speed Dial/Mail ➔ See below |
| | Editing Entries Highlight entry ➔ Options or ☒ ➔ Change ➔ Select number/address ➔ Select new number/address ➔ Save or Y |
| | Canceling Entries Highlight entry ➔ Options or ☒ ➔ Remove Selected ➔ Yes |
| | Canceling All Entries Options or ☒ ➔ Remove All ➔ Yes |






Message Text

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Inserting signature automatically | ☒ or ☒ ➔ Settings ➔ S! Mail Settings ➔ Signature ➔ Edit ➔ Edit signature ➔ Done or ⊙ ➔ Auto Insert ➔ On <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Signature is inserted above message text when forwarding messages or quoting original message text in replies. Not available for SMS. When using Double Number in Dual Mode (P.2-27), set signature by mode. |
| Inserting signature manually | In text entry window, Options or ☒ ➔ Insert/Font Size ➔ Signature |
| Previewing 3D Pictogram | In Mail Composition window, Options or ☒ ➔ 3D Pictogram |
| Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) | In Mail Composition window, Options or ☒ ➔ Change to SMS or Convert to S! Mail ➔ Yes |









Sending Messages

■ Save/Send Reservation/Cancel

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Saving without sending | After completing message, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Save to Drafts</i> |
| Sending automatically later | Start Here After completing message, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Send Reservation</i> ➔ See below |
| | Auto Send when Signal Returns <i>Within the Network</i> ➔ Yes Designating Send Date/Time (within one week) <i>Date & Time</i> ➔ Enter date/time ➔ <i>Assign</i> or <input type="radio"/> ➔ Yes |
| Canceling sent S! Mail |  or  ➔ <i>Sent Messages</i> ➔ Select folder ➔ <i>Highlight message</i> ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Set Sent Cancel</i> ➔ Yes • Available for messages sent to SoftBank handsets. |


■ Messaging Settings

| | |
|--|--|
| Requesting delivery confirmation | In Mail Composition window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Messaging Settings</i> ➔ <i>Delivery Report</i> ➔ On • Delivery Report arrives when message is delivered. • Open sent message to check delivery status indicator: ▪  : Delivered,  : Unknown,  : Failed • Not available for PC Mail. |
| Setting priority | In Mail Composition window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Messaging Settings</i> ➔ <i>Priority</i> ➔ Select priority |
| Setting message to be deleted from recipient handset once read | In Mail Composition window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Messaging Settings</i> ➔ <i>Set Auto Delete</i> ➔ On • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets. |


Adding a reply request




In Mail Composition window, *Options* or  ➔ *Messaging Settings* ➔ *Reply Request* ➔ On
• Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.

Restricting forward/delete




In Mail Composition window, *Options* or  ➔ *Messaging Settings* ➔ *Forward NG* or *Delete NG* ➔ On
• Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.


Locking message with Quiz

Start Here In Mail Composition window, *Options* or  ➔ *Messaging Settings* ➔ *Quiz* ➔ *Switch On/Off* ➔ On ➔ See below



Using Preset Questions (Multiple Choice)
Select question ➔ *Selection* ➔ Select number ➔ Enter/edit option ➔ *Done* or ➔ Enter/edit all options ➔ Highlight answer ➔ *Answer* or  ➔ *Done* or  ➔ *Done* or 

Using Preset Questions (Exact Answer Entry)
Select question ➔ *Match Characters* ➔ Enter answer ➔ *Done* or ➔ *Done* or 




















Creating Custom Quiz (Multiple Choice)
<Create Original> ➔ Enter question ➔ *Done* or ➔ *Selection* ➔ Enter options ➔ Highlight answer ➔ *Answer* or  ➔ *Done* or  ➔ *Done* or 

Creating Custom Quiz (Exact Answer Entry)
<Create Original> ➔ Enter question ➔ *Done* or ➔ *Match Characters* ➔ Enter answer ➔ *Done* or ➔ *Done* or 













Editing assigned Quiz

In Mail Composition window, *Options* or  ➔ *Messaging Settings* ➔ *Quiz* ➔ *Edit Question* ➔ Edit question/options/answer ➔ *Done* or (*Done* or  again after editing options)
• Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
















| | |
|--|---|
| Designating/editing reply-to address | [Start Here] In Mail Composition window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Messaging Settings</i> ➔ <i>Reply to Settings</i> ➔ See below |
| | Designating <i>Switch On/Off</i> ➔ <i>On</i> ➔ Select/set address |
| Changing Server sent message storage limit | Editing <i>Edit Address</i> ➔ <i>Edit</i> ➔ <i>Done</i> or  |
| | In Mail Composition window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Messaging Settings</i> ➔ <i>Expiry Time</i> ➔ Select option • Available for SMS only. |
| ■ Attachments | |
| Capturing/recording and attaching | [Start Here] In Mail Composition window, <i>Attach File</i> ➔ See below |
| | Capturing Still Images <i>Picture</i> ➔ <i>Take Picture</i> ➔  or  to shoot ➔  or  |
| | Recording Video <i>Video</i> ➔ <i>Record Video</i> ➔  or  to start recording ➔  or  to stop ➔ <i>Accept</i> ➔ Select storage media |
| | Recording Sounds <i>Sound</i> ➔ <i>Record Voice</i> ➔  or  to start recording ➔  or  to stop ➔ <i>Accept</i> ➔ Select storage media |
| Set Auto Play File | Highlight attached file ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Set Auto Play File</i> ➔ <i>Switch On/Off</i> ➔ <i>On</i> ➔ <i>Enter Message</i> ➔ Enter comment ➔ <i>Done</i> or  ➔ <i>CLEAR/BACK</i> or  ➔ <i>Confirm</i> or  • Not available for PC Mail. |

■ Graphic Mail













| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Creating Graphic Mail from templates | Opening Templates from Messaging Menu  or  ➔ <i>Templates</i> ➔ Select template ➔ Complete message ➔ <i>Send</i> or  • Template size may change when used for creating messages. |
| | Opening Templates from S! Mail Composition Window In S! Mail Composition window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Launch Template</i> ➔ Select template ➔ Complete message ➔ <i>Send</i> or  • Open a template before entering message text. |
| Changing text color, size & effect | In text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Add Art</i> () ➔ <i>Select Area</i> or  ➔ Select start point ➔ Select text range ➔ <i>COLOR</i> , <i>SIZE</i> or <i>EFFECT</i> ➔ Set |
| Changing text color | In text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Add Art</i> () ➔ <i>COLOR</i> ➔ Select color ➔ Enter text |
| Inserting background sound | [Start Here] In text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Add Art</i> () ➔ <i>INSERT</i> ➔ See below Inserting <i>BGM Sound</i> ➔ Select folder ➔ Select file Deleting <i>Delete BGM</i> ➔ Yes |



| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Inserting Flash® file | [Start Here] In text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Add Art</i> () (<i>long</i>) ➔ See below |
| | Inserting <i>INSERT</i> ➔ <i>Flash</i> ➔ Select file |
| | Previewing <i>Close Menu</i> or  ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Preview</i> |
| | Deleting <i>Close Menu</i> or  ➔ Move cursor before Flash® icon ➔ <i>CLEAR/BACK</i> or  |
| Inserting horizontal line | In text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Add Art</i> () (<i>long</i>) ➔ <i>INSERT</i> ➔ <i>Line</i> |
| Flashing text | [Start Here] In text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Add Art</i> () (<i>long</i>) ➔ See below |
| | Flashing <i>EFFECT</i> ➔ <i>Blink</i> ➔ <i>Blink On</i> ➔ Enter text |
| | Canceling <i>Select Area</i> or  ➔ Select start point ➔ Highlight text range ➔ <i>EFFECT</i> ➔ <i>Blink</i> ➔ <i>Blink Off</i> |
| Aligning text (left/ right/center) | In text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Add Art</i> () (<i>long</i>) ➔ <i>EFFECT</i> ➔ <i>Alignment</i> ➔ Select option ➔ Enter text |







Receiving/Opening Messages











Receiving

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Opening new mail out of Standby |  (Long) |
| Retrieving new S! Mail manually |  or  ➔ <i>Get</i> or  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a PC Mail Account exists, select S! Mail. Retrieve messages missed while handset is out-of-range. |
| Retrieving Server Mail list |  or  ➔ Server Mail Box ➔ Mail List ➔ Yes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When using Double Number in Dual Mode (P.2-27), select a line to proceed. |
| Retrieving remaining portions | Via Mail Notice In message list, select Mail Notice ➔ More or  Via Server Mail List  or  ➔ Server Mail Box ➔ Mail List ➔ Select message <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When retrieve list confirmation appears, select Yes. |
| Retrieving all Server Mail | [Start Here]  or  ➔ Server Mail Box ➔ See below Directly from Server Retrieve All Via Server Mail List Mail List ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ Retrieve All <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When retrieve list confirmation appears, select Yes. |



Message Window

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Using linked info | <p>Dialing Numbers In message window, select number ➔ <i>Call</i> or <i>Video Call</i></p> |
| | <p>Sending Messages In message window, select number or mail address ➔ <i>Create Message</i> ➔ <i>S! Mail</i> or <i>SMS</i> ➔ <i>Complete message</i> ➔ <i>Send</i> or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step. |
| | <p>Accessing Internet Sites In message window, select URL ➔ <i>Yes</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select <i>PC Site Br.</i> to connect via PC Site Browser. |
| | <p>Saving Location Information URLs In message window, select URL ➔ <i>RegisterMyLocation</i> ➔ <i>Name</i> ➔ Enter name ➔ <i>Done</i> or  ➔ <i>Save</i> or </p> |
| Saving attachments to Data Folder | <p>In message window, highlight file ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Save to Data Folder</i> ➔ Enter name ➔ <i>Done</i> or  ➔ <i>Save here</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For templates, <i>Save as Template</i> appears. (Omit file name entry step.) For widgets, <i>Install Attach</i> appears. |
| Playing slides | <p>In message window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Slide Play</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A slide consists of message text with attachments. |

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Using attachments | <p>[Start Here] In message window, highlight file ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ See below</p> <p>As Wallpaper <i>Set as Wallpaper</i> ➔ Enter name ➔ <i>Done</i> or  ➔ <i>Save here</i> ➔ <i>Vertical</i> or <i>Horizontal</i> ➔ <i>Assign</i> or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option. |
| | <p>As Ringtone/Ringvideo <i>Set as Ringtone</i> or <i>Set as Ring Video</i> ➔ Enter name ➔ <i>Done</i> or  ➔ <i>Save here</i> ➔ Select item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For <i>For New Message</i> or <i>For New PC Mail</i>, enter ring time. |
| | <p>Saving Sender Address In message window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Save Address</i> ➔ Select number or mail address ➔ <i>As New Entry</i> ➔ Complete other fields ➔ <i>Save</i> or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>. |
| Saving to Phone Book | <p>Saving Linked Info In message window, select number or mail address ➔ <i>Save to Phone Book</i> or <i>Save Address</i> ➔ <i>As New Entry</i> ➔ Complete other fields ➔ <i>Save</i> or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>. |
| Copying text | <p>[Start Here] In message window, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Copy</i> ➔ See below</p> <p>Sender/Recipient Number/Address <i>Address</i> ➔ Select number/address</p> <p>Subject or Message Text <i>Subject</i> or <i>Message Text</i> ➔ Highlight first character ➔ <i>Start</i> or  ➔ Highlight text range ➔ <i>End</i> or </p> |



| | |
|---|--|
| Looking up message text words in dictionaries | In message window, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Copy & Search Dict.</i> ➔ Highlight first character ➔ <i>Start</i> or ➔ Highlight text range ➔ <i>End</i> or ➔ Select dictionary ➔ <i>Search</i> ➔ Select word |
| Jumping to message top/bottom | In message window, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>View Settings</i> ➔ <i>Scroll Jump</i> ➔ <i>Jump to Top</i> or <i>Jump to Bottom</i> |
| Deleting attachments | In message window, highlight file ➔ <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Remove File</i> ➔ <i>Yes</i> |
| Using message text | In message window, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Select Area</i> ➔ <i>OK</i> or ➔ Highlight text range by dragging finger ➔ <i>Copy</i> or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press <i>Options</i> or instead of <i>Copy</i> or to look up in dictionaries or create messages. |
| Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers | In message window, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Report Spam</i> ➔ <i>Send</i> or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Signature is not inserted automatically. • Not available for PC Mail. |

■ Replying

| | |
|--|---|
| Replying without quoting original message text | In message window, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Reply</i> ➔ <i>S! Mail</i> or <i>SMS</i> ➔ Complete message ➔ <i>Send</i> or |
| Opening received message for reference | In message window, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Rep. with View</i> ➔ Select option |
| Replying quickly using fixed text | <p>Editing Quick Reply Text or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>General Settings</i> ➔ <i>Send/Compose</i> ➔ <i>Set Quick Reply</i> ➔ Select text ➔ <i>Edit</i> ➔ <i>Done</i> or </p> <p>Using Quick Reply In message window, <i>Hold:Quick Reply (Long)</i> or (Long) ➔ Select text</p> |
| Replying to messages automatically | <p><small>Start Here</small> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>General Settings</i> ➔ <i>Send/Compose</i> ➔ <i>Auto Reply</i> ➔ See below</p> <p>Saving Recipients <i>Address Setting</i> ➔ Select blank entry ➔ Select method ➔ Select/set number/address ➔ Select mode (<input type="checkbox"/> ⇄ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>) ➔ <i>Confirm</i> or ➔ <i>Confirm</i> or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select saved recipient to edit number/address. <p>Editing Reply Text <i>Reply Message</i> ➔ Select mode ➔ Enter text ➔ <i>Done</i> or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Edit text for each mode. <p>Activating Auto Reply <i>Switch On/Off</i> ➔ <i>On</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replies are sent via S! Mail. • Except for some messages, replies are sent to the same sender only once each time Auto Reply is activated. • Auto Reply is not available for PC Mail or while abroad. |



Managing Messages

■ Message List








| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Selecting multiple messages | Selecting In message list, Multi Select or → Select messages (⇌) |
| | Selecting Up to 50 Messages at Once In message list, Options or → Manage Msg. → Check in Block |
| | Unchecking All In message list, Options or → Unselect All |
| Color-tagging messages | In message list, Options or → Manage Msg. → Color Label → Select color |
| Sorting messages | In message list, Options or → View Settings → Sort → Select option |
| Opening sender/recipient details | In message list, highlight message → Options or → View Mail Address → Select sender or recipient |
| Checking memory status | or → Memory Status → Select item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press Each or to check memory status by service (SMS & S! Mail or PC Mail). When using Double Number in Dual Mode, select a mode for SMS & S! Mail. USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear. |
| Opening properties | In message list, highlight message → Options or → Message Details |

| | |
|--|--|
| Changing template name display | or → Templates → Options or → Item Displayed → Select item |
| Saving SMS messages to USIM Card | In message list, highlight SMS message → Options or → Manage Msg. → SIM Sync <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available for compatible USIM Cards. |
| Changing received message status (read/unread) | In message list, highlight message → Options or → Manage Msg. → Switch to Unread or Switch to Read |






■ Deleting Messages










| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Deleting messages | One Message In message list, highlight message → Options or → Delete → Yes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternatively, delete an open message. |
| | All Messages In message list, Options or → Manage Msg. → Delete All → Except Locked Msg. or Delete All → Enter Handset Code → OK or |
| | All Messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages In message list (Drafts or Unsent Messages), Options or → Delete All → Enter Handset Code → OK or |
| Deleting Server Mail via Mail Notice | In message list, highlight Mail Notice → Options or → Delete → Select option → Yes |



| | |
|---|--|
| Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list | <p>Start Here  or  ➔ Server Mail Box ➔ Mail List ➔ See below</p> <p>One Message</p> <p>Highlight message ➔ Options or  ➔ Delete ➔ Yes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When retrieve list confirmation appears, select Yes. <p>All Messages</p> <p>Options or  ➔ Delete All ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or  ➔ Yes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When retrieve list confirmation appears, select Yes. |
| | <p>Deleting all Server Mail directly from Server</p> <p>Options or  ➔ Server Mail Box ➔ Delete All ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or  ➔ Except New Msg. or Delete All</p> |

■ Folders

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Moving messages manually | <p>In message list, highlight message ➔ Options or  ➔ Manage Msg. ➔ Move to Folder ➔ Select folder</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When sort messages confirmation appears, select Yes; messages sent to/received from the number/address will be sorted into selected folder automatically. |
| Renaming folders | <p>In folder list, highlight folder ➔ Options or  ➔ Rename ➔ Enter name ➔ Done or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available in Chat Folder list as well. |
| Deleting folders | <p>In folder list, highlight folder ➔ Options or  ➔ Delete ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When delete message confirmation appears, select Yes. When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Adding folders | <p>In folder list, Options or  ➔ Create New Folder ➔ Enter name ➔ Done or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available in Chat Folder list as well. |
| Moving folders | <p>In folder list, highlight folder ➔ Options or  ➔ Relocate Folder ➔ Select location</p> |
| Changing status of all messages within folders to read | <p>In folder list, highlight folder ➔ Options or  ➔ To All Read ➔ Yes</p> |
| Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders | <p>In folder list, highlight folder ➔ Options or  ➔ Protect</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To cancel protection, select Not Protect in the steps above. |
| Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder | <p>In folder list, highlight folder ➔ Options or  ➔ Retrieve New</p> |
| Canceling Secret | <p>Unlock Secret folders temporarily and highlight Secret folder ➔ Options or  ➔ Unset Secret ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or </p> |
| Searching messages within specified folder | <p>In folder list, highlight folder ➔ Options or  ➔ Search ➔ Search Folder ➔ Select method ➔ Select/set number/address/subject/text string</p> |



■ Sorting into Folders

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Re-sorting messages | In folder list, highlight folder → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Classify</i> • Available in Chat Folder list as well. |
| Sorting spam by setting keys | or → <i>Settings</i> → <i>General Settings</i> → <i>Anti Spam Measures</i> → Enter Handset Code → <i>OK</i> or → <i>Individual(Common)</i> () → <i>Edit</i> or → Select blank entry → Select key → Select/set number/address/subject → <i>Confirm</i> or → <i>Confirm</i> or → <i>OK</i> or |
| Editing/deleting sort keys | <small>(Start Here)</small> In folder list, highlight folder → <i>Options</i> or → <i>My Folders</i> → See below |
| | Editing Sender/Recipient Key Highlight entry → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Replace</i> → Select method → Select/set number/address → <i>Confirm</i> or |
| | Editing Subject Key Select entry → <i>Edit</i> → <i>Done</i> or → <i>Confirm</i> or |
| | Deleting an Entry Highlight entry → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Delete</i> → <i>Yes</i> → <i>Confirm</i> or |
| | Deleting All Entries Highlight entry → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Clear All</i> → <i>Yes</i> → <i>Confirm</i> or |

■ Chat Folders

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| Deleting folders | or → <i>Chat Folder</i> → Highlight folder → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Delete Folder</i> → Enter Handset Code → <i>OK</i> or • When delete message confirmation appears, select <i>Yes</i> . • When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted. |
| Deleting all messages | or → <i>Chat Folder</i> → Select folder → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Manage Msg.</i> → <i>Delete All</i> → <i>Yes</i> |
| Resetting Chat Folders | or → <i>Chat Folder</i> → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Reset</i> → Enter Handset Code → <i>OK</i> or → <i>Yes</i> |

■ Mail Groups

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Renaming Mail Groups | or → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Set Mail Group</i> → Highlight Group → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Edit Name</i> → Enter name → <i>Done</i> or → <i>Yes</i> |
| Deleting Mail Groups/Group members | <small>(Start Here)</small> or → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Set Mail Group</i> → See below |
| | Mail Groups Highlight Group → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Delete</i> → <i>Yes</i> → Enter Handset Code → <i>OK</i> or |
| | Group Members Select Group → Highlight member → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Remove Entry</i> → <i>Yes</i> → <i>Confirm</i> or • Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members. |
| Changing Mail Group members | or → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Set Mail Group</i> → Select Group → Highlight member → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Re-assign Entry</i> → Highlight katakana row → Select entry → Select number or mail address → <i>Yes</i> → <i>Confirm</i> or |







Using Messages





| | |
|--|--|
| Forwarding messages | In message window, Options or → Forward → Select recipient field → Select method → Select/set number/address → Send or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Attached files are forwarded. To forward SMS messages, select SI Mail or SMS. |
| Sending from Drafts | or → Drafts → Select message → Complete message → Send or |
| Sending unsent messages | <small>(Start Here)</small> In message list (Unsent Messages), highlight message → Options or → See below Sending without Editing Resend Edit & Send Edit → Complete message → Send or |
| Using sent messages | In message list (Sent Messages), highlight message → Options or → Edit & Send → Complete message → Send or |
| Saving messages with schedules to Calendar | In message list, highlight message → Options or → Manage Msg. → Save to Calendar → Enter subject → Done or → Enter start/end date/time → Accept or → Save or |





| | |
|--|---|
| Forwarding Server Mail | Via Mail Notice In message list, highlight Mail Notice → Options or → Forward → Notifi. Forward (forward Mail Notice text only) or Remote Forward → Enter recipient → Send or |
| | Via Server Mail List or → Server Mail Box → Mail List → Highlight message → Options or → Remote Forward → Enter recipient → Send or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When retrieve list confirmation appears, select Yes. |
| Opening Server Mail properties | or → Server Mail Box → Mail List → Highlight message → Options or → Message Details <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When retrieve list confirmation appears, select Yes. |
| Checking Server Mail message count and volume | or → Server Mail Box → Mailbox Volume |
| General Settings | |
| Changing message window scroll unit | or → Settings → General Settings → Scroll Unit → Select unit |
| Changing message list view | or → Settings → General Settings → Message List View → Select option |
| Showing complete sent/received message addresses | or → Settings → General Settings → Address View → Show All |



| | |
|---|--|
| Changing view for Received Msg. folder | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Received Msg. View ➔ Select option • Folder View by Account is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists. |
| Changing view for Sent Messages folder | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Sent Msg. View ➔ Select option • Folder View by Account is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists. |
| Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Auto Delete ➔ Received Msg. ➔ Select option |
| Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Auto Delete ➔ Sent Messages ➔ Not Auto Del |




General Settings (Send/Compose)

| | |
|---|--|
| Requesting Delivery Report for all messages | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Send/Compose ➔ Delivery Report ➔ On |
| Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Send/Compose ➔ Auto Resend ➔ Off |
| Designating/editing reply-to address | <small>(Start Here)</small> ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Send/Compose ➔ Reply to Settings ➔ See below |
| | Designating Switch On/Off ➔ On ➔ Select method ➔ Select/set number/address |
| | Editing Edit Address ➔ Edit ➔ Done or  |

| | |
|--|---|
| Selecting quote option | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Send/Compose ➔ Reply With Text ➔ Select option |
| Hiding progress bar while sending messages | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Send/Compose ➔ Sending Status ➔ Off(Background) |
| Changing spam report recipient | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Report Spam ➔ Edit address ➔ Done or  ➔ Yes |





General Settings (Receive)

Message Notice & Animation View



| | |
|---|--|
| Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Receive ➔ Message Notice ➔ Secret Folder ➔ No Response |
| Changing alerts for messages received during handset use | <small>(Start Here)</small> ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Receive ➔ Message Notice ➔ See below |
| | Showing New Message Window On Active Screen ➔ On |
| | Selecting Scrolling Notice Option View Setting ➔ Select option |
| | Muting Alert Sound Alert Sound ➔ Off |
| Disabling Animation View | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Receive ➔ Animation View ➔ Off |



■ Feeling Mail



| | |
|--|---|
| Hiding graphics above Information window | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Receive ➔ Link to Feeling ➔ Idle Screen Info. ➔ Off |
| Disabling/changing illumination | Start Here ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Receive ➔ Link to Feeling ➔ Light ➔ See below |
| | Disabling Switch On/Off ➔ Off |
| | Changing Color Light Color ➔ Select category ➔ Select color |
| Changing vibration pattern | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Receive ➔ Link to Feeling ➔ Vibration Pattern ➔ Select pattern |
| Muting/changing ringtones | Start Here ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Receive ➔ Link to Feeling ➔ Ringtone ➔ See below |
| | Muting Ringer Switch On/Off ➔ Off |
| | Changing Ringtones Assign Tone ➔ Select category ➔ Select folder ➔ Select tone/file |

■ 3D Pictogram

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| Disabling 3D Pictogram | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Receive ➔ 3D Pictogram ➔ Display Effect ➔ Disable |
| Changing background/speed | Start Here ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ General Settings ➔ Receive ➔ 3D Pictogram ➔ See below |
| | Changing Background Background Color ➔ Select color or Random |
| | Changing Animation Speed Display Speed ➔ Select speed |

S! Mail Settings

■ Automatic Retrieval

| | |
|--|--|
| Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval in Japan | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ S! Mail Settings ➔ Message DL(Japan) ➔ Manual <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When set to Auto (All), complete S! Mail messages including attachments are retrieved; may incur high charges. |
| Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval abroad | ✉ or  ➔ Settings ➔ S! Mail Settings ➔ Message DL(Abroad) ➔ Manual <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When set to Auto (All), complete S! Mail messages including attachments are retrieved; may incur high charges. |



| | |
|--|---|
| Retrieving specified messages | <p>Start Here or ➔ Settings ➔ S! Mail Settings ➔ Message DL(Japan) or Message DL(Abroad) ➔ Highlight Auto (Specify) ➔ Edit or ➔ See below</p> <p>Selecting Sender Types Select item (<input type="checkbox"/> ⇄ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>) ➔ Confirm or </p> <p>Specifying Numbers/Addresses Highlight Individual Address ➔ Edit or ➔ Select blank entry ➔ Select method ➔ Select/set number/address ➔ Confirm or </p> <p>Deleting an Individual Address Entry Highlight Individual Address ➔ Edit or ➔ Highlight entry ➔ Options or ➔ Delete ➔ Yes ➔ Confirm or </p> <p>Deleting All Individual Address Entries Highlight Individual Address ➔ Edit or ➔ Highlight entry ➔ Options or ➔ Clear All ➔ Yes ➔ Confirm or </p> |
| | <p>Attachments</p> |
| | <p>Disabling image auto-resize</p> <p> or ➔ Settings ➔ S! Mail Settings ➔ Picture Appearance ➔ Normal</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting applies to PC Mail as well. |
| | <p>Enabling/disabling image auto-open or sound auto-play</p> <p> or ➔ Settings ➔ S! Mail Settings ➔ Auto Play File ➔ Pictures or Sounds ➔ On or Off</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting applies to PC Mail as well. |
| <p>Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved</p> <p> or ➔ Settings ➔ S! Mail Settings ➔ Send File Settings ➔ Attach Only</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting applies to PC Mail as well. | |

PC Mail Settings

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Retrieving complete PC Mail messages | <p> or ➔ Settings ➔ PC Mail Settings ➔ PC Mail DL ➔ PC Mail DL ➔ All Contents</p> |
| Retrieving new messages automatically | <p>Start Here or ➔ Settings ➔ PC Mail Settings ➔ Check New Mail ➔ See below</p> <p>Enabling Automatic Retrieval Check New Mail ➔ On ➔ Select account (<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> appears) ➔ Confirm or ➔ OK or <input type="radio"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting Check New Mail to On may incur high charges; checking for new messages may incur transmission fees even when none exists. Remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan. Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages. |
| Disabling automatic word wrap | <p> or ➔ Settings ➔ PC Mail Settings ➔ Word wrap ➔ Off</p> |



| | |
|---|---|
| Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses | <p>Start Here or ➔ Settings ➔ PC Mail Settings ➔ PC Mail DL ➔ PC Mail DL ➔ Highlight DL All From List ➔ Edit or ➔ See below</p> <p>Selecting Sender Types Select item (<input type="checkbox"/> ⇌ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>) ➔ Confirm or </p> |
| | <p>Specifying Addresses Highlight Individual Address ➔ Edit or ➔ Select blank entry ➔ Select method ➔ Select/set address ➔ Confirm or </p> |
| | <p>Deleting an Individual Address Entry Highlight Individual Address ➔ Edit or ➔ Highlight entry ➔ Options or ➔ Delete ➔ Yes ➔ Confirm or </p> |
| | <p>Deleting All Individual Address Entries Highlight Individual Address ➔ Edit or ➔ Highlight entry ➔ Options or ➔ Clear All ➔ Yes ➔ Confirm or </p> |
| Restricting complete message retrieval by size | <p> or ➔ Settings ➔ PC Mail Settings ➔ PC Mail DL ➔ Max DL Size ➔ Select account ➔ Select size</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effective when PC Mail DL is set to All Contents or DL All From List. |
| Enabling automatic PC Mail retrieval abroad | <p> or ➔ Settings ➔ PC Mail Settings ➔ Check New Mail ➔ Abroad ➔ Enable ➔ OK or <input checked="" type="radio"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatically retrieving messages abroad may incur high charges. |

Disabling automatic retrieval during specified time

or ➔ **Settings** ➔ **PC Mail Settings** ➔ **Check New Mail** ➔ **Inactivate Time** ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔ **On** ➔ **Start Time:** ➔ Enter start time ➔ **Accept** or ➔ **End Time:** ➔ Enter end time ➔ **Accept** or

SMS Settings

Changing Server sent message storage limit

or ➔ **Settings** ➔ **SMS Settings** ➔ **Expiry Time** ➔ Select option

Start Here or ➔ **Settings** ➔ **SMS Settings** ➔ **Message Center** ➔ **See below**

Editing

Setting1(Default) to **Setting3** ➔ **Edit** ➔ **Done** or

- Do not change Server number unless instructed to do so.

Changing SMS Server number

Deleting

Highlight **Setting2** or **Setting3** ➔ **Options** or ➔ **Delete** ➔ **Yes**

Activating

Highlight **Setting2** or **Setting3** ➔ **Options** or ➔ **Set Default**

- Activated number moves to **Setting1(Default)** and shifts the others down.

Changing character encoding for composing messages

or ➔ **Settings** ➔ **SMS Settings** ➔ **Char-code** ➔ Select encoding



Sending Messages

? Cannot enter message text or attach files

- Attachment size affects text size limit. In turn, text size affects attachment size limit.

? Sending failure appears in Information window

- To resend, follow these steps:
Sending failure → **Select message**
 → **OK** or **View** → **Resend** or **Y**

? Unsent message is not resent automatically

- Auto Resend attempts to send unsent messages automatically up to two times only.

? Set Auto Play File cannot be set

- Apply to one file per message.
- Not available for Graphic Mail.
- May be unavailable for some files.

? Messaging Settings are not applied

- Settings are valid for one message, and effective when viewed on compatible handsets/applications.
- Delivery Report/Priority setting may not be effective when sent to mail addresses.
- Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.

? Cannot set Messaging Settings

- These settings cannot be applied at the same time; select one per message: Set Auto Delete, Reply Request, Forward NG, Delete NG, Quiz, Set Auto Play File.
- Only Delivery Report and Expiry Time are available for SMS.

? Signature is not inserted automatically

- Auto Insert is available for S! Mail only.

? Cannot cancel sent messages

- Short messages may not be canceled.
- Set Sent Cancel is available for S! Mail only.

? Cannot send PC Mail

- Follow these steps to check User Name and Password for SMTP authentication:
✉ or **✉** → **Settings** → **PC Mail Settings** → **PC Mail Account** → **Select account** → **Set Sending** → **Sender Auth.** → **Highlight SMTP Auth.** → **Edit** or **✉** → **User Name or Password**
- Some ISPs require SMTP authentication setup in addition to Set Receiving setup.



Incoming Messages

? Handset won't ring or vibrate for some incoming messages

- Handset does not ring or vibrate for messages with Low Priority.
- Handset does not ring, vibrate or open Information window for messages filtered as spam.


? A confirmation requesting a reply appears

- To reply, select **Yes**. Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

? Handset won't respond according to Feeling Mail settings

- Ringtone, Light and Vibration settings in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
 - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
 - The message was filtered as spam
 - The message was sorted to a Secret folder

? Message text appears distorted



- Follow these steps to change encoding:
In message window, *Options* or
 ➔ ***View Settings*** ➔
Char-code ➔ **Select option**

Handling Messages

? Cannot move messages into some folders

- To move to Secret folders, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.

? Cannot receive messages

- If  appears, memory is full; delete messages (P.6-24).
- If  appears, move to a place where signal is strong.

? S! Mail is not delivered as sent

- Recipient must be subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail. The maximum size of messages/ attachments handsets can receive varies by make and model. Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets.

? Still images are not delivered as sent

- Recipient handset may not be JPEG-compatible. Convert JPEG files to PNG.

? Video files are not delivered as sent

- Send video files to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.



| | |
|--------------------------------|------------|
| Internet Services | 7-2 |
| Service Basics | 7-2 |
| Yahoo! Keitai | 7-3 |
| Using Yahoo! Keitai..... | 7-3 |
| PC Site Browser | 7-4 |
| Using PC Site Browser | 7-4 |
| Browsing | 7-5 |
| Basic Operations | 7-5 |

| | |
|--|-------------|
| Bookmarks & Saved Pages | 7-7 |
| Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages.... | 7-7 |
| RSS Feeds | 7-8 |
| Updating Blogs & News..... | 7-8 |
| Additional Functions | 7-9 |
| Troubleshooting | 7-16 |

7

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser



Service Basics

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai, or view PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser.

- Service requires a separate contract; retrieve Network Information to use these services.
- For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (P.19-18).

Transmission/Information Fees

Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

Security

Electronic certificates are saved on handset to support SSL (encryption protocol for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information).


Secure Pages

- A confirmation appears before entering and exiting secure pages.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GlobalSign, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

7

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Advanced

-  Clearing cache (temporarily saved information) • Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication • Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) (And more on P.7-14 - 7-15)



Using Yahoo! Keitai


Opening Main Menu

Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.

1 **Y/ or ➔ Connection starts**



Internet Page


- Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.
- To disconnect, press **Cancel** or .


2 **Select menu item**

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat 2 to open additional links.


3 **or ➔ Yes ➔ Page closes**

Returning to Previous Pages



[Internet Page] **Back** or  ➔
Previous page opens

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:
[Internet Page] **Options** or  ➔
Forward

Returning to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Internet Page] **Options** or  ➔
Yahoo! Keitai

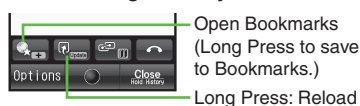
User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➔ **Done**
or  ➔ **Send** or 

Streaming

- Enjoy audiovisual media while it downloads.
- Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused.

Internet Page Softkeys



Using History

1 **MENU or ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ History**



2 **Select record ➔ Connection starts**

- Corresponding page opens.

3 **or ➔ Yes ➔ Page closes**

Entering URLs Directly

1 **MENU or ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Enter URL**







2 **Enter URL ➔ Done or ➔ Connection starts**

- Corresponding page opens.

3 **or ➔ Yes ➔ Page closes**

Advanced

-  Switching browsers
-  Deleting History records
-  Changing character size
-  Playing media streams (And more on P.7-9 - 7-11)

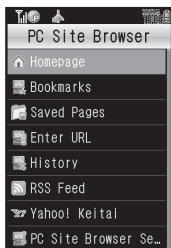


Using PC Site Browser

Open PC sites from Yahoo! JAPAN (preset home page).

- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.
- Browsing PC sites may incur higher charges.

1 MENU or ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ PC Site Browser




2 Homepage ➔ Connection starts




Pointer

Internet Page


- Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
- When a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
- To disconnect, press **Cancel** or .


3 Select menu item

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat  to open additional links.


4 or ➔ Yes ➔ Page closes

Returning to Previous Pages



[Internet Page] **Back** or  ➔ Previous page opens

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:
[Internet Page] **Options** or  ➔ **Forward**

Returning to Yahoo! JAPAN Home

[Internet Page] **Options** or  ➔ **Homepage**


User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➔ **Done** or  ➔ **Send** or 


Using History

In , **History** ➔ Select record











Entering URLs Directly

In , **Enter URL** ➔ Enter URL ➔ **Done** or 

Hiding Softkeys

[Internet Page] **Options** or  ➔ **Convenient Functions** ➔ **Softkey Area** ➔ **Off**

Advanced


-   Switching browsers
-  Using previously entered URLs
-  Deleting History records
-  Opening History properties
-  Sorting History records
-  Sending History records via mail (P.7-9)
-  Showing navigation map for continuous scroll
-  Changing scroll unit (PC Site Browser)
-  Hiding PC Site Browser messages (P.7-14)




Basic Operations

Page Browsing

Switching Frames

On framed pages, tap frame to highlight it or Long Press  to toggle frames.

Viewing Single Frame


Highlight frame \Rightarrow *Options* or  \Rightarrow
Convenient Functions \Rightarrow *Frame In*

- To return, press *Back* or .

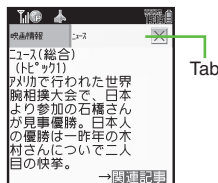
Tabbed Browsing

Open another page in a new tab and switch between tabs.

Opening a New Tab




- 1 On a page, highlight menu item \Rightarrow *Options* or  \Rightarrow
Tab Menu

2 Open in New Tab





Switching Tabs

1 Tap a tab

- Alternatively, Long Press  then use  to highlight tab and press .

Closing Tabs

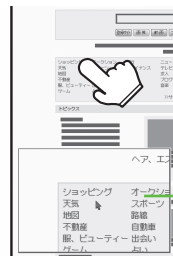
Select tab \Rightarrow *Options* or  \Rightarrow *Tab Menu* \Rightarrow *Close Tab* or *Close All Other Tabs*

- Alternatively, tap  on tab to close it.

Selecting Items in Enlarged View

Enlarge specific areas to select items with your finger.

1 On a page, Long Touch area



Enlarged View


- 2 Drag finger to highlight item in enlarged view \Rightarrow Release




Advanced

-   Using Web Search
-  Searching current page
-  Changing character size (And more on P.7-9 - 7-10)
-  Changing scroll unit
-  Disabling automatic image display/sound playback (And more on P.7-14)





Selecting Text

Activate pointer navigation and Long Touch **Hold: Drag Mode** or Long Press  to enable text selection (Drag Mode). Select text to copy, look up words in dictionaries or insert into message text. Follow these steps to create message:

- 1 On a page, point to first character **➡ Hold: Drag Mode (Long)** or  (Long)
 - Drag Mode is activated.
- 2 Select text range
- 3 **Options** or  **➡ Create Message**
- 4 **S! Mail or SMS**
 - S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
- 5 Complete message **➡ Send** or 

Text Entry

- 1 On a page, select text entry field
- 2 Enter text **➡ Done** or 
 - Internet page returns.

Using Entered Text (Input Memory)
 [Internet Page] Select text entry field
➡ Options or  **➡ Insert/Font Size** **➡ Input Memory** **➡ Select text**


Pull-down Menu Item Selection

- 1 On a page, select menu list field



- 2 Select item

When Multiple Selection is Supported

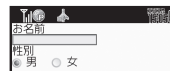
- Select items as needed and press .

Page Item Indicators

Selection Items

Buttons  or boxes  appear.

- 1 On a page, select button or box



- / changes to /

Execution Items

Execute the assigned command.

- 1 On a page, select command





Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmarks

Bookmark sites for quick access.

Saving Bookmarks

- 1 On a page, **Options** or 
 ➔ **Bookmarks** ➔ **Save**
 - **Save** appears only for savable pages.
 - Alternatively, Long Touch .

- 2 Enter/edit title ➔ **Done** or 
- 3 **Save**


Opening Bookmarks

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai**
 ➔ **Bookmarks**




- 2 **Select title**
 - Corresponding page opens.

Switching List Type

After 1, **Options** or  ➔ **Change List** ➔ **Select type**

- Alternatively, tap type indicator to toggle lists.

Opening Bookmarks Online

[Internet Page] **Options** or  ➔ **Bookmarks** ➔ **Open List** ➔ **Select title**

Saved Pages

Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.

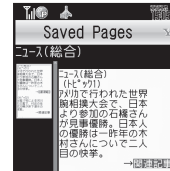
Saving Pages

- 1 On a page, **Options** or 
 ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔ **Save**
 - **Save** appears only for savable pages.

- 2 Enter/edit title ➔ **Done** or 


Opening Saved Pages

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ **Saved Pages**



- 2 **Select page**
 - Corresponding page opens.

Opening Saved Pages Online

[Internet Page] **Options** or  ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔ **Open List** ➔ **Select page**

Advanced

-  ● Deleting titles ● Editing titles ● Sorting titles into folders ● Deleting pages ● Editing page titles ● Changing page order (And more on P.7-11 - 7-12)



Updating Blogs & News

Register RSS-compatible sites; view content updates without opening source sites. Transmission fees apply.

Subscribing to RSS Feeds



Available for PC Site Browser only.

Via RSS-Compatible Sites

 appears for RSS-compatible sites.



RSS Indicator

- 1 On a page, *Options* or 
 ➔ *Register In RSS Feed*
- 2 Select feed (⇔) ➔
 Complete selection ➔
 Assign or 
- 3 *Save*
 - Select **Yes** to update immediately or **No**.

Via RSS Icons

Use RSS/RDF/XML icons on RSS-compatible sites.

- 1 On a page, select icon
- 2 **Yes** ➔ *Save*


Checking Updates

Follow these steps to update all feeds:

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai**
- 2 **PC Site Browser** ➔ **RSS Feed**



RSS Feed List



- 3 **Reload All** ➔ **OK** or 
- 4 **Yes** or **No**
- 5 Select feed




Title List

- 6 Select title
 - Information appears.


Updating Single RSS Feeds

[RSS Feed List] Highlight feed ➔ *Options* or  ➔ *Reload* ➔ **OK** or  ➔ **Yes** or **No**


Disabling/Enabling Updates

[RSS Feed List] Highlight feed ➔ *Options* or  ➔ *Manage RSS Feed* ➔ *Restrict Update* or *Accept Update*

Accessing Source Sites

[Title List] Select title ➔ Select linked title ➔ **Yes** ➔ **OK** or  ➔ **Yes** or **No**

Advanced

-  ● Deleting feeds ● Sorting feeds ● Sending feeds via mail ● Opening feed properties ● Sorting feeds into folders ● Exporting/importing feeds (P.7-13)



Connecting/Browsing

General

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Switching browsers | On a page, Options or → Convenient Functions → Change to PC Browser or Switch Browser → This Page or Linked Page → OK or → Yes or No |
| Using previously entered URLs | Start Here MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → See below |
| | Yahoo! Keitai Enter URL → Options or → URL Entry Log → Select URL → Done or |
| | PC Site Browser PC Site Browser → Enter URL → Options or → URL Entry Log → Select URL → Done or |

History

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Deleting History records | Start Here MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → History → See below |
| | One Record Highlight record → Options or → Delete → Yes |
| | All Records Options or → Delete All → Enter Handset Code → OK or → Yes |
| Opening History properties | MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → History → Highlight record → Options or → Details |
| Sorting History records | MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → History → Options or → Sort → By Domain or By Date |

Sending History records via mail

MENU or → **Yahoo! Keitai** → **History** → **Highlight record** → **Options** or → **Send URL** → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → **Complete message** → **Send** or











- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.








Page Operations

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

| | |
|---|---|
| Using Web Search | On a page, Options or → Convenient Functions → Web Search → Enter search text → Done or |
| Searching current page | On a page, Options or → Convenient Functions → Search → Enter search text → Done or • Press Next or to jump to next search result, if any. |
| Looking up copied words in dictionaries | On a page, Options or → Convenient Functions → Copy & Search Dict. → Highlight first character → Start or → Highlight text range → End or → Select dictionary → Search |
| Saving files to Data Folder | Start Here On a page, Options or → Save Items → See below |
| | Files on Page Select file → Save → Enter name → Done or → Save here • Some files are saved automatically. • End memory-consuming operations (TV recording, etc.) beforehand. • Confirm signal is strong, battery is adequately charged and that there is enough free memory beforehand. |
| | Background Images Save Background Image → Save → Enter name → Done or → Save here |





| | |
|--|--|
| Using linked info | Dialing Numbers On a page, select number ➔ <i>Call or Video Call</i> |
| | Sending Messages On a page, select number or mail address ➔ <i>Create Message</i> ➔ <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> ➔ Complete message ➔ <i>Send</i> or  |
| Copying text | On a page, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Copy Text</i> ➔ Highlight first character ➔ <i>Start</i> or  ➔ Highlight text range ➔ <i>End</i> or  |
| Sending URLs via mail | On a page, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Convenient Functions</i> ➔ <i>Send URL</i> ➔ <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> ➔ Complete message ➔ <i>Send</i> or  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. |
| Jumping to page top/bottom | On a page, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Convenient Functions</i> ➔ <i>Jump In Page</i> ➔ <i>Page Top</i> or <i>Page Bottom</i> |
| Opening function shortcuts | On a page, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Help</i> |
| Opening page properties | On a page, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Convenient Functions</i> ➔ <i>Details</i> ➔ Select item |
| Changing encoding to read garbled text | On a page, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Char-code</i> ➔ Select option |

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Handling Flash® files |  On a page, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Convenient Functions</i> ➔ <i>Flash@Menu</i> ➔ See below |
| | Pausing/Playing <i>Pause, Resume or Replay</i> |
| | Selecting Image Quality <i>Quality</i> ➔ Select option |
| Updating page content | On a page, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Reload</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To update content in Saved Pages, open a page and follow the steps above. |
| ■ Yahoo! Keitai | |
| Changing character size | On a page, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Font Size</i> ➔ Select size |
| ■ PC Site Browser | |
| Switching view | On a page, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>PC Screen</i> or <i>Small Screen</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display. |
| Zooming on Pages | On a page, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Convenient Functions</i> ➔ <i>Zoom Factor</i> ➔ Select scale |
| Jumping to specific locations | On a page,  (Long) ➔ Quick Movement map appears ➔ Select location |






















Streaming

- Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused.
- Streaming sound is heard from Speaker/Headphones regardless of  Sound Output setting.

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Playing media streams | <p>On a page, select file</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Downloaded content cannot be saved. |
| Customizing streaming settings | <p>While streaming, Options or  ➔ Settings ➔ See below</p> <p>Changing Playback Size</p> <p><i>Display Size</i> ➔ Select size</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Playback size may not change depending on file/stream. <p>Setting Backlight Status</p> <p><i>Backlight</i> ➔ Select option</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Selecting Normal Settings applies Display Backlight setting. <p>Adjusting Sound Effects</p> <p><i>Sound Effects</i> ➔ Select effect</p> |
| | <p>Media Player ➔ Streaming ➔ See below</p> <p>Resuming from Stopped Point Last Played</p> <p>Using Bookmarks</p> <p><i>Bookmarks</i> ➔ Select title</p> <p>Using History</p> <p><i>History</i> ➔ Select record</p> |
| | |
| Streaming from Media Player | |

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

■ Bookmarks

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| | <p>Start Here MENU or  ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Bookmarks ➔ See below</p> <p>One Title</p> <p><i>Highlight title</i> ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔ <i>Yes</i></p> <p>All Titles</p> <p><i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Delete All</i> ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ <i>OK</i> or  ➔ <i>Yes</i></p> |
| Deleting titles | |
| Editing titles | <p>MENU or  ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Bookmarks ➔ Highlight title ➔ Options or  ➔ Edit ➔ Title: ➔ Enter title ➔ Done or  ➔ Save or </p> |
| Editing bookmarked URLs | <p>MENU or  ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Bookmarks ➔ Highlight title ➔ Options or  ➔ Edit ➔ URL: ➔ Edit ➔ Done or  ➔ Save or </p> |
| Sending bookmarked URLs via mail | <p>MENU or  ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Bookmarks ➔ Highlight title ➔ Options or  ➔ Send ➔ As Message ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ Complete message ➔ Send or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. |
| Changing title order | <p>MENU or  ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Bookmarks ➔ Highlight title ➔ Options or  ➔ Change Order ➔ Select target location</p> |
| Opening title properties | <p>MENU or  ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Bookmarks ➔ Highlight title ➔ Options or  ➔ Details</p> |



| | |
|---|---|
| Sorting titles into folders | (Start Here) MENU or <input type="radio"/> ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Bookmarks ➔ See below |
| | Creating Folders Options or <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Create Folder ➔ Enter name ➔ Done or <input type="radio"/> |
| | Moving to Folders Highlight title ➔ Options or <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Move ➔ Select folder ➔ Move |
| | Moving from Folders Select folder ➔ Highlight title ➔ Options or <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Move ➔ Move |
| | Renaming Folders Highlight folder ➔ Options or <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Rename ➔ Enter name ➔ Done or <input type="radio"/> |
| | Deleting All Titles Within a Folder Select folder ➔ Options or <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Delete All ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or <input type="radio"/> ➔ Yes |
| Deleting Folders Highlight folder ➔ Options or <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Delete ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or <input type="radio"/> ➔ Yes | |

■ Saved Pages

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Deleting pages | (Start Here) MENU or <input type="radio"/> ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Saved Pages ➔ See below |
| | One Page Highlight page ➔ Options or <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Delete ➔ Yes |
| Editing page titles | All Pages Options or <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Delete All ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or <input type="radio"/> ➔ Yes |
| | MENU or <input type="radio"/> ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Saved Pages ➔ Highlight page ➔ Options or <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Rename ➔ Enter title ➔ Done or <input type="radio"/> |
| Changing page order | MENU or <input type="radio"/> ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Saved Pages ➔ Highlight page ➔ Options or <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Change Order ➔ Select target location |
| Opening page properties | MENU or <input type="radio"/> ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Saved Pages ➔ Highlight page ➔ Options or <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Details |
| Switching page list view | MENU or <input type="radio"/> ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ Saved Pages ➔ Highlight page ➔ Options or <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ List View or Preview View |



| RSS Feeds | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Deleting feeds | <p>Start Here MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → RSS Feed → See below</p> <p>One Entry Highlight feed → Options or → Delete → Yes</p> <p>All Entries Options or → Manage RSS Feed → Delete All → Enter Handset Code → OK or → Yes</p> |
| | <p>MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → RSS Feed → Options or → Manage RSS Feed → Sort → Select option</p> |
| | <p>MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → RSS Feed → Highlight feed → Options or → Manage RSS Feed → As Message → Complete message → Send or </p> |
| Sorting feeds | <p>MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → RSS Feed → Options or → Manage RSS Feed → Sort → Select option</p> |
| Sending feeds via mail | <p>MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → RSS Feed → Highlight feed → Options or → Manage RSS Feed → As Message → Complete message → Send or </p> |
| Opening feed properties | <p>MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → RSS Feed → Highlight feed → Options or → Manage RSS Feed → Details</p> |






| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Sorting feeds into folders | <p>Start Here MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → RSS Feed → See below</p> <p>Creating Folders Options or → Manage RSS Feed → Create Folder → Enter name → Done or </p> <p>Moving to Folders Highlight feed → Options or → Manage RSS Feed → Move → Select folder → Move</p> <p>Renaming Folders Highlight folder → Options or → Manage RSS Feed → Rename → Enter name → Done or </p> <p>Deleting Folders Highlight folder → Options or → Delete → Enter Handset Code → OK or → Yes</p> |
| | <p>Start Here MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → RSS Feed → Options or → Manage RSS Feed → See below</p> <p>Exporting All Feeds Export All → Select location</p> <p>Importing (Adding Feeds) Import → Select file → As New Items → Yes or No → Yes or No</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When importing feeds for the first time, a confirmation appears. <p>Importing (Overwriting Existing Feeds) Import → Select file → Delete All → Enter Handset Code → OK or → Yes → Yes or No → Yes or No</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When importing feeds for the first time, a confirmation appears. |
| | <p>Start Here MENU or → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → RSS Feed → Options or → Manage RSS Feed → See below</p> <p>Exporting All Feeds Export All → Select location</p> <p>Importing (Adding Feeds) Import → Select file → As New Items → Yes or No → Yes or No</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When importing feeds for the first time, a confirmation appears. <p>Importing (Overwriting Existing Feeds) Import → Select file → Delete All → Enter Handset Code → OK or → Yes → Yes or No → Yes or No</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When importing feeds for the first time, a confirmation appears. |






Settings

Unless noted otherwise, settings are available for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser. (Operations described for Yahoo! Keitai.)






■ Internet Page

| | |
|--|--|
| Changing scroll unit | MENU or  → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Scroll Unit → Select unit |
| Disabling automatic image display/sound playback | (Start Here) MENU or  → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Downloads → See below Image Display Images → Do not Show Sound Playback Sounds → Do not Play |
| Changing character size | MENU or  → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Font Size → Select size |
| Using pointer navigation | (Start Here) MENU or  → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Cursor Settings → See below Activating Cursor Mode Settings → Normal Mode Changing Pointer Speed Speed Settings → Select speed |
| Using Memory Card as primary download storage | MENU or  → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Download to → Prefer Card • Some files may be saved to handset regardless of this setting. |

■ PC Site Browser

| | |
|--|---|
| Showing navigation map for continuous scroll | MENU or  → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → PC Site Browser Settings → Scroll Settings → Page Navigation → On |
| Changing scroll unit (PC Site Browser) | MENU or  → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → PC Site Browser Settings → Scroll Settings → Scroll Unit → Select unit |
| Hiding PC Site Browser messages | MENU or  → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → PC Site Browser Settings → Warning Message → PC Site Browser or Yahoo! Keitai → Off |

■ Memory Operation

| | |
|--|---|
| Clearing cache (temporarily saved information) | MENU or  → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Memory Operation → Delete Cache → Yes |
| Clearing cookies | MENU or  → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Memory Operation → Delete Cookies → Yes |
| Clearing authentication information | MENU or  → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Memory Operation → Delete Auth Info → Yes |
| Deleting all RSS feeds | MENU or  → Yahoo! Keitai → PC Site Browser → PC Site Browser Settings → Memory Operation → Delete RSS Feed List → Enter Handset Code → OK or  → Yes • Available for PC Site Browser. |



■ Security Settings

| | |
|---|---|
| Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication | MENU or <input checked="" type="radio"/> → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Security Settings → Manufacture Number → Off |
| Disabling referer information delivery to the Server | MENU or <input checked="" type="radio"/> → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Security Settings → Send Referer → Not Send |
| Enabling/disabling cookies | MENU or <input checked="" type="radio"/> → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Security Settings → Cookies → Select option |
| Selecting script execution option | MENU or <input checked="" type="radio"/> → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Security Settings → Script Settings → Select option |
| Hiding confirmations before entering/exiting secure pages | MENU or <input checked="" type="radio"/> → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Security Settings → Secure Prompt → Do not Show |
| Opening electronic certificates saved on handset | MENU or <input checked="" type="radio"/> → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Security Settings → Root Certificates → Select certificate |
| Changing validity of entered user ID/ password | MENU or <input checked="" type="radio"/> → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Security Settings → Keep Auth Info → Select option <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Per Browsing</i> retains entered user ID/password during browsing sessions. <i>On</i> retains such authentication information even after turning handset off. • Authentication information may not be retained depending on the site. |

| | |
|--|---|
| Enabling/disabling Ajax (for asynchronous communication) | MENU or <input checked="" type="radio"/> → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Security Settings → Restrict Ajax → Select option |
| ■ Resetting | |
| Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) | MENU or <input checked="" type="radio"/> → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Initialized Browser → Enter Handset Code → OK or <input checked="" type="radio"/> → Yes |
| Restoring default handset settings | MENU or <input checked="" type="radio"/> → Yahoo! Keitai → Browser Settings → Reset Settings → Enter Handset Code → OK or <input checked="" type="radio"/> → Yes |



Connecting/Browsing

? What is the bar at Display bottom?

- This is a data progress bar; the number beside it indicates transmitted (green) or received (red) data.

Page Operations

? Internet page does not open completely

- Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close other tabs.

? Text overlaps

- The site may be designed for browsing on PCs; try ***Tiny*** font size.
- Text may overlap when Zoom Factor is used; adjust scale.

? Cannot access other functions while browsing the Internet

- When switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser (☐ appears), additional function activation is disabled; close either browser and retry.



| | |
|----------------------------------|------------|
| Digital TV | 8-2 |
| Basics | 8-2 |
| Area Setup..... | 8-3 |
| Watching TV | 8-4 |
| TV Player | 8-7 |
| Recording/Playing Programs | 8-7 |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| TV Timer | 8-10 |
| TV Timer & TV Recording Timer | 8-10 |
| Additional Functions | 8-11 |
| Troubleshooting | 8-17 |

8

Digital TV



Basics

931SH supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast services developed for mobile devices in Japan.

Watch Live Television

Set up a channel list for your service area to access available programming. Close Slider and rotate handset for widescreen TV images. Capture screenshots while watching TV.

Multi Job

Watch TV in one half of Display using the other to access messaging functions, browse the Internet or open Phone Book, etc.

Access TV Listing (EPG)

Access TV Listing (EPG) to find program channels and times; set Reservations by date and time to record shows or activate TV.

View Data Broadcasts

In addition to audio and visuals, enjoy text, program-related information and interactive services.

Record Shows/Time Shift

Record current program for later viewing on handset; if interrupted by incoming calls while watching TV, record it temporarily for delayed playback.

Reserve TV Programs

Record a show or activate TV at a specified time; enter dates & times manually or reference TV Listing electronic program guide.

Precautions

- 931SH TV is exclusively for use in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving or cycling. Accidents may result. Phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004). When walking, always pay attention to your surroundings, especially near road/rail crossings, etc.
- When using TV while charging battery, separate AC Charger and Antenna to avoid interference.
- Call transmissions, incoming messages or mobile phone use in the immediate vicinity may affect audiovisual quality.
- Programming may not be viewable or record properly when:
 - Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
 - In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
 - Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
 - Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless base stations
 - Near railroad tracks or highways
 - Anywhere a jamming signal is broadcast/reception is unstable



Area Setup

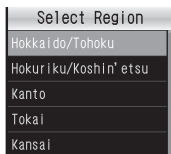
Follow these steps when activating TV for the first time. Set up channels by area.

1 MENU or → TV



- Setup confirmation appears.

2 Yes



3 Select region

4 Select prefecture → Select locality



- After setup, channel list appears.

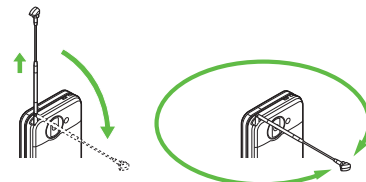
5 OK or



- To watch TV, select **Digital TV**.

Digital TV Antenna





Pull Antenna by top bead until it clicks. After extending Antenna fully, fold then rotate it to find best reception. (Unless transmission source is near, extend it for better reception.)





Watching TV without Completing Area Setup

In , **Other Region**

Adding Reception Areas

MENU or  → TV → Digital TV →
Options or  → Set Channels →
Change Area → Highlight Area →
Options or  → Set Area Info →
From 

Advanced

-  Switching reception Areas
- Renaming Areas
- Changing/disabling  function
- Editing channels
- Deleting all channels in Area
- Adding new channels to Area
- Updating all channels in the Area (P.8-11)



Watching TV

Complete Area setup first.

1 MENU or ➔ TV ➔ Digital TV



TV Window

- When Slider is closed, TV orientation changes with handset orientation.

2 Tap or use Keypad to select a channel

3 or ➔ Yes ➔ TV ends



Channel Selection

- Alternatively, drag finger left or right on TV image then select one.


Incoming Calls

- Press **Answer** or  to answer calls.

When Memory Card is Inserted

- If an incoming Voice Call interrupts a program, it is temporarily recorded to Memory Card for Time Shift playback. To temporarily record programs manually, press  or  (Long) in TV window.

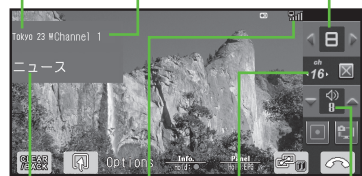
Incoming Messages

- Double beep sounds and New Message notice appears. Long Press  to open messages.

Panel Description



Area Name Station Name Channel Key



Program Name Signal Strength Channel Volume

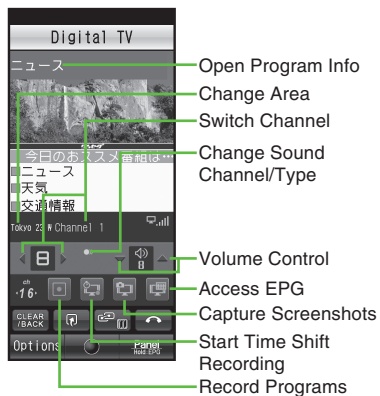
The more bars the better the signal strength.

Advanced

- Opening Help
- Enlarging display size for portrait position
- Viewing widescreen images in full size
- Searching current program on the Internet
- Smoothing TV images
- Saving current channel (And more on P.8-11 - 8-12)



TV Window Operations



Change Area Switch Channel Hide Panel

Open Program Info
Volume Control
Record Programs
Capture Screenshots

Advanced

- Changing display view
- Returning to initial window
- Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts
- Hiding Network connection confirmation
- Sending/hiding Location Information
- Sending manufacture number and other information (And more on P.8-13 - 8-14)

Data Broadcast (Japanese)

Select an item to access program-related information and interactive services.

Data Broadcast Fees

- Data Broadcast information viewing is free, however, using data links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.
- Confirmation appears the first time a fee-based Network connection is established from a channel; if accepted, further Network connections are established without confirmation until the channel is changed.

TV Listing (Japanese)

1 In TV window, or

- EPG application starts; refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.
- When using EPG application for the first time, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.



Program Info

1 In TV window, tap program name



Program Info Window

2 Select program

- To return, press **CLEAR/BACK** or twice.

Opening Program Info in Landscape Position
[TV Window] **Info**.

Setting Recording Timer via Program Info
[Program Info Window] Highlight program → **Record** or .

- Timer entries set via Program Info are updated with program changes automatically. Program cancellations cancel corresponding Timer entries. (Poor signal conditions may inhibit updates or cancellations.)

Capturing Screenshots

Capture screenshots while watching TV. (May be unavailable if TV was activated by TV Timer.)
Saved images cannot be forwarded, edited, set as Wallpaper or attached to messages.

1 In TV window, or

2 Assign or

- Image is saved.

Opening Saved Images

1 MENU or → TV

2 TV-Image Folder



3 Select image

Opening Images while Watching TV
[TV Window] **Options** or →
Capture → **TV-Image Folder** →

Enlarging Specific Image Portion

Available in landscape position.

1 In TV window, Long Touch portion

- Drag enlarged portion to enlarge other areas.

Multi Job

1 In TV window, or



2 Select function

- To toggle function windows, press .

3 or → Function window closes



Recording/Playing Programs

Record clips on handset or Memory Card while watching TV.

Dubbing 10

- 931SH supports Dubbing 10 copy protection scheme that allows recorded programs to be copied from handset to Memory Card. Open file properties to check the remaining number of copies allowed to be made.

Precautions

- Saved files cannot be attached to messages.
- 931SH encryption technology prevents unauthorized copying or playback of Memory Card files through data encryption and authentication. Files copied from Memory Card to other cards on PC are unplayable.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized reproduction/other use.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recorded content.



Recording Programs

When Small Light flashes yellow, reception is poor; change location to improve it: Small Light illuminates green for moderate, or blue for strong reception.

- 1 In TV window,  or  (Long) ➔ Recording starts



Recording Window


- Changing volume, etc. does not affect recordings.
- 2  or  (Long) ➔ Recording ends
- Clip is saved to handset (or Memory Card, if inserted).

Memory/Battery Runs Low or Video Call/S! Circle Talk Request is Accepted


- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)
- ### Saving Files via the Internet while Recording
- While recording programs to handset, confirm there is enough free memory before saving files.

Chasing Playback


Watch a program from the beginning while recording it on Memory Card.

- 1  (Long) ➔ Playback starts

 - Recording window returns when playback has caught up to the real-time program.
 - TV Player playback operations (except Split File and Set Marker) are available.

- 2  (Long) ➔ Playback stops

Advanced


-  ● Recording programs without Data Broadcasts
- Saving Data Broadcasts to Memory Card
- Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation
- Recording programs to handset (P.8-14)



Playing Recorded Programs

1 MENU or  \rightarrow TV \rightarrow TV Player

Video List

- Handset Video List appears. (Memory Card Video List appears if a card is inserted.)
-  indicates the file is unplayable.

2 Select file



Playback Window

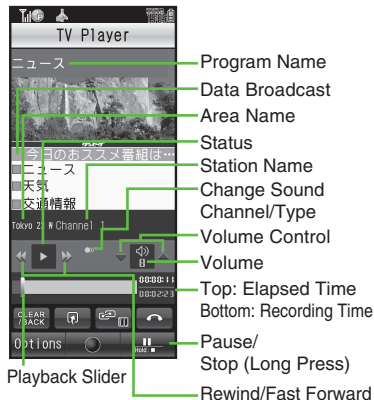
- Playback starts. (The last played file plays from where it stopped.)

3 Hold:  (Long) or  (Long) \rightarrow Playback stops


Changing Video List from Memory Card to Handset

After 1, tap 

Playback Window Description



Opening Help

[Playback Window] Options or  \rightarrow Help

Changing Playback Position with Touch Panel

1 Drag playback slider

Advanced

-  Splitting files by specifying a time point
-  Playing files repeatedly
-  Playing split files (P.8-14)

Time Shift Playback

Insert a Memory Card to temporarily record TV programs interrupted by incoming Voice Calls for Time Shift playback. (See related indicators in the screenshot below.)



Follow these steps to start playback:

1 or (Long) ➡

Playback starts

- Playback stops when Time Shift playback has caught up to the real-time program.
- During Time Shift playback, skip forward/backward or fast forward in the same way as with TV Player.


2 (Long) ➡ Recording/ playback stops

- Recorded content is deleted.

Stopping Time Shift Playback with Touch Panel

Options ➡ Rec./TimeShift ➡ Time Shift Stop

Advanced

-  ● Checking memory status ● Renaming files ● Deleting files ● Copying files to Memory Card ● Moving files to Memory Card ● Opening file properties (P.8-15)



TV Timer & TV Recording Timer



1 MENU or  ➔ TV ➔
Reservation List

2 Options or  ➔ New Entry




3 Manual ➔ Programming or
Recording



4 Enter start date/time ➔ OK
or  ➔ Enter end date/time
➔ OK or 

5 Channel: ➔ Select channel
➔ Save or 

- When a confirmation appears, read and then press **OK** or .


Setting Timer via EPG

After , From TV Listing

- Refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.

Timer Recording Precautions

- End current operations.
- Confirm target channel reception.
- Confirm battery is adequately charged and that there is enough free memory.

When TV is activated for Timer recording, audio output is redirected to Speaker/Headphones even if  Sound Output is set to **Bluetooth Device**. (TV audio is muted.)

When Memory Card is Not Inserted

- Clip is saved to handset.


At Timer Time (TV Alarm Time)

TV and Alarm activate. Alarm ends after the set duration.









Recording starts slightly before the Timer start time and ends a few seconds after the Timer end time.

While Using Another Function

- Confirmation appears if TV cannot activate in current state; press **OK** or  then end application to enable Timer.

Advanced

-   Setting TV Timer via Program Info
-  Opening/editing/ deleting Timer details
-  Opening/deleting Timer log
-  Customizing TV Alarm settings
-  Ending operations automatically at Timer time (P.8-16)



| Area & Channel | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Switching reception Areas | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Set Channels</i> ➔ <i>Change Area</i> ➔ <i>Select Area</i> |
| Renaming Areas | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Set Channels</i> ➔ <i>Change Area</i> ➔ <i>Highlight Area</i> ➔ <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Change Area Name</i> ➔ <i>Enter name</i> ➔ <i>Done</i> or |
| Changing/disabling function | <small>[Start Here]</small> While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Set Channels</i> ➔ <i>Channel Key Setting</i> ➔ <i>See below</i> |
| | <i>Toggle All Receivable Channels By Manual</i> <i>Disabling Disable</i> |
| Editing channels | <small>[Start Here]</small> While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Set Channels</i> ➔ <i>CH Switch</i> ➔ <i>Highlight channel</i> ➔ <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>See below</i> |
| | <i>Moving Channels Flip</i> ➔ <i>Select target key</i> <i>Deleting Channels Delete</i> ➔ <i>Yes</i> |
| Deleting all channels in Area | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Set Channels</i> ➔ <i>Change Area</i> ➔ <i>Highlight Area</i> ➔ <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Reset Settings</i> ➔ <i>Yes</i> |
| Adding new channels to Area | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Set Channels</i> ➔ <i>Change Area</i> ➔ <i>Highlight Area</i> ➔ <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Channel Update</i> ➔ <i>Update Further</i> |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Updating all channels in the Area | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Set Channels</i> ➔ <i>Change Area</i> ➔ <i>Highlight Area</i> ➔ <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Channel Update</i> ➔ <i>Update All</i> ➔ <i>Yes</i> |
|-----------------------------------|--|

Watching

| | |
|--|--|
| Opening Help | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Help</i> ● Also available while recording or playing programs. |
| Enlarging display size for portrait position | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>AV Settings</i> ➔ <i>Screen Size</i> ➔ <i>Enlarge</i> |
| Viewing widescreen images in full size | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>AV Settings</i> ➔ <i>Screen</i> ➔ <i>Full Screen</i> |
| Searching current program on the Internet | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Operate Program</i> ➔ <i>Program Info. Search</i> ➔ <i>Search</i> ● Follow onscreen instructions. |
| Smoothing TV images | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>AV Settings</i> ➔ <i>Smooth Mode</i> ➔ <i>On</i> ● May not be effective depending on the image. |
| Saving current channel | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Set Channels</i> ➔ <i>Save Channel</i> ➔ <i>Select key</i> ● To overwrite a saved channel, select <i>Yes</i> . |
| Selecting an audiovisual mode | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>AV Settings</i> ➔ <i>AV Mode</i> ➔ <i>Select mode</i> ● TV reception time may be relatively shorter when <i>High Resolution</i> is selected. |















| | |
|---|--|
| Adjusting current AV Mode parameters | Start Here While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>AV Settings</i> ➔ See below |
| | Brightness <i>Image</i> ➔ <i>Brightness</i> ➔ Adjust level ➔ <i>OK</i> or |
| | Disabling/Enabling Brightness Adjustment via Light Sensor <i>Image</i> ➔ <i>Brightness</i> ➔ <i>Check</i> or (<input type="checkbox"/> ➔ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>) ➔ <i>OK</i> or |
| | Adjusting Brightness Automatically by Scene <i>Image</i> ➔ <i>Control by Scene</i> ➔ <i>On(Light)</i> or <i>On</i> |
| | Other Image-Related Parameters <i>Image</i> ➔ Select item ➔ Adjust level ➔ <i>OK</i> or • Adjust <i>Contrast</i> , <i>Blackness</i> (black level), <i>Color</i> (color density), <i>Tint</i> (skin color tone) and <i>Sharpness</i> . |
| Restoring Default Image Settings <i>Image</i> ➔ <i>Reset</i> ➔ <i>Yes</i> | |
| Selecting Sound Option <i>Tone</i> ➔ Select option | |
| Hiding Panel | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Panel On/Off</i> ➔ <i>Off</i> |
| Changing panel pattern | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Panel Type</i> ➔ Select pattern |
| Customizing viewing options for landscape position | Start Here <i>MENU</i> or ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Landscape Sets.</i> ➔ See below |
| | Showing Indicators Always <i>Display Icon</i> ➔ <i>On</i> |
| | Placing Panel to the Left <i>Display Panel</i> ➔ <i>Display Left</i> |









| | |
|---|--|
| Switching One Seg service | While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Set Channels</i> ➔ <i>Select Serv. Station</i> ➔ Select service • Available for programs with multiple services. |
| Changing handset responses to incoming transmissions | Start Here <i>MENU</i> or ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Calls & Alarms</i> ➔ See below |
| | Showing Alarm Notice <i>Alarm</i> ➔ <i>Alarm Notice</i> |
| | Showing Calls or S! Circle Talk Requests Select item ➔ <i>Notice a Call</i> |
| | Showing New Message Notice <i>Incoming Message</i> ➔ <i>Calls & Alarms</i> |
| Listening to audio from Speaker | <i>MENU</i> or ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Sound Output</i> ➔ <i>Loudspeaker</i> |
| Switching audio output to wireless device | <i>MENU</i> or ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Sound Output</i> ➔ <i>Bluetooth Device</i> ➔ Select device |
| Using wireless Headphones | While watching TV, (Long) or (Long) • Pair SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® headphones beforehand. |
| Setting TV to end automatically after a period of time | <i>MENU</i> or ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Auto Exit Time</i> ➔ Select time |



Data Broadcast (Portrait Position Only)



| | |
|--|---|
| Changing display view | While viewing Data Broadcast, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Set Broadcast Data</i> ➔ <i>Change View (Data)</i> • To return to TV window, press TV or  • Alternatively, spread fingers on Data Broadcast area. |
| Returning to initial window | While viewing Data Broadcast, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Set Broadcast Data</i> ➔ <i>Back to Top</i> |
| Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts |  MENU or  ➔ TV ➔ Settings ➔ Broadcast Data ➔ Delete StationData ➔ See below Deleting by Station Highlight station ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ Delete ➔ Yes Deleting All <i>Options</i> or  ➔ Delete All ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or  ➔ Yes |
| Hiding Network connection confirmation | MENU or  ➔ TV ➔ Settings ➔ Broadcast Data ➔ Notify Connection ➔ Off |
| Sending/hiding Location Information |  MENU or  ➔ TV ➔ Settings ➔ Broadcast Data ➔ Location ➔ See below Sending Always On Hiding Always Off |
| Sending manufacture number and other information | MENU or  ➔ TV ➔ Settings ➔ Broadcast Data ➔ Manufacture Number ➔ On |

TV Link (Japanese)





| | |
|--|---|
| Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information | While viewing Data Broadcast, select link source • Link navigation varies by program. Follow onscreen instructions to save links. |
| Using TV links |  MENU or  ➔ TV ➔ TV Link ➔ See below Opening TV Links Select link • Connection fees may apply. Opening Properties Highlight link ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ Details |
| Deleting TV links |  MENU or  ➔ TV ➔ TV Link ➔ See below One Entry Highlight link ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ Delete ➔ Yes All Entries <i>Options</i> or  ➔ Delete All ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or  ➔ Yes |









Subtitle & Sound

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Changing subtitle settings | [Start Here] While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Subtitle/Sound</i> ➔ See below |
| | Showing Subtitles Always <i>Display Subtitle</i> ➔ <i>On</i> |
| | Hiding Subtitles Always <i>Display Subtitle</i> ➔ <i>Off</i> |
| | Changing Subtitle Language <i>Subtitle Language</i> ➔ <i>Language 2</i> • Available when multiple languages are supported. |
| | Showing Subtitle Area Always <i>Auto Subtitle Off</i> ➔ <i>Off</i> • Available in portrait position only. |
| | Showing Subtitles at the Top <i>Position</i> ➔ <i>Upper</i> • Available in landscape position only. |
| | [Start Here] While watching TV, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Subtitle/Sound</i> ➔ See below |
| Changing sound settings | Selecting Sound Option <i>Sound Type</i> ➔ <i>Sound2</i> • Available when multiple sounds are supported. |
| | Listening to Sub Language <i>Sound Channel</i> ➔ <i>Sub</i> |
| | Listening to Main & Sub Languages <i>Sound Channel</i> ➔ <i>Main + Sub</i> |

Recording

| | |
|---|--|
| Recording programs without Data Broadcasts | <i>MENU</i> or  ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Broadcast Data</i> ➔ <i>Set Recording</i> ➔ <i>Image Only</i> |
| Saving Data Broadcasts to Memory Card | <i>MENU</i> or  ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Broadcast Data</i> ➔ <i>Image Location</i> ➔ <i>Memory Card</i> |
| Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation | <i>MENU</i> or  ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Set Call Time Shift</i> ➔ <i>Off</i> |
| Recording programs to handset | <i>MENU</i> or  ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Save Recording to</i> ➔ <i>Phone Memory</i> |

Recorded Programs

| | |
|--|--|
| ■ Playback | |
| Splitting files by specifying a time point | During playback, <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Split File</i> ➔ <i>Select Point</i> ➔ <i>Specify point</i> ➔ <i>Confirm</i> • Alternatively, Long Press  during playback. |
| Playing files repeatedly | <i>MENU</i> or  ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ <i>TV Player</i> ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Playback Pattern</i> ➔ <i>Repeat</i> |
| Playing split files | <i>MENU</i> or  ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ <i>TV Player</i> ➔ <i>Highlight split file</i> ➔ <i>Open</i> or  ➔ <i>Select file</i> |



Managing









| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Checking memory status | MENU or → TV → TV Player → Options or → Memory Remaining |
| Renaming files | MENU or → TV → TV Player → Highlight file → Options or → Rename → Enter name → Done or |
| Deleting files | MENU or → TV → TV Player → See below |
| | Single Files Highlight file → Options or → Delete → Yes |
| | All Files Options or → Delete All → Enter Handset Code → OK or → Yes |
| Copying files to Memory Card | MENU or → TV → TV Player → Options or → Change to Phone → Highlight file → Options or → Copy to Card → Yes • File is moved from handset to Memory Card when the number of copies made exceeds the limit. |
| Moving files to Memory Card | MENU or → TV → TV Player → Options or → Change to Phone → Highlight file → Options or → Move to Card → Yes • Files once moved to Memory Card cannot be moved back to handset. |
| Opening file properties | MENU or → TV → TV Player → Highlight file → Options or → Details |

Markers

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Saving Markers | During playback, Options or → Set Marker → Marker • Alternatively, press during playback. |
| Playing files with Markers | During playback → See below |
| | Skipping between Markers Options or → Set Marker → Next Marker or Previous Marker • Alternatively, Long Press during playback. |
| | Moving to Specific Markers - |
| Using Marker List | During playback, Options or → Set Marker → Marker List → See below |
| | Starting Playback Select number |
| | Deleting a Marker Highlight number → Options or → Delete |
| | Deleting All Markers Options or → Delete All → Yes |



TV Timer/TV Recording Timer

| | |
|--|--|
| Setting TV Timer via Program Info | While watching TV, tap program name → Highlight program → <i>Options</i> or  → <i>Programming</i> |
| Opening/editing/deleting Timer details | Start Here <i>MENU</i> or  → <i>TV</i> → <i>Reservation List</i> → See below |
| | Opening Entries Select entry |
| | Editing Entries Highlight entry → <i>Options</i> or  → <i>Edit</i> → <i>Edit</i> → <i>Save</i> or  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some entries may not be edited depending on the content. |
| Opening/deleting Timer log | Start Here <i>MENU</i> or  → <i>TV</i> → <i>Reservation List</i> → <i>Result</i> or  → See below |
| | Opening Timer Log Select record |
| | Playing Recorded Programs Highlight record → <i>Play</i> or  |
| Customizing TV Alarm settings | Start Here <i>MENU</i> or  → <i>TV</i> → <i>Settings</i> → <i>TV Alarm</i> → See below |
| | Changing TV Alarm Time <i>Alarm Time</i> → Select time |
| | Disabling Tone/Vibration/Small Light Alarm, Vibration or Light → <i>Off</i> |
| | Changing Duration <i>Duration</i> → Select time |

Ending operations automatically at Timer time

MENU or  → *TV* → *Settings* → *TV Reserve Prior* → *On*

• Some operations may not end automatically.



Watching

? TV won't activate

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Cannot watch TV

- Reception may be poor (**P.8-4**); change location to improve it. (TV signal strength is independent of handset signal strength.)
- Handset may not have been used for a period of time; retrieve Network Information (**P.2-30**).
- TV is disabled upon subscription termination.

? Area setup does not complete correctly

- Perform **Update All** in Channel Update. Area setup may not complete correctly depending on the area or service availability.

Recording

? Ringtone does not sound as set while recording

- When a Chaku-Uta[®] file, etc. is set as ringtone, default ringtone may sound for incoming transmissions while recording.

TV Recording Timer

? *Could not start recording. appeared as recording result*

- Recording failed due to low battery/memory, active function, etc.

? *Recording aborted. appeared as recording result*

- Recording was interrupted due to low memory, Memory Card removal, etc.



| | |
|------------------------------|------------|
| Camera | 9-2 |
| Getting Started | 9-2 |
| Photo Camera | 9-4 |
| Capturing Still Images | 9-4 |
| Video Camera | 9-6 |
| Recording Video | 9-6 |
| Shooting Modes | 9-7 |
| Using Shooting Modes | 9-7 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| Editing Images | 9-10 |
| Printing | 9-14 |
| Printing Images | 9-14 |
| Additional Functions | 9-15 |
| Troubleshooting | 9-19 |

9

Camera & Imaging



Getting Started

Capture still images or record video.

Various Image Sizes

Select small sizes to send captured images/recorded video via S! Mail*; select larger sizes for higher resolutions.

Auto Focus

Measures the distance between subjects and camera to adjust focus.

Multiple Shooting Modes

Apply effect or add frame, capture sequential/panoramic or scan images.

Imaging Functions

Edit captured images or print on a compatible printer.

*May not be delivered as sent depending on image/recording size or recipient device.

Precautions

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with a soft cloth before use.
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's color filter.

Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture/recording, mobile camera shuts down after a period of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

Shutter Click

- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound at fixed volume regardless of handset settings.



Viewfinder Description

Indicators appear at the top of Display. Press Softkeys on the right for basic operations or access full menu via Options at the bottom. Slider is closed in most operation descriptions/screenshots.

-
- Shutter (Photo Camera)
Record/Stop (Video Camera)
 - Zoom In/Out
 - Adjust Image Brightness
 - Toggle Mobile Light Mode
- Tap to show adjustment bar; move slider as needed.
 - Tap to show adjustment bar; move slider as needed.

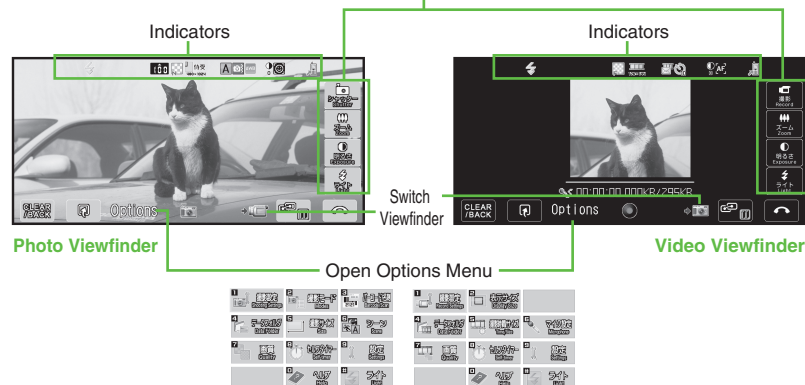


Photo Viewfinder Indicators

| | |
|--|------------------|
| | Mobile Light |
| | Memory |
| | Picture Quality |
| | Picture Size |
| | Continuous Shoot |
| | Scene |
| | Shake Reducing |
| | Self-timer |
| | White Balance |
| | Exposure |
| | Focus |
| | Save to |

Video Viewfinder Indicators

| | |
|--|--------------------------|
| | Mobile Light |
| | Video Quality |
| | Record Size |
| | Memory for image capture |
| | Record Time |
| | Self-timer |
| | Exposure |
| | Focus |
| | Save to |



Capturing Still Images

1 MENU or → Camera

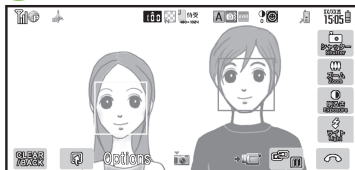


Photo Viewfinder

- Frames appear on detected faces. (Face Auto Focus)
- Alternatively, touch area to lock focus on.

2 Frame image on Display → Shutter or

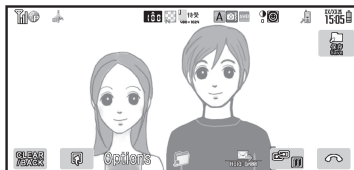


Image Save Window

- Shutter clicks and the captured image appears. (To discard file and start over, press **CLEAR/BACK** or .)

3 Save or

- Image is saved. (Viewfinder returns for another shot.)
- Open saved images via Data Folder.

4 or → Camera shuts down

Face Detection

- Detection may fail depending on face angle, distance from subject or environment.

Sending Captured Images via S! Mail

After , or → Complete message → **Send** or

- May not be delivered as sent depending on image size or recipient device.

Pre-Image Capture Operations

| Operation | Touch Panel | Key |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Zoom In/Out | Zoom → Tap adjustment bar | |
| Exposure | Exposure → Tap adjustment bar | |
| Toggle Mobile Light Mode | Light | |

Advanced

- Opening Help
- Activating Mobile Light
- Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots
- Adjusting focus manually
- Locking focus
- Changing image quality (P.9-15)
- Correcting Face Auto Focus images
- Changing image size
- Changing mode according to lighting or subject (P.9-16)



Enlarging Specific Image Portions

Check captured image details before saving.

May be unavailable depending on image size, etc.

Touch Panel

1 In image save window, Long Touch portion



Partial Enlargement Window

- Touched portion is enlarged; double-tap or spread fingers to enlarge further.
- To return to captured image, tap **CLEAR/BACK**.

Viewing Outside of Enlarged Portion Drag finger within enlarged portion

Handset Keys

1 In image save window,

1 - 9 (Long)

- Press **1** to enlarge further.
- To return to captured image, press **9**.
- Key Assignments:

■ Landscape Orientation

| | | |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 3 Upper left | 6 Upper center | 9 Upper right |
| 2 Left | 5 Center | 8 Right |
| 1 Lower left | 4 Lower center | 7 Lower right |

■ Portrait Orientation

| | | |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1 Upper left | 2 Upper center | 3 Upper right |
| 4 Left | 5 Center | 6 Right |
| 7 Lower left | 8 Lower center | 9 Lower right |

Viewing Outside of Enlarged Portion



Advanced

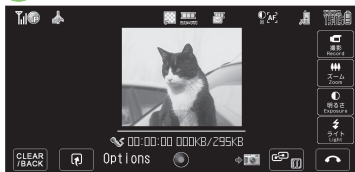
- Accessing files from Viewfinder
- Sending files
- Adjusting brightness
- Activating automatic saving
- Changing save location (P.9-15)
- Setting Center Auto Focus
- Adjusting color balance according to lighting conditions
- Changing shutter click sound (And more on P.9-16)



Recording Video

1 MENU or → Camera

2 or



Video Viewfinder

- Omit 2 if Video Camera is already active.
- For pre-recording operations, see P.9-4 "Pre-Image Capture Operations."

3 Frame image on Display → Record or

- Recording starts after a tone. (To start over, press CLEAR/BACK or .)

4 Stop or



Video Save Menu

- Recording stops with a tone. (To discard file and start over, press CLEAR/BACK or .)

5 Save

- Video is saved. (Viewfinder returns for another shot.)
- Play saved video via Data Folder or Media Player.

6 or → Camera shuts down

Pausing Recording

After , or

- May be unavailable depending on recording size.

Playing Unsaved Video

In , Preview

Sending Recorded Video via S! Mail

In , Send → Save and Send → Complete message → Send or

- May not be delivered as sent depending on recording size or recipient device.

Capturing Images while Recording Video (Still Image Capture)

After , or

- Captured images are saved when saving recorded clip; open them via Data Folder.

Incoming Calls

- If a call arrives before video is saved, recorded clip is temporarily saved. End the call to return.

When Battery Runs Low

- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

Advanced

- Opening Help
- Activating Mobile Light
- Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots (And more on P.9-15)
- Changing recording time/size
- Enlarging Viewfinder size
- Recording video without sound
- Setting video encoding to H.264 (P.9-16)

Using Shooting Modes

May be unavailable depending on selected image/recording size.


Self-timer

1 In Photo/Video Viewfinder, *Options* or  ➔ *Self-timer*

2 Select time



3 Frame image on Display ➔ *Shutter/Record* or 

- After selected time elapses, captured image appears or recording starts.
- To stop recording, press *Stop* or .

Releasing Shutter during Countdown

After , *Shutter/Record* or 

Incoming Calls/Alarm during Countdown

- Countdown stops. (Self-timer remains active.)

Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)

Available Modes:

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| 4 Pictures | Capture four separate images with Index Image |
| 9 Pictures | Capture nine separate images with Index Image |
| Overlapped | Capture five images to create a composite image |

1 In Photo Viewfinder, *Options* or  ➔ *Modes*



Mode Menu

2 *Continuous*

3 Select mode ➔ Select speed

4 Frame image on Display ➔ *Shutter* or 


- After image capture, Index Image or a composite image appears.
- When shooting speed is set to *Manual* (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat **4** for each frame.

5 *Save* or 

6 *All Pictures*

- All captured images are saved.

Saving the Selected Image

After **4**, select image ➔ *Save* or  ➔ *Select Picture*

- Alternatively, drag image left or right to switch between captured images.

Adding Frames (Photo Camera)


1 In mode menu, *Frame*

2 *Preset* ➔ Select frame

3 Frame image on Display ➔ *Shutter* or 



- Captured image appears.

Using Frames in Data Folder

In **2**, *Data Folder* ➔ Select frame ➔ *Assign* or 



Camera Effects (Photo Camera)

- 1 In mode menu, **Effects**
- 2 Select effect ➔ **Apply** or 
- 3 Frame image on Display ➔ **Shutter** or 
 - Captured image appears.

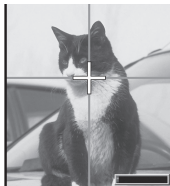
Panorama Picture (Photo Camera)



- 1 In mode menu, **Panorama/Scanner**



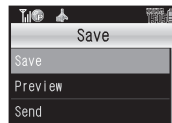
Panorama/Scanner Menu

- 2 **Panorama** ➔ **On**
- 3 Frame image on Display ➔  or 



- Move handset slowly to keep  aligned with either of yellow lines.
- Image is captured automatically when the bar () turns blue.

- 4  or 



Save Menu

- Image is captured and Save menu opens.


- 5 **Save**

- Image is saved.


Checking Unsaved Images

[Save Menu] **Preview**

Sending Captured Images via S! Mail

[Save Menu] **Send** ➔ **Save and Send**➔ **Complete message** ➔ **Send** or 

Advanced

-  • Changing Panorama settings
- Changing Panorama image preview method (P.9-16)

Scanning Images (Photo Camera)

1 In **Panorama/Scanner** menu, **Scanner**

2 Select size ➔ **Frame image on Display** ➔  or 



- Move handset slowly to scan the area to capture. (Refer to indicators on Display.)

3  or 

- Image is captured and Save menu opens.

4 **Save**

- Image is saved.

Handling Captured Images

- Preview or send them via S! Mail in the same way as Panorama Picture images.



Editing Images

Getting Started

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Picture Editor

| | |
|--------------|---|
| Resize | Select from preset sizes or crop image for size |
| Frame | Add Frame to images |
| Paste | Add text/dates to images |
| Retouch | Dress up images with preloaded visual effects |
| Stamp | Add stamps to images |
| Face Arrange | Make smiley, angry or sad faces |
| Correction | Correct images |
| Rotate | Rotate images |
| Scribbling | Scribble or sketch |
| File Format | Convert file format and change file size |

Composite

| | |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| Split Picture | Combine up to four images into one |
| Merge Panorama | Combine two still images into one |

Picture Editor

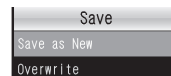
- 1 MENU or ➔ Data Folder
- 2 Pictures ➔ Highlight image
- 3 Options or ➔ Edit
- 4 Picture Editor



Picture Editor Menu

- 5 Select effect ➔ Edit
 - To start over, press **CLEAR/BACK** or .

- 6 When finished, Save or



- 7 Save as New
 - To overwrite, select **Overwrite**. (Omit .)
- 8 Enter name ➔ Done or
 - ➔ Save here

Canceling Effects

After , **undo**

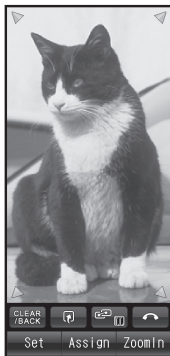
- To restore effect immediately after canceling, select **redo**.



Scribbling

Drag finger on Display to scribble or sketch.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, *scribbling*



- Press *ZoomIn* or to enlarge.

- 2 Touch image and move finger
 - To see portions outside Display, drag arrows at the corners.

- 3 *Assign* or

- Editing is completed.

Changing Line Thickness & Color

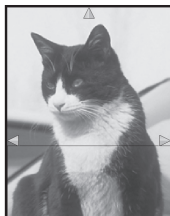
Set or ➔ Select thickness ➔

Select color ➔ *Done* or

Changing Image Size

Resize to Preset Size

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, *resize*
- 2 Select size
- 3 Specify display area



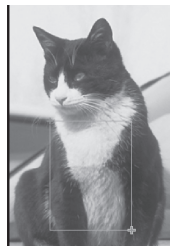
- To zoom in/out, press *Resize* or
- Omit if there is no rectangle on the image.

- 4 *Assign* or

- Editing is completed.

Cropping Images

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, *resize*
- 2 *Cut*
- 3 Move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop ➔ *Switch* or



- 4 Move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop ➔ *Assign* or
- 5 Specify display area
 - To zoom in/out, press *Resize* or
 - then adjust size.
- 6 *Assign* or
 - Editing is completed.

Advanced

- Using additional editing options (P.9-17)



Face Arrange

1 In Picture Editor menu, *arrange*



Face Arrange Menu

2 Select type

3 *Assign or*

- Editing is completed.

Important Face Arrange Usage Note

- When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

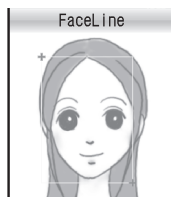
Adjusting Positions

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image.

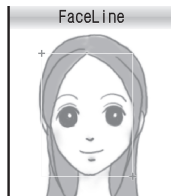
1 In Face Arrange menu, *Parts* or \Rightarrow *Modify or*

- A rectangle with + in the upper left corner.

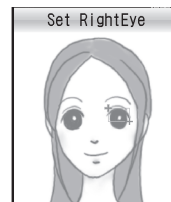
2 Move + to top left of face



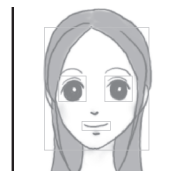
3 *Switch or*



4 Move + to bottom right of face \Rightarrow *Assign or*



- Face line is set. Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way.



5 *Assign or* \Rightarrow *Yes* \Rightarrow *Save here*

- Image is saved as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted. Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.



Composite

Panorama Images

Panorama Image Effects:

| | |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| Near View | Best suited for close-up shots |
| Document | Use for images with text |
| Standard | Apply to other images |

- 1 **MENU** or ➔ **Data Folder**
- 2 **Pictures** ➔ **Highlight image**
- 3 **Options** or ➔ **Edit**
- 4 **Composite**

5 **panorama**

- File highlighted in 2 is set as left image.

- 6 **<Empty>** ➔ **Select image**
- 7 **EFFECT** ➔ **Select effect**
 - Editing is completed.

- 8 **When finished, Save** or
 - Merged image appears.

- 9 **OK** or
- 10 **Enter name** ➔ **Done** or
 - ➔ **Save here**

Changing Images

After 2, select image ➔ **Change** or ➔ **Select image**

Switching Image Positions

After 3, **Flip** or

Advanced

- Combining reduced images (P.9-18)



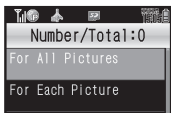
Printing Images

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

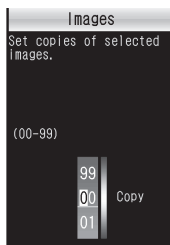
DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.

- 1 **MENU** or ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Highlight Connectivity** tab
- 2 **Memory Card** ➔ **DPOF**
- 3 **Number of Copies**



- 4 **For Each Picture** ➔ **Select folder**

- 5 **Highlight image** ➔ **Count** or



- 6 **Enter a number of copies to print** ➔ **Accept** or
 - For more settings, repeat 5 - 6.

- 7 **Save** or

Applying a Number to All Images

In 5, **For All Pictures** ➔ Enter a number of copies to print ➔ **Accept** or

Canceling Specified Number

In 5, enter **00** ➔ **Accept** or ➔ **Save** or

Viewing Current Print Settings

In 3, **Check Settings**

Using Printers

Connect handset to a Bluetooth®-compatible printer and print images in Pictures folder.

- Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.
- Some images may not be sent depending on file type and size.

- 1 **MENU** or ➔ **Data Folder** ➔ **Pictures**

- 2 **Highlight image** ➔ **Options** or ➔ **Print**

- 3 **Via Bluetooth** ➔ **Select printer**

- 4 **Yes**
 - To cancel, press **Cancel** or .

When Authorization Code is Required

Enter Authorization Code ➔ **OK** or

Advanced

Changing print settings (P.9-18)

| Photo Camera & Video Camera | |
|--|---|
| Opening Help | In Photo/Video Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Help</i> |
| Activating Mobile Light | In Photo/Video Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Light</i> ➔ <i>On</i> or <i>Auto</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Low Light</i> is also available for still image capture. • Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself. |
| Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots | In Photo/Video Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Shooting Settings</i> or <i>Record Settings</i> ➔ <i>Focus</i> ➔ <i>Macro</i> |
| Adjusting focus manually | In Photo/Video Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Shooting Settings</i> or <i>Record Settings</i> ➔ <i>Focus</i> ➔ <i>Manual</i> ➔ Tap adjustment bar or ➔ <i>OK</i> or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To readjust focus, press or . |
| Locking focus | Start Here In Photo/Video Viewfinder ➔ See below |
| | Touch Panel Tap area you want to lock focus on |
| Locking focus | Handset Keys or |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Frame subject in center of Display first. • To start over, press or again. |
| Changing image quality | In Photo/Video Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Quality</i> ➔ Select quality |

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Accessing files from Viewfinder | Start Here In Photo/Video Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ See below |
| | Still Images Highlight file ➔ <i>View</i> or |
| Sending files | Video Highlight file ➔ <i>Play</i> or |
| | Panorama/Scanned Images After image capture (Save menu opens), <i>Send</i> ➔ Select option |
| Adjusting brightness | Other Still Images After image capture (image appears), <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Send</i> ➔ Select option |
| | Video After recording (Save menu opens), <i>Send</i> ➔ Select option |
| Adjusting automatic saving | In Photo/Video Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Auto Save</i> ➔ <i>On</i> |
| Changing save location | In Photo/Video Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Save to</i> ➔ Select location |



Photo Camera

| | |
|--|--|
| Correcting Face Auto Focus images | [Start Here] After image capture (image appears), <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Correlate to Face</i> ➔ See below |
| | Adjusting Face/Background Brightness <i>Against sun</i> ➔ <i>Apply</i> or |
| | Blurring Out-of-Focus Portions <i>Portrait</i> ➔ <i>Apply</i> or |
| Changing image size | In Photo Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Size</i> ➔ Select size |
| Changing mode according to lighting or subject | In Photo Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Scene</i> ➔ Select mode |
| Setting Center Auto Focus | In Photo Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Shooting Settings</i> ➔ <i>Focus</i> ➔ <i>Center AF</i> |
| Adjusting color balance according to lighting conditions | In Photo Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Shooting Settings</i> ➔ <i>White Balance</i> ➔ Select mode |
| Changing shutter click sound | In Photo Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Shutter Sound</i> ➔ Select pattern • Shutter click sounds for Continuous Shoot, Panorama Picture and Scanner are fixed. |
| Hiding indicators | In Photo Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Indicators</i> ➔ <i>Hide</i> |
| Releasing shutter remotely with a Bluetooth® watch | In Photo Viewfinder, press the corresponding button on Bluetooth® watch • Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch and set <i>Set Remote Shutter</i> to <i>On</i> beforehand. For details, see the Bluetooth® watch guide. |

| | |
|---|--|
| Disabling remote shutter control via Bluetooth® watches | In Photo Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Remote Shutter</i> ➔ <i>Off</i> • Available when a Bluetooth® watch is registered. |
| Changing Panorama settings | [Start Here] In Photo Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Panorama Set.</i> ➔ See below <i>Hiding Guides</i> <i>Assisting Lines</i> ➔ <i>Off</i> <i>Locking Display Brightness during Image Capture AE-Lock</i> ➔ <i>Enable</i> |
| Changing Panorama image preview method | In Panorama preview, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Manual Scroll</i> or <i>Full Image</i> |
| Disabling shake reduction | In Photo Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Modes</i> ➔ <i>Shake Reducing</i> ➔ <i>Off</i> |









Video Camera

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Changing recording time/size | In Video Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Time/Size</i> ➔ <i>For Message</i> or <i>Extended</i> ➔ Select size |
| Enlarging Viewfinder size | In Video Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Display Size</i> ➔ <i>Enlarge</i> |
| Recording video without sound | In Video Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Microphone</i> ➔ <i>Off</i> |
| Setting video encoding to H.264 | In Video Viewfinder, <i>Options</i> or ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Encode</i> ➔ <i>H.264</i> |





Editing Images

Picture Editor

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Using additional editing options | <p>[Start Here] MENU or  ⇒ Data Folder ⇒ Pictures ⇒ Highlight image ⇒ Options or  ⇒ Edit ⇒ Picture Editor ⇒ See below</p> |
| | <p>Applying Visual Effects <i>retouch</i> ⇒ Select effect ⇒ Assign or </p> |
| | <p>Changing Text/Outline Color <i>paste</i> ⇒ Color or  ⇒ Select text color ⇒ Select outline color ⇒ Done or </p> |
| | <p>Adding Text <i>paste</i> ⇒ Free Text ⇒ Enter text ⇒ Done or  ⇒ Move text ⇒ Assign or </p> |
| | <p>Adding Dates <i>paste</i> ⇒ Date ⇒ Move text ⇒ Assign or </p> |

Using additional editing options

[Start Here] **MENU** or  ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ **Pictures**
 ⇒ **Highlight image** ⇒ **Options** or  ⇒ **Edit**
 ⇒ **Picture Editor** ⇒ See below

Adding Frames

frame ⇒ **Select frame** ⇒ **Assign** or 

Adding Stamps

stamp ⇒ **Select stamp** ⇒ **Move stamp** ⇒
Assign or 

Correcting Image Parameters


correct ⇒ **Select type** ⇒ **Assign** or 

Rotating Images

rotate ⇒ **Select type** ⇒ **Assign** or 


Converting File Format

format ⇒ **File Format** ⇒ **Select format**

- Changing file format may affect file size/image quality.
- To return to Picture Editor menu, press **CLEAR/BACK** or .

Changing File Size

format ⇒ **File Size** ⇒ **Select size**

- Changing file size may affect image quality.
- To return to Picture Editor menu, press **CLEAR/BACK** or .



■ Composite

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Combining reduced images | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ● ➔ Data Folder ➔ Pictures ➔ Highlight image ➔ Options or ☒/ ➔ Edit ➔ Composite ➔ See below</p> |
| | <p>Creating Split Picture <i>split 480x1024</i> or <i>split 240x320</i> ➔ <Empty> ➔ Select file ➔ When finished, Save or ☒/ ➔ Enter name ➔ Done or ● ➔ Save here • Repeat from selecting <Empty> as needed.</p> |
| | <p>Previewing Split Picture While creating Split Picture, Options or ☒/ ➔ View Composite</p> |
| | <p>Changing Images While creating Split Picture, select image ➔ Change or ☒/ ➔ Select another</p> |
| | <p>Deleting Images While creating Split Picture, highlight image ➔ Options or ☒/ ➔ Remove ➔ Yes</p> |

DPOF

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Changing print settings | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ● ➔ Settings ➔ Highlight Connectivity tab ➔ Memory Card ➔ DPOF ➔ See below</p> |
| | <p>Adding Dates to Prints Settings ➔ Add Date ➔ On</p> |
| | <p>Creating an Index Print Settings ➔ Index Print ➔ On</p> |
| | <p>Resetting Reset Settings ➔ Yes</p> |



Mobile Camera



Mobile camera won't activate

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

Editing Images



Cannot save/send edited images

- Edited images may be too large to save or send via mail.

DPOF



Cannot specify print settings properly

- If Memory Card image files have been deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, reset print settings and start over with settings.



| | |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| Media Player | 10-2 |
| Media Basics | 10-2 |
| Music | 10-5 |
| Playing Music..... | 10-5 |
| Video | 10-6 |
| Playing Video..... | 10-6 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| Playlists | 10-7 |
| Using Playlists | 10-7 |
| Additional Functions | 10-8 |
| Troubleshooting | 10-11 |

10

Media Player



Media Basics

Use Media Player to play music/video on 931SH.

- Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Media Player directly.
- Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.

Music File Support

My Music

(Handset/Memory Card)

Downloads/Transferred Files

SD AUDIO

(Memory Card)

Transferred SD-Audio Files

WMA

(Memory Card)

Transferred WMA Files

Video File Support

My Videos

(Handset/Memory Card)

Downloads/Recorded Files

When using a Memory Card with SD-Video files recorded on other devices, open them from **SD VIDEO**.

Playback Precautions

- Media Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Playback stops for incoming calls.
- When battery is low, Media Player will not play. If battery runs low during playback, Media Player shuts off.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
- Handset plays media while it downloads (streaming); downloaded media cannot be saved. Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused.

Compatibility

- Files transferred from PCs cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.

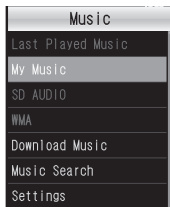


Downloading Music

Download music from the Internet.
Read information (price, expiry date, etc.)
on the source site.

1 MENU or  **Media Player**

2 Music



3 Download Music

- Follow the links to download media.

Download via Music Search (Japanese)

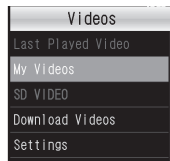
In , **Music Search**

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Downloading Video

1 MENU or  **Media Player**

2 Videos



3 Download Videos

- Follow the links to download media.



Saving Music Files from PCs

- Use software to convert music file format.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.
- SoftBank does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- USB Cable may be purchased separately.

Handling Transferred Files

- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.
- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained files.

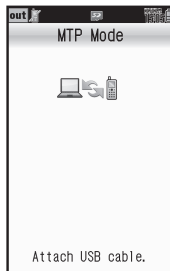
Using MTP Mode

Follow these steps to save WMA files via S! Music Connect (Japanese):

- For more about S! Music Connect, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (P.19-18).
- Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.

1 **MENU** or  **Media Player**

2 **MTP Mode** **Yes**



3 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**

- Copy music from PC. Refer to the S! Music Connect help menu for operational instructions.

4 **Cancel** or  **Yes**

- Disconnect USB Cable.

Saving AAC Files

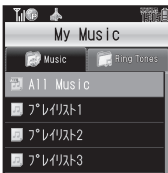
Convert PC music files to 931SH-compatible format (P.19-17), then save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.12-5) via Mass Storage. Install USB Cable driver beforehand.



Playing Music

1 MENU or ➔ **Media Player**
➔ **Music**

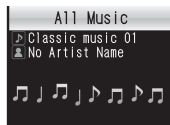
2 **My Music** ➔ **Highlight Music** or **Ring Tones** tab



3 **All Music**



4 **Select file**



Music Playback Window

- Album art appears for compatible files.

Stopping Playback

While paused, **CLEAR/BACK** or

Using Other Functions while Playing Music

After , , or

- To stop playback, follow these steps in Standby:

or ➔ **Yes**

Playing SD AUDIO or WMA Files

In , **SD AUDIO** or **WMA** ➔ From

Searching Music Files

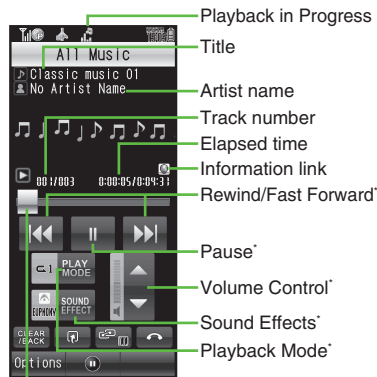
After , **Options** or ➔ **Search**

➔ Enter search text ➔ **Done** or

Lyric Display-Compatible Files

- Press **Lyrics** or to display lyrics.

Music Playback Window Description



Playback Slider*

*Tap for operation.

Opening Help

[Music Playback Window] **Options** or

➔ **Help**

10

Media Player

Advanced

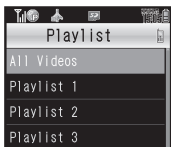
- Resuming from stopped point
- Switching audio output to wireless device
- Accessing linked information
- Playing repeatedly or randomly
- Changing Sound Effects (P.10-8)



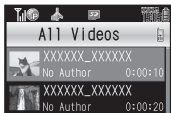
Playing Video

1 MENU or → **Media Player**
→ **Videos**

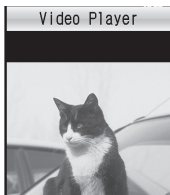
2 **My Videos** → **Phone Memory or Memory Card**



3 **All Videos**



4 **Select file**



Video Playback Window

- Tap video image to toggle playback size.

5 **CLEAR/BACK** or → **Playback stops**

Playing SD VIDEO Files

In , **SD VIDEO** → 4

Searching Video Files

After , **Options** or → **Search**

→ Enter search text → **Done** or

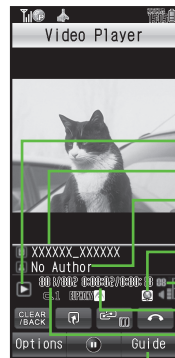
At Alarm Time

- Playback stops.

Video Recorded on Other Devices

- Video image may appear rotated.

Video Playback Window Description



- Status
- Title
- Author Name
- Information Link
- Volume
- Elapsed Time
- Clip Number

Toggle Panel On/Off

Opening Help

[Video Playback Window] **Options** or

→ **Help**

Advanced

- Resuming from stopped point
- Switching audio output to wireless device
- Accessing linked information
- Playing repeatedly or randomly
- Specifying start point
- Changing Sound Effects
- Changing playback size
- Setting Backlight status
- Hiding linked information (P.10-8)



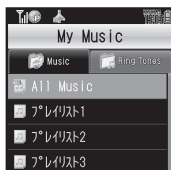
Using Playlists

Playlists store playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists, or organize files by artist/genre. Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Music or All Videos.

Adding to Playlist

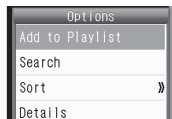
Follow these steps to add a music file to **プレイリスト1**:

- 1 MENU** or **ⓘ** ➔ **Media Player**
➔ **Music**
- 2 My Music**



Playlists Window

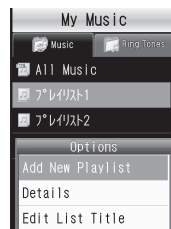
- 3 All Music** ➔ **Highlight file** ➔ **Options** or **☑**



- 4 Add to Playlist** ➔ **プレイリスト1**

Renaming Playlists

- 1 In Playlists window,** highlight Playlist ➔ **Options** or **☑**



- 2 Edit List Title** ➔ **Enter name**
➔ **Done** or **ⓘ**







Advanced

- ☞ Organizing Playlists
- ☞ Sorting files
- ☞ Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files
- ☞ Deleting All WMA files
- ☞ Downloading Contents Keys
- ☞ Opening properties (P.10-9 - 10-10)
- ☞ Organizing Playlists
- ☞ Opening properties
- ☞ Deleting SD VIDEO files (P.10-10)





Media Playback








Music & Video

| | |
|---|---|
| Resuming from stopped point | MENU or  → <i>Media Player</i> → <i>Music or Videos</i> → <i>Last Played Music</i> or <i>Last Played Video</i> |
| Switching audio output to wireless device | MENU or  → <i>Media Player</i> → <i>Settings</i> →  <i>Sound Output</i> → <i>Bluetooth Device</i> |
| Accessing linked information | During playback, <i>Options</i> or  → <i>Access WEB Link</i> → <i>Yes</i> |

Music

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Playing repeatedly or randomly | <small>[Start Here]</small> During playback, <i>Options</i> or  → <i>Playback Mode</i> → See below |
| | <i>Repeat One File</i> <i>Repeat</i> |
| | <i>Repeat All Files</i> <i>Repeat All</i> |
| | <i>Play Randomly</i> <i>Random</i> |
| Changing Sound Effects | <i>Repeat Randomly</i> <i>Random Repeat</i> |
| | During playback, <i>Options</i> or  → <i>Sound Effects</i> → Select effect |

Video

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Playing repeatedly or randomly | <small>[Start Here]</small> During playback, <i>Options</i> or  → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Playback Mode</i> → See below |
| | <i>Repeat One File</i> <i>Repeat</i> |
| | <i>Repeat All Files</i> <i>Repeat All</i> |
| Specifying start point | <i>Play Randomly</i> <i>Random</i> |
| | During playback, <i>Options</i> or  → <i>Time Search</i> → Enter time → <i>Accept</i> or  |
| Changing Sound Effects | During playback, <i>Options</i> or  → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Sound Effects</i> → Select effect |
| Changing playback size | During playback, <i>Options</i> or  → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Display Size</i> → Select size |
| Setting Backlight status | During playback, <i>Options</i> or  → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Backlight</i> → Select option • Selecting <i>Normal Settings</i> applies Display Backlight setting. |
| Hiding linked information | During playback, <i>Options</i> or  → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Web Link Setting</i> → <i>Off</i> |





Managing Music Files






| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Organizing Playlists | <p>Start Here MENU or → Media Player → Music → My Music → Highlight tab → See below</p> <p>Adding New Playlists Options or → Add New Playlist → Enter name → Done or </p> |
| | <p>Deleting Playlists Highlight Playlist → Options or → Delete Playlist → Yes</p> |
| | <p>Deleting Playlist Files Select Playlist → Highlight file → Options or → Delete → Yes</p> |
| | <p>Changing File Order Select Playlist → Highlight file → Options or → Change Order → Move file</p> |
| Sorting files | <p>MENU or → Media Player → Music → My Music → Highlight tab → All Music → Options or → Sort → Select option</p> |





| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files | <p>Start Here MENU or → Media Player → Music → SD AUDIO → See below</p> <p>Deleting Single Files All Music → Highlight file → Options or → Delete Track → Yes • Source files will be deleted.</p> |
| | <p>Deleting All Files Highlight All Music → Options or → Del. All Tracks → Yes → Yes • Source files will be deleted.</p> |
| | <p>Editing Title/Artist All Music → Highlight file → Options or → Edit → Select item → Enter title or name → Done or </p> |
| Deleting All WMA files | <p>MENU or → Media Player → Settings → Delete All WMA → Enter Handset Code → OK or → Yes • Source files will be deleted.</p> |
| Downloading Contents Keys | <p>MENU or → Media Player → Music → My Music → Highlight tab → Select Playlist → Select file (with) → Yes • Follow onscreen instructions.</p> |



| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Opening properties | [Start Here] MENU or ● ➔ <i>Media Player</i> ➔ <i>Music</i> ➔ See below |
| | SD AUDIO Files <i>SD AUDIO</i> ➔ <i>All Music</i> ➔ Highlight file ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Details</i> |
| | Other Files <i>My Music</i> ➔ Highlight tab ➔ Select Playlist ➔ Highlight file ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Details</i> |

Managing Video Files

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Organizing Playlists | [Start Here] MENU or ● ➔ <i>Media Player</i> ➔ <i>Videos</i> ➔ <i>My Videos</i> ➔ <i>Phone Memory</i> or <i>Memory</i> <i>Card</i> ➔ See below |
| | Adding New Playlists <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Add New Playlist</i> ➔ Enter name ➔ <i>Done</i> or ● |
| | Deleting Playlists Highlight Playlist ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Delete</i> <i>Playlist</i> ➔ Yes |
| | Deleting Playlist Files Select Playlist ➔ Highlight file ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔ Yes |
| Sorting files | Changing File Order Select Playlist ➔ Highlight file ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Change Order</i> ➔ Move file |
| | <i>MENU</i> or ● ➔ <i>Media Player</i> ➔ <i>Videos</i> ➔ <i>My</i> <i>Videos</i> ➔ <i>Phone Memory</i> or <i>Memory Card</i> ➔ <i>All Videos</i> ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Sort</i> ➔ Select option |

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Downloading Contents Keys | <i>MENU</i> or ● ➔ <i>Media Player</i> ➔ <i>Videos</i> ➔ <i>My</i> <i>Videos</i> ➔ <i>Phone Memory</i> or <i>Memory Card</i> ➔ <i>All Videos</i> ➔ Select file (with ) ➔ Yes ● Follow onscreen instructions. |
| Opening properties | [Start Here] MENU or ● ➔ <i>Media Player</i> ➔ <i>Videos</i> ➔ See below |
| | SD VIDEO Files <i>SD VIDEO</i> ➔ Highlight file ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Details</i> |
| | Other Files <i>My Videos</i> ➔ <i>Phone Memory</i> or <i>Memory Card</i> ➔ Select Playlist ➔ Highlight file ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Details</i> |
| Deleting SD VIDEO files | <i>MENU</i> or ● ➔ <i>Media Player</i> ➔ <i>Videos</i> ➔ <i>SD</i> <i>VIDEO</i> ➔ Highlight file ➔ <i>Options</i> or  ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔ Yes ● Source files will be deleted. |



Music

? How do I delete files in All Music?

- Delete All Music files via Data Folder (Music or Ring Songs-Tones).

? WMA files do not appear

- Did you use 931SH to transfer the files? Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.
- Copy protection information may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and re-transfer the files.
- Files transferred via Mass Storage appear when moved to corresponding Memory Card folder. (Transfer copy protected files via MTP Mode.)

? Cannot transfer WMA files

- WMA files may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

? Cannot play WMA files

- Playback rights may have expired (license not found message appears); re-transfer the files. If files still cannot be played, they may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

Video

? How do I delete files in All Videos?

- Delete All Videos files via Data Folder (Videos).

? Cannot play video files

- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.



S! Appli 11-2
 Using S! Applications 11-2
Additional Functions 11-3
Troubleshooting 11-5

11

S! Applications



Using S! Applications

Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download and use 931SH-compatible S! Applications, including games. Refer to the S! Application's help menu or the source Internet site, etc. for operational instructions.

Remote Control

- Use **Familink Remote** S! Application (Japanese) to control a TV, VCR, etc. via infrared.

1 MENU or ● → S! Appli

2 S! Appli Library



S! Appli Library

3 Select application

Network S! Applications

- A message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. Follow onscreen instructions.

Incoming Calls

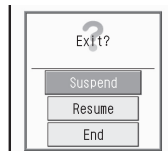
- Incoming calls automatically pause S! Application.

Opening S! Appli Notification History

In ●, *Notification History*

Exiting S! Applications

1



2 End

Pausing S! Applications

In ●, *Suspend*

Resuming S! Applications





MENU or ● → *Resume*








- Select **Cancel** to open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused.
- Select **End** to end the S! Application.

Advanced

- Downloading S! Applications
- Adjusting S! Application sound volume
- Canceling surround effect
- Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions
- Setting S! Application to activate in Standby
- Setting Permissions
- Opening properties (P.11-3)
- Moving S! Applications to Memory Card
- Changing S! Application settings
- Deleting S! Applications
- Restoring default S! Application settings
- Restoring default S! Appli Library
- Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 931SH
- Opening Java™ license information (P.11-4)



| S! Applications | |
|---|---|
| Downloading S! Applications | MENU or  → S! Appli → S! Appli Library → Download <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions. |
| Adjusting S! Application sound volume | MENU or  → S! Appli → Settings → Application Volume → Adjust level |
| Canceling surround effect | MENU or  → S! Appli → Settings → Surround → Off |
| Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions | <small>(Start Here)</small> MENU or  → S! Appli → Settings → Calls & Alarms → See below |
| | Showing Calls Select item → Show Call Notice |
| | Pausing S! Application for Incoming Mail Incoming Message → Message Priority |
| | Showing Alarm Notice Alarm → Alarm Notice |
| | Showing Incoming S! Appli Notification Notification → Start Notice |

| | |
|---|---|
| Setting S! Application to activate in Standby | <small>(Start Here)</small> MENU or  → S! Appli → See below |
| | Activating Screensaver Settings → Screensaver → Switch On/Off → On Setting Screensaver S! Appli Library → Highlight application → Options or  → As Screensaver <ul style="list-style-type: none"> As Screensaver appears for compatible S! Applications. Screensaver may not start or operate correctly when an external device (Headphones, etc.) is connected to handset. |
| | Changing Screensaver Activation Time Settings → Screensaver → Activation Time → Enter time → Accept or  |
| Setting Permissions | Disabling Automatic Screensaver Restart Settings → Screensaver → Stop Auto Start → On |
| | <small>(Start Here)</small> MENU or  → S! Appli → S! Appli Library → Highlight application → Options or  → Permission → See below |
| Opening properties | Customizing Permissions for S! Appli Operations Select item → Select option |
| | Resetting Permission Settings Reset Settings → Yes |
| | MENU or  → S! Appli → S! Appli Library → Highlight application → Options or  → Details |



| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Moving S! Applications to Memory Card | <p><i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>S! Appli</i> → <i>S! Appli Library</i> → Highlight application → <i>Multi Select</i> or ▽ → <i>Check</i> or ● → <i>Options</i> or ☐ → <i>Move to Card</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When an older version of the S! Application is saved, select Yes or No. Repeat application selection step as needed before pressing <i>Options</i> or ☐. Some S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card. |
| Changing S! Application settings | <p>Start Here <i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>S! Appli</i> → <i>Settings</i> → See below</p> <p>Activating Notification Setting <i>Notification Setting</i> → <i>On</i></p> <p>Setting Backlight Status <i>Backlight</i> → <i>Switch On/Off</i> → Select option</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Selecting <i>Normal Settings</i> applies Display Backlight setting. <p>Disabling Backlight Flashing <i>Backlight</i> → <i>Blink</i> → <i>Off</i></p> <p>Disabling Vibration <i>Vibration</i> → <i>Off</i></p> |
| Deleting S! Applications | <p><i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>S! Appli</i> → <i>S! Appli Library</i> → Highlight application → <i>Options</i> or ☐ → <i>Delete</i> → Yes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Handset Code may be required. Cancel Screensaver to delete Screensaver S! Application. |

| | |
|--|---|
| Restoring default S! Application settings | <p><i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>S! Appli</i> → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Set to Default</i> → Enter Handset Code → <i>OK</i> or ● → Yes</p> |
| Restoring default S! Appli Library | <p><i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>S! Appli</i> → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Memory All Clear</i> → Enter Handset Code → <i>OK</i> or ● → Yes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.) Memory All Clear deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications; Near Chat access restriction will be canceled. |
| Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 931SH | <p><i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>S! Appli</i> → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Synchronization</i> → Yes</p> |
| Opening Java™ license information | <p><i>MENU</i> or ● → <i>S! Appli</i> → <i>Information</i></p> |



S! Applications



Cannot move S! Applications to Memory Card

- The S! Application may already be saved or Memory Card memory may be low.



S! Applications do not pause for incoming transmissions despite *Calls & Alarms* settings

- Regardless of setting, a message appears for Screensaver S! Applications.



| | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| Data Folder | 12-2 |
| Opening Files | 12-3 |
| Managing Files & Folders | 12-4 |
| Memory Card | 12-5 |
| Memory Card Structure & Contents | 12-5 |
| Using Memory Card..... | 12-6 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| Backup | 12-9 |
| Backup & Restore | 12-9 |
| Additional Functions | 12-11 |
| Troubleshooting | 12-14 |

12

Data Folder & Memory Card



Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

■ Preset Folders

| | Contents |
|--------------------|--|
| Pictures* | Still images |
| DCIM | Large still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to SD(DCIM)) |
| Ring Songs-Tones* | Downloaded melodies and other sound files |
| S! Appli* | S! Applications |
| Widget* | Widgets |
| Music* | Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files |
| Videos* | Video images |
| Lifestyle-Appli* | Lifestyle-Appli required to use Osaifu-Keitai® |
| Books* | Downloaded e-Books, etc. |
| Customized Screen* | Downloaded Customized Screen files |
| Status Templates | Combinations of Status Icon and Status Label for S! Friend's Status |
| Decoration Call | Decoration Call files created on handset or obtained via mail |
| Flash® | Downloaded Flash® (animation) files |
| Other Documents | Other files (Dictionary files, etc.) |

*Contains corresponding Yahoo! Keitai menu shortcut.

Memory Status

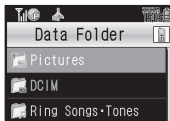
- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.



MENU or **●** ➔ **Data Folder** ➔ **Memory Status** ➔ **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card**



Opening Files

1 MENU or → Data Folder



- Unselectable files/folders appear in gray.
- To show/hide sub folders, highlight a folder and press  or .

2 Select folder


To open a sub folder, highlight it and press **Open** or .




File List

3 Select file



- The content plays or appears.
- To return to file list, press **CLEAR/BACK** or .

S! Mail Attachments




After , highlight file → **Options** or  → **Send** → **As Message**

- When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

Copy Protected Files (or)

- Some functions may be unavailable.

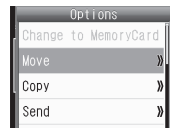
Handling Open Images

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Open Next/ Previous Images | Next/Prev. or  |
| Zoom In/Out | Options or  → Operation → Zoom In or Zoom Out |
| Rotate | Options or  → Operation → Rotate |

Slide Show

Available for Pictures or DCIM folder.

1 In file list, highlight file → **Options** or



File Options Menu



2 Slide Show

- Slide Show starts.
- Tap Display to access Softkeys (**Set**, **Stop**, etc.).

3 → Slide Show stops

Changing Interval

In ,  → **Speed** → **Select speed**

- When Speed is set to **Manual**, press /#.3.5 or * to advance or reverse frame.

Advanced

-   Switching file list view  Changing image quality  Changing Slide Show settings (And more on P.12-11)




Managing Files & Folders

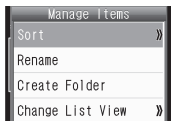
Adding Folders

May be unavailable for some folders.

1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Data Folder**
➔ **Select folder**

2 **Options** or 
If **Download** is highlighted or folder is empty, skip ahead to **4**.



3 **Manage Items**



Manage Items Menu

4 **Create Folder** ➔ **Enter name**
➔ **Done** or 

Renaming Folders

After **1**, highlight folder ➔ **Options**
or  ➔ **Manage Items** ➔ **Rename**
➔ **Enter name** ➔ **Done** or 

- Assign different names to folders within a layer.

Moving Files

Some files may not be moved.


1 **In file list, highlight file** ➔ **Options** or 

2 **Move** ➔ **Phone** or **Memory Card**





3 **Select folder**



4 **Move here**

Copying Files

[File List] Highlight file ➔ **Options** or  ➔ **Copy** ➔ **Phone** or **Memory Card** ➔ **Select folder** ➔ **Copy here**

Selecting Multiple Files

1 **In file list, Multi Select** or  ➔ **Select file** ( ➔  ➔ )

- Repeat **1** as needed. (To uncheck, highlight a file with  and press **Uncheck** or .)

Hiding Folders



Restrict access to created folders.

Only handset folders can be hidden.

1 **In file list, highlight folder** ➔ **Options** or 

2 **Set Secret** ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or 

Accessing Secret Folders

[File List] **Options** or  ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or 

Advanced

-  ● Opening file properties ● Renaming files ● Sorting files ● Deleting files & folders ● Canceling Secret ● Handling SVG files with handset keys (P.12-12)

Memory Card Structure & Contents

| Memory Card Structure | | Contents (Location when Viewed on Handset) | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|--|
| DCIM | XXXSHARP | | Still images in DCIM | |
| PRIVATE | MYFOLDER | Local Contents | SD Local Contents | |
| | | Mail | Messaging folder backups (Received Msg., Sent Messages and Drafts) | |
| | | My Items | Book | e-Book files in Data Folder (Books) |
| | | | Bookmarks | Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks |
| | | | Character | PNG files in Data Folder (Character) |
| | | | CSI | Decoration Call files in Data Folder (Decoration Call) |
| | | | Custom Screens | Customized Screen files in Data Folder (Customized Screen) |
| | | | Flash(R) | Flash® Wallpaper files in Data Folder (Flash®) |
| | | | Flash(R) Ringtones | Flash® ringtones in Data Folder (Flash® Ringtones) |
| | | | Games and More | S! Applications |
| | | | Hot Status Template | Template files in Data Folder (Status Templates) |
| | | | Mail Art | Files in Data Folder (Mail Art) |
| | | | Message Templates | Graphic Mail templates in Templates folder |
| | | | Music | Music files in Data Folder (Music) |
| | | | Other Documents | Other files in Data Folder (Other Documents) |
| | | | Pictograms | GIF files in Data Folder (My Pictograms) |
| | | | Pictures | Still images in Data Folder (Pictures) |
| | | | Sounds & Ringtones | Melodies and other sound files in Data Folder (Ring Songs-Tones) |
| | | | Videos | Video files in Data Folder (Videos) |
| | | Virtual Space | S! Town files | |
| | | Widget | Widget files in Data Folder (Widget) | |
| | | WMAudio | WMA files for Media Player (WMA) | |
| | | SH_Folder | Application management files | |
| Utility | Backup files (Phone Book), etc. | | | |
| SHARP | MOBILE | Backup files (User Dictionary), etc. | | |
| SD_AUDIO | | SD-Audio files for Media Player (SD AUDIO) | | |



Using Memory Card

Use microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card (hereafter "Memory Card") to save and organize files for use on 931SH. Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see **P.19-18** "microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility."

Precautions

- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset.
- Keep Memory Cards out of infant's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.
- Do not touch terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.

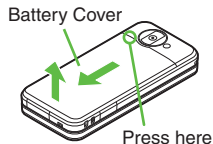
Important Memory Card Usage Notes

- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed.
- Be careful not to erase or overwrite files accidentally.

Inserting

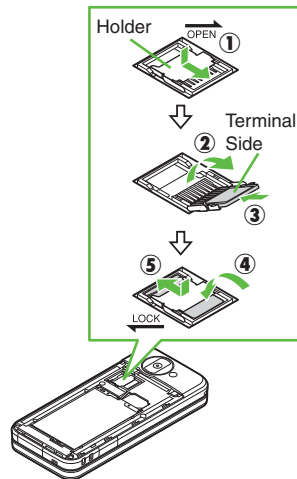
Turn handset power off first.

1 Remove cover



- Press and slide as shown.

2 Slide holder as shown in ① (toward OPEN▶) and lift it as shown in ②



Advanced

- Using HTML files on Memory Card (**P.12-12**)

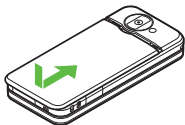


3 Insert card (terminals down) into holder as shown in 3

- At time of purchase, a plastic dummy card is inserted into holder to protect contact pins. Remove the dummy when inserting Memory Card.
- Do not insert other objects into Memory Card holder.

4 Replace holder and slide as shown in 5 (◀LOCK)

5 Close cover



- Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.

If Appears after Power On

- Memory Card may not be inserted properly; reinsert the card.

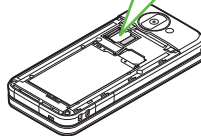
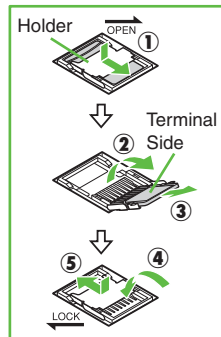
Removing

Turn handset power off first. (Battery does not need to be removed.)

1 Remove cover then lift holder

2 Slide out card gently as shown in 3

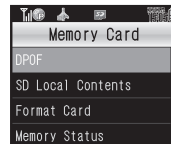
3 Replace holder then close cover



Format Card

When using a new Memory Card for the first time, format it on the handset before trying to save files, etc. Format Card deletes all Memory Card files, even those created on other devices.

1 MENU or → Settings → Highlight Connectivity tab → Memory Card



2 Format Card → Yes

- Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until format is complete.



- 3 Enter Handset Code → *OK*
or ●



- 4 **Yes**
• To cancel, select *No*.

Precaution

- Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting; may cause damage.

Opening Memory Card Files

- 1 *MENU* or ● → *Data Folder*
- 2 *Options* or ✉ → *Change to MemoryCard*
 - Memory Card Data Folder opens.
- 3 **Select folder**
- 4 **Select file**



Backup & Restore

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset as needed.

The following folders/entries can be transferred at once:

| | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Phone Book* | Drafts* |
| Calendar* | Templates |
| Tasks* | Contents Keys |
| Bookmarks* | Data Folder |
| Notepad* | S! Town |
| Received Msg.* | Mail Groups |
| Sent Messages* | User Dictionary |

*Selectable simultaneously via **Check Selection** in Options menu.

Precautions

- Not available if battery is low.
- Some items may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not transfer properly.

Transferring All Items

Use blank Memory Card for **Backup All Items**. Do not use the card to save other files after **Backup All Items**; backed up content may not be restored properly.

Transferring Selected Items

■ Received Msg.

- Transfer may delete sort keys.
- Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)

■ Sent Messages

Transfer may delete sort keys.

■ Drafts

If transferred from Drafts, only the first entered recipient remains or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

■ Bookmarks

- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are all backed up.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

■ Contents Keys

Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.




Handset to Memory Card



Follow these steps to back up selected items at once:

- 1 MENU** or  ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Highlight Connectivity** tab ➔ **Backup/Restore**




Backup/Restore Menu

- 2 Backup Selected Items** ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or 
- 3 Yes**
- 4 Select item** (⇌) ➔ **Complete selection**
 - For **Phone Book**, confirmation appears. Select **Yes** or **No**.


- 5 Execute** or  ➔ **Yes**
 - To cancel, press **Cancel** or .

- 6 Backup complete** ➔ **OK** or  ➔ **OK** or 

Selecting Multiple Items at Once


In **4**, **Options** or  ➔ **Select option** ➔ **From** **5**

Selecting/Canceling All Items

In **4**, **Options** or  ➔ **Check All** or **Uncheck All**

Memory Card to Handset

Follow these steps to restore selected items: Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current handset content (with the exception of Contents Keys).

- 1 In Backup/Restore menu, Restore Selected Items** ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or 
- 2 Yes**

- 3 Select item** (⇌) ➔ **Complete selection**

- 4 OK** or 
 - If no file list appears, skip ahead to **7**.


- 5 Select file**
 - Repeat **5** to complete selection.

- 6 OK** or 


- 7 Yes**
 - To cancel, press **Cancel** or .

- 8 Restore complete** ➔ **OK** or  ➔ **OK** or 


Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In **3**, **Options** or  ➔ **Select option** ➔ **From** **4**

Selecting/Canceling All Items

In **3**, **Options** or  ➔ **Check All** or **Uncheck All**

Changing Restoration Method

After **3**, highlight item ➔ **Options** or  ➔ **Change to Add Mode** or **Chg. to Overwrite Mode** ➔ **From** **4**

Advanced

-  ● Backing up all items ● Encoding data for backup ● Restoring all items ● Deleting backup files (P.12-13)
















| Data Folder | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| File/Folder View Settings | |
| Switching file list view | MENU or Data Folder Highlight folder Options or Manage Items Change List View Select option |
| Changing image quality | MENU or Data Folder Select folder Select file Options or Switch Display (Picture Quality for Flash® file) Select quality |
| Hiding Softkeys in image view | MENU or Data Folder Select folder Select file Options or SW GuideDisplay Off |
| Changing Slide Show settings | <small>(Start Here)</small> MENU or Data Folder Select folder Highlight file Options or Slide Show See below |
| | Playing Once Repeat Off |
| | Playing Music BGM Settings Switch On/Off On |
| Showing Softkeys in Slide Show | Changing Music BGM Settings Play Ring Tones Select folder Select file |
| | MENU or Data Folder Select folder Highlight file Options or Slide Show SW GuideDisplay On |













Using Files/Folders

| | |
|---|--|
| Using files as Wallpaper | MENU or Data Folder Select folder Highlight file Options or Set as Wallpaper Vertical or Horizontal Assign or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option. |
| Using files as ringtones | MENU or Data Folder Select folder Highlight file Options or Set as Ringtone Select item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When prompted, enter ring time. • When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions. |
| Using files as ringvideos | MENU or Data Folder Videos Highlight file Options or Set as Ring Video Select item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For For New Message or For New PC Mail, enter ring time. |
| Saving Phone Book entries | MENU or Data Folder Select folder Highlight file Options or Save to Phone Book As New Entry Complete other fields Save or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail. |
| Activating mobile camera, etc. in corresponding folders | MENU or Data Folder Select folder Options or Take Picture, Record Video or Record Voice |



■ Managing Files/Folders













































| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Opening file properties | MENU or  → Data Folder → Select folder → Highlight file → Options or  → Details |
| Renaming files | MENU or  → Data Folder → Select folder → Highlight file → Options or  → Manage Items → Rename → Enter name → Done or  |
| Sorting files | MENU or  → Data Folder → Select folder → Options or  → Manage Items → Sort → Select method <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To reverse the order, sort by the same method again. |
| Deleting files & folders | <small>[Start Here]</small> MENU or  → Data Folder → Select folder → See below |
| | <p>Single Files</p> Highlight file → Options or  → Delete → Yes |
| Canceling Secret | <p>Folder & Files Within</p> Highlight folder → Options or  → Delete → Enter Handset Code → OK or  → Yes |
| | Unlock Secret folders temporarily and highlight folder → Options or  → Unset Secret → Enter Handset Code → OK or  |

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Handling SVG files with handset keys | Line Scroll  |
| | Page Scroll  (Up),  (Down),  (Right),  (Left) |
| | Zoom  (Zoom out),  (Zoom in) |
| | Rotate  (Counterclockwise),  (Clockwise) |
| | Key Action Mode  |
| | Default View  |
| Memory Card | |
| Using HTML files on Memory Card | MENU or  → Settings → Highlight Connectivity tab → Memory Card → SD Local Contents → Select title |

















Backup

■ Backup & Restore

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Backing up all items | <p><i>MENU</i> or   <i>Settings</i>  Highlight <i>Connectivity</i> tab  <i>Backup/Restore</i>  <i>Backup All Items</i>  Enter Handset Code  <i>OK</i> or    <i>Yes</i>  <i>Yes</i>  Backup complete  <i>OK</i> or    <i>OK</i> or  </p> |
| Encoding data for backup | <p><i>MENU</i> or   <i>Settings</i>  Highlight <i>Connectivity</i> tab  <i>Backup/Restore</i>  <i>Settings/Manage</i>  <i>Encode Settings</i>  Select item  <i>On</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Available for Phone Book, Messaging folders, Calendar and Tasks. </p> |
| Restoring all items | <p><i>MENU</i> or   <i>Settings</i>  Highlight <i>Connectivity</i> tab  <i>Backup/Restore</i>  <i>Restore All Items</i>  Enter Handset Code  <i>OK</i> or    <i>Yes</i>  <i>Yes</i>  Restore complete  <i>OK</i> or    <i>OK</i> or  </p> |

■ Backup Files

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| Deleting backup files | <p><i>MENU</i> or   <i>Settings</i>  Highlight <i>Connectivity</i> tab  <i>Backup/Restore</i>  <i>Settings/Manage</i>  <i>File Management</i>  Select item  Select file (<input type="checkbox"/>  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>)  Complete selection  <i>Delete</i> or    <i>Yes</i></p> |
|-----------------------|---|



Data Folder

? Cannot copy files properly

- Files may be copy/forward protected. (If a copy/forward protected file is included in selected files, only the remaining files are copied.)

? Copied/moved files cannot be used on PCs, etc.

- Some files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.

? Cannot sort files properly

- Check the number of files/folders in the folder. Files/folders in folders containing 241 or more files/folders are sorted per 240 files/folders in the order they were saved. The order may change when a file/folder is deleted, etc.

? What should I be careful about when entering file names?

- Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ,, <, >, /, ?, # and " are not supported.

Backup & Restore

? Backup fails

- Check handset/Memory Card memory; backup may fail if the memory is low.

? Cannot restore some messages

- When importing data backed up on other SoftBank handsets, some messages may not transfer depending on the size.

? Some files are not restored

- If the limit is reached during Restore, remaining files will not be restored.

? Cannot use backup files on other SoftBank handsets or PCs

- Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

? Cannot open backup files

- Some backup files may open only after being restored to handset.

? Phone Book settings are lost

- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

? Messages are not restored properly

- Sky Mail may be restored as S! Mail when imported from other SoftBank handsets.



| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| Calendar & Tasks | 13-2 |
| Calendar | 13-2 |
| Tasks | 13-4 |
| Alarms | 13-6 |
| Using Alarms | 13-6 |
| Wakeup TV | 13-8 |
| Using Wakeup TV | 13-8 |
| Calculator | 13-10 |
| Using Calculator | 13-10 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| Expenses Memo | 13-11 |
| Adding Expenses | 13-11 |
| Osaifu-Keitai® | 13-12 |
| Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese) | 13-12 |
| Locking IC Card | 13-13 |
| Pretense Call | 13-15 |
| Faking Incoming Calls | 13-15 |
| Additional Functions | 13-16 |
| Troubleshooting | 13-23 |

13

PIM/Lifestyle Tools



Calendar













Opening Calendar

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ In **PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar**



Calendar Window

Key Assignments

| | | | |
|---|----------------------------|---|------------------------------------|
|  | Open previous page |  | Go to (Enter Date) |
|  | Open next page |  | Find (By Category) |
|  | Stamp ¹ |  | Help |
|  | Set Color ² |  | Toggle view |
|  | Go to (Today) ³ |  | Jump between weeks ^{4, 5} |
|  | Find (By Subject) |  | Highlight date ⁵ |

¹Available in Month/3Month View.

²Available in Month/3Month/Week View

³In 6Month View, the current month is highlighted.

⁴In Week View, scroll time block.

⁵In 6Month View, highlight month.

Alternatively, tap Display to highlight date, etc.

Advanced

-   Changing default view  Changing date color  Editing schedules (And more on P.13-16 - 13-17)

Saving Schedules

Follow these steps to save subject, start/end date/time, Alarm and schedule details: Either Subject or Description must be saved per entry.

- 1 In **Calendar window**, select **date**



- 2 **<Add New Entry>**


- 3 **Enter subject** ➔ **Done** or 



- 4 **Enter start date/time** ➔ **Accept** or 



Schedule Entry Window

- 5 **End:** ➔ **Enter end date/time** ➔ **Accept** or 

- 6 **Alarm:**

- 7 **Alarm Time:** ➔ **Select time** ➔ **Confirm** or 





- 8 **Description:** ➔ **Enter schedule details** ➔ **Done** or 

- 9 **Save** or  ➔ **Saved**

All-Day Schedule

- In , **Check** or  ➔ **Accept** or 
➔ **From** 

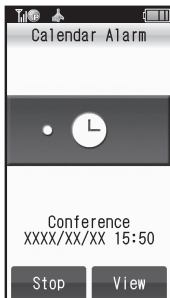
Custom Alarm Time

- In , **Alarm Time:** ➔ **Other** ➔ **Enter date/time** ➔ **Accept** or  ➔ **Confirm** or  ➔ **From** 




At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



To stop Alarm, press **Stop** or .

Opening Schedule

While Alarm sounds/vibrates, **View** or 

When Another Function is Active

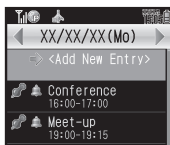
- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls


- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Schedules/Tasks



- 1 In Calendar window, select date



Schedule List

- 2 Select schedule or task
- 3 CLEAR/BACK or  → List returns

Opening Task List

In , highlight task → *Options* or  → *Go to Tasks*



Opening Related Message

After , *Options* or  → *Related Mail*

Deleting Message from Schedule


After , *Edit* or  → *Related Mail:*
→ *Yes* → *Save* or 

Accessing Secret Entries


[Calendar Window] *Options* or 
→ *Unlock Temporarily* → Enter Handset Code → *OK* or 

Deleting Schedules


One Entry

- 1 In schedule list, highlight schedule → *Options* or 
- 2 *Delete*
- 3 *This Appointment* → *Yes*

All Entries of the Day

- 1 In Calendar window, highlight date → *Options* or 
- 2 *Delete* → *All This Day* → *Yes*

Advanced

-  ● Searching entries ● Checking memory status ● Deleting all schedules ● Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View) ● Deleting entries by specifying month (Month/3Month View) ● Deleting entries in six months (6Month View) (P.13-17 - 13-18)

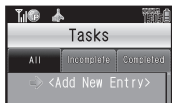


Tasks

Saving Tasks

Follow these steps to save subject, due date/time, Alarm and task details:
Either Subject or Description must be saved per entry.

- 1 **MENU** or ➔ **Tools** ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, **Tasks**

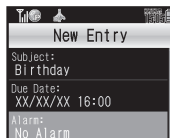


- 2 **<Add New Entry>**

- 3 **Enter subject** ➔ **Done** or

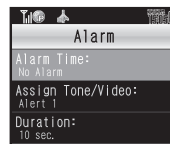


- 4 **Enter due date/time** ➔ **Accept** or



Task Entry Window

- 5 **Alarm:**



- 6 **Alarm Time:** ➔ **Select time** ➔ **Confirm** or
- 7 **Description:** ➔ **Enter task details** ➔ **Done** or
- 8 **Save** or ➔ **Saved**

Task with No Due Date/Time

In 4, **Check** or ➔ **Accept** or ➔ **From**

Custom Alarm Time

In 6, **Alarm Time:** ➔ **Other** ➔ **Enter date/time** ➔ **Accept** or ➔ **Confirm** or ➔ **From**

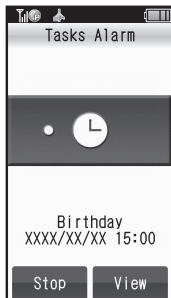
Advanced


Hiding entries Editing tasks Setting priority (And more on P.13-18 - 13-19)




At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



To stop Alarm, press **Stop** or .

Opening Task

While Alarm sounds/vibrates, **View** or 

When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls


- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Tasks

- MENU** or  **Tools** **Tasks** In PIM/Lifestyle menu, **Tasks**



Task List



- Use  to open completed or uncompleted task list. Alternatively, tap tabs.

- Select task**




- CLEAR/BACK** or  **List returns**

Accessing Secret Entries

After **1**, **Options** or  **Unlock Temporarily** **Enter Handset Code** **OK** or 

Marking Tasks as Completed

After **1**, highlight task **Done** or 

Deleting Tasks

One Entry

- In task list, highlight task **Options** or 

- Delete**

- This Task** **Yes**

All Completed Tasks

- In task list, **Options** or 

- Delete** **All Comp. Tasks** **Yes**

Advanced

-   Searching tasks
-  Sorting entries by priority
-  Checking memory status
-  Deleting all tasks (P.13-19)



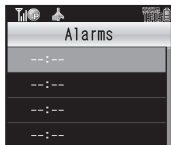
Using Alarms

Setting Alarm


Follow these steps to set Alarm to sound at a specific time on a specific day of the week:

Set Snooze (Alarm repeats at set interval), Alarm Volume and Duration.

- 1** MENU or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, **Alarms**



Alarm List

- 2** --:-- ➔ **Enter hour (24-hour format)** ➔ **Enter minutes** ➔ **Accept** or 

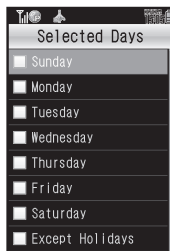



Alarm Menu

- 3** **Repeat:**



- 4** **Selected Days**



- 5** **Select day** (⇌) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔ **Confirm** or 

- 6** **Snooze:**

- 7** **Select interval**

• For custom intervals, select **Other**.

- 8** **Alarm Volume:**

- 9** **Adjust level**

- 10** **Duration:**

- 11** **Select time**



• For custom Duration, select **Other**.

- 12** **Save** or  ➔ **Saved**




• For more settings, repeat  - .

- 13**  or  ➔ **Alarm setting ends**



Selecting/Canceling All Days

In , **Options** or  ➔ **Check All** or **Uncheck All**


Excluding Holidays

In , select day (⇌) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔ **Except Holidays** ➔ **Confirm** or  ➔ From 

Activating Alarm Once or Daily

In , **Once** or **Every Day (All)** ➔ From 

Advanced

 ● Editing entries ● Saving entry name ● Changing Alarm tone/video ● Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time (P.13-19)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



To stop Alarm, press **Stop** or any key.

When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

When Snooze is Set

Alarm repeats at the set interval. Other Alarms do not activate while handset is Snoozing.

Canceling Snooze

While Snoozing, **Stop** or ➔ **Yes**

- Snooze is automatically canceled after a period of time.

Canceling Alarm

- 1 In Alarm list, highlight entry ➔ **Options** or

- 2 **Switch Off**

- Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry

In , **Switch On**

Deleting Alarm

One Entry

- 1 In Alarm list, highlight entry ➔ **Options** or

- 2 **Reset Alarm** ➔ **Yes**

All Entries

- 1 In Alarm list, highlight entry ➔ **Options** or ➔ **Clear All**

- 2 Enter Handset Code ➔ **OK** or ➔ **Yes**

Advanced

- Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode
- Activating Alarm based on World Clock time (P:13-19)



Using Wakeup TV

Setting Wakeup TV


Follow these steps to activate TV at a specific time on a specific day of the week:

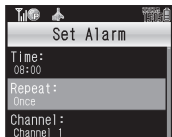
- Complete Area Setup (P.8-3) beforehand.
- TV may not activate in poor signal conditions.

1 MENU or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, **Wakeup TV**



Wakeup TV List

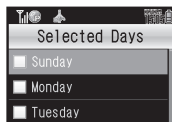
2 --:-- ➔ Enter hour (24-hour format) ➔ Enter minutes ➔ **Accept** or 




Wakeup TV Menu

3 Repeat:

4 Selected Days



5 Select day (⇔) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔ **Confirm** or 



6 Channel:

7 Select channel




8 Save or  ➔ **Saved**
 • For more settings, repeat **2** - **8**.

9  or  ➔ **Wakeup TV setting ends**



Selecting/Canceling All Days

In , **Options** or  ➔ **Check All** or **Uncheck All**

Excluding Holidays


In , select day (⇔) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔ **Except Holidays** ➔ **Confirm** or  ➔ From 

Activating TV Once or Daily


In , **Once** or **Every Day (All)** ➔ From 

Canceling Alarm



- Alarm activates at Wakeup TV time. To cancel Alarm, follow these steps:

[Wakeup TV Menu] **Alarm On/Off:** ➔ **Off** ➔ From 

Adjusting Alarm Volume

[Wakeup TV Menu] **Alarm Volume:** ➔ **Adjust level** ➔ From 

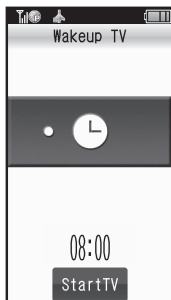
Advanced

-  ● Editing entries
-  ● Changing Alarm tone/video (P.13-20)



At Wakeup TV Time

TV activates after Alarm.



Stopping Alarm Instantly

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press **StartTV** or any key.

When Another Function is Active

- TV may not activate depending on the function.

After TV is On for a Period of Time

- Confirmation appears. Select **Yes** to exit TV.

Canceling Wakeup TV

- 1 In Wakeup TV list, highlight entry ➔ **Options** or
- 2 **Wakeup TV Off**
 - Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry

In , **Wakeup TV On**

Deleting Wakeup TV

One Entry

- 1 In Wakeup TV list, highlight entry ➔ **Options** or

- 2 **Reset Alarm** ➔ **Yes**

All Entries

- 1 In Wakeup TV list, highlight entry ➔ **Options** or ➔ **Clear All**

- 2 Enter Handset Code ➔ **OK** or ➔ **Yes**

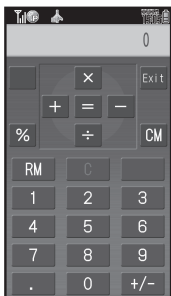
Advanced

- Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (P.13-20)















Using Calculator

- 1** MENU or  ➔ Tools ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calculator*



Calculator Window

| Key Assignments | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| + (Add) | + or  |
| - (Subtract) | - or  |
| x (Multiply) | x or  |
| ÷ (Divide) | ÷ or  |
| = (Sum) | = or  |
| C (Clear) | C or  |
| CM (Clear Memory) | CM or  |
| RM (Recall Memory) | RM or  |
| M+ (Add to Memory) | M+ or  |
| . (Decimal) | . or  |
| +/- (Positive/Negative Value) | +/- or  |
| % (Percentage) | % or  |


Memory Calculation

- Numbers saved in Memory remain until handset power is turned off.

Incoming Calls

- Calculations are not affected. End the call to return to Calculator.

Using % Function

Use % or  to find definite percentage of a known value.

Example: Calculate 30% of 800,000

- Enter 800,000 ➔ x ➔ 30 ➔ %
 ■ 240,000 appears.

- 2** Use Keypad to enter digits ➔ Calculate

- Clear Memory before starting new Memory calculations.

- 3**  or  ➔ Calculator ends

Advanced

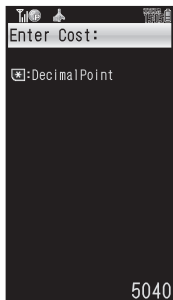
-  ● Copying calculation results ● Changing exchange rate for currency conversion ● Converting currencies (P.13-20)



Adding Expenses

Entering Expenses

- 1 Enter amount →



- 2 Accept or



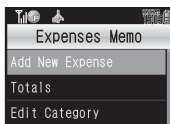
- 3 Select Category → Saved

Saving under Custom Category

In , *Other* → Enter name → *Done*
or → *OK* or

Checking Entries

- 1 MENU or → *Tools* → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Expenses Memo*



- 2 Totals



Expenses Memo List

- 3 CLEAR/BACK or → Menu returns

Saving Entries to Notepad

[Expenses Memo List] *Options* or → *Save to Notepad*

Deleting Entries

■ One Entry

- 1 In Expenses Memo list, highlight entry → *Options* or

- 2 *Delete Item* → *Yes*

■ All Entries

- 1 In Expenses Memo list, *Options* or → *Delete All*

- 2 Enter Handset Code → *OK* or → *Yes*

Advanced

Changing Category of saved entry Changing amount Renaming Categories (P.13-20)



Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)

Osaifu-Keitai® describes IC Card-equipped handsets that support e-money or credit functions/services. Osaifu-Keitai® encompasses a range of IC Card-based services on FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 931SH supports Osaifu-Keitai®. To use e-money, e-ticketing and reward points, etc., hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at shops, restaurants, and other retail outlets, etc.

Basics

Before using Osaifu-Keitai®, activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration, customize settings and charge accounts.

Starting Lifestyle-Appli

MENU or **⊙** ➔ **Tools** ➔ **In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai** ➔ **Lifestyle-Appli** ➔ **Select application**

Lifestyle-Appli Precautions

- Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage details.
- Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

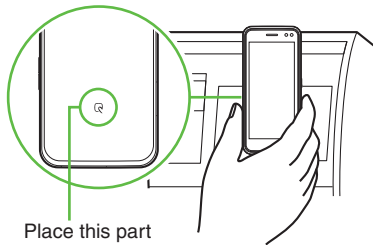
Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction:

Example: Making an electronic payment

- Complete transactions without activating a Lifestyle-Appli. Make sure battery is adequately charged.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off or during calls or Internet transmissions.

- 1 Place  logo over reader/writer ➔ Confirm scan results**



Place this part
over reader/writer

- Align handset parallel to reader/writer.





Important Osaifu-Keitai® Usage Note

SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.

When Placed Over Sensor

- If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.
- Handset may respond automatically for some services.

Advanced

-   Enabling to view e-money balances
-  Moving applications up/down Balance Info list
-  Removing applications from Balance Info list (P.13-21)



Locking IC Card

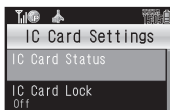
IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to/prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai® on handset.

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ In **PIM/Lifestyle** menu, **Osaifu-Keitai**




- 2 **IC Card Settings**



IC Card Settings Menu

- 3 **IC Card Lock** ➔ **On**
- 4 Enter **Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or  ➔ **Yes**

Canceling IC Card Lock

In , **IC Card Lock** ➔ **Off** ➔ Enter **Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or 

Advanced

-   Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands  Opening IC Card properties  Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient (P.13-21)


Remote Lock

Disable Osaifu-Keitai® remotely by mail or phone.

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Mail Remote Lock | Send mail to activate Remote Lock |
| Call Remote Lock | Call from a specified phone to activate Remote Lock |

Mail Remote Lock

Preparation on Handset



- 1 In **IC Card Settings** menu, **Remote Lock** ➔ Enter **Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or 





- 2 **Mail Remote Lock**



Mail Remote Lock Menu

- 3 **Remote Lock PW**
- 4 Enter password ➔ **Done** or 
- 5 **Switch On/Off**
- 6 **On** ➔ **Save** or 

Canceling Mail Remote Lock

In , **Off** ➔ **Save** or 


■ **Activating Remote Lock via Mail**
If handset cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

- 1 **Send S! Mail** or e-mail to handset with password as **subject**
 - Leave other fields blank.
 - After handset receives message, IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent as a reply.



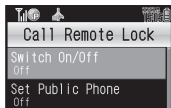
Call Remote Lock

■ Preparation on Handset

- 1 In IC Card Settings menu, **Remote Lock** → Enter **Handset Code** → **OK** or 

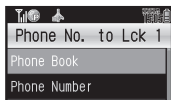


- 2 **Call Remote Lock**



Call Remote Lock Menu

- 3 **Phone No. to Lck 1 or Phone No. to Lck 2**





- 4 **Phone Book** → **Select entry** → **Select phone number**
 - Select **Phone Number** to enter directly.

- 5 **Switch On/Off**

- 6 **On** → **Save** or 

Enabling Activation via Public Phone

In , **Set Public Phone** → **On** → **From** 

Canceling Call Remote Lock

In , **Off** → **Save** or 

■ **Activating Remote Lock via Phone**
If handset cannot receive calls IC Card Lock is not set.

- 1 **Using one of the specified phones, call handset**
 - Send Caller ID.
- 2 **Handset receives call** → **End the call**
 - The call is recorded as a Missed Call.
- 3 **Within three minutes, repeat 1 - 2 twice**



- After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock activation. Confirm the message and end the call.

If Series is Interrupted by Another Call

- Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

Advanced

-  Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock
-  Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings (P.13-21)

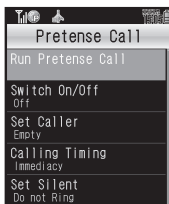
Faking Incoming Calls

Handset rings to emulate an incoming call.

- Pretense Call ringtone is fixed.
- Ringer may be muted by handset settings.
To override Silent setting, see P.13-22.

Setting Pretense Call

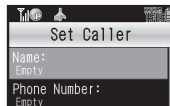
- MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, **Pretense Call**







Pretense Call Menu

- Switch On/Off** ➔ **On**

3 Set Caller




- Name:** ➔ Enter name ➔ **Done** or 
- Phone Number:** ➔ Enter phone number ➔ **Done** or  ➔ **OK** or 
- Save** or  ➔ PIM/Lifestyle menu returns



When Name and Phone Number are Unset

- Handset rings with Caller ID "Withheld."


Canceling Pretense Call

- [Pretense Call Menu] **Switch On/Off**
➔ **Off** ➔ **Save** or 



Using Pretense Call

- (Long)**
 - Available regardless of Slider position.
 - Handset rings and incoming Voice Call window opens.
 - Ringtone stops after a period of time.
- In incoming Voice Call window, Answer** or 
 - Voice Call window opens. (Softkeys are dummies.)
- End Call** or  ➔ Pretense Call ends

Setting Wait Time

- [Pretense Call Menu] **Calling Timing**
➔ **Select time** ➔ **Save** or 

When Calling Timing is Not Immediacy

- Press /CLEAR/BACK or /BACK during wait time to cancel Pretense Call activation.
- Pretense Call activation is canceled by incoming calls, Alarms, etc. during wait time.

Advanced

-  Starting via Pretense Call menu  Clearing caller information  Overriding Silent volume setting (P.13-22)



Calendar

View Settings

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Changing default view | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → <i>Default View</i> → Select type |
| Changing date color | <p><small>[Start Here]</small> <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → See below</p> <p>By Days of the Week <i>Options</i> or → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → <i>Set Color</i> → <i>By Week</i> → Select day → Select color</p> <p>By Date Highlight date → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → <i>Set Color</i> → <i>By Date</i> → Select color • Alternatively, highlight date and press to change color.</p> <p>Resetting "By Date" Colors <i>Options</i> or → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → <i>Set Color</i> → <i>Reset Color</i> → Select option → Yes</p> |
| Changing task view option | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → <i>Tasks View</i> → Select option |
| Adding stamps (Month View) | <p><i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → Highlight date → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Stamp</i> → Select stamp</p> <p>• Alternatively, highlight date and press to add stamps.</p> |
| Hiding entries | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → Select date → Select entry → <i>Edit</i> or → <i>Secret:</i> → <i>On</i> → <i>Save</i> or |

Removing/restoring preset holidays

MENU or → *Tools* → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → *Options* or → *Calendar Settings* → *Set Holiday* → Highlight *Private* or *Public* tab → Select holiday (→

Saving/Editing Entries

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Setting Category/Location | <p><small>[Start Here]</small> <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → Select date → Select entry → <i>Edit</i> or → See below</p> <p>Category <i>Category:</i> → Select Category → <i>Save</i> or </p> <p>Location <i>Location:</i> → Enter location → <i>Done</i> or → <i>Save</i> or </p> |
| Saving repetitive schedules | <p><i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → Select date → Select entry → <i>Edit</i> or → <i>Repeat:</i> → Select frequency → Enter repeat time → <i>Accept</i> or → <i>Save</i> or </p> <p>• Repeat time is not available for <i>Every Year</i>.</p> |
| Saving S! Friend's Status information | <p><small>[Start Here]</small> <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> → Select date → Select entry → <i>Edit</i> or → <i>S! Friend's Status:</i> → <i>Link Setting:</i> → <i>Linked</i> → See below</p> <p>Availability <i>Answer Status:</i> → Edit → <i>Confirm</i> or → <i>Confirm</i> or → <i>Save</i> or </p> <p>• Set Category first.</p> <p>Comment <i>Comment:</i> → Enter text → <i>Done</i> or → <i>Confirm</i> or → <i>Save</i> or </p> <p>• Set Category first.</p> |



| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Saving additional holidays | <p>Start Here MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Options or → Calendar Settings → Set Holiday → Highlight Private tab → See below</p> <p>Adding Holidays <Empty> → Enter name → Done or → Enter date → Accept or → Select frequency → Save or </p> <p>Editing Added Holidays Highlight holiday → Options or → Edit → Name: → Enter name → Done or → Date: → Enter date → Accept or → Select frequency → Save or </p> |
| | <p>MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Select date → Select entry → Edit or → Select item → Edit in the same manner as saving schedules → Save or </p> |
| | <p>Start Here MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Select date → Select entry → Edit or → Alarm: → See below</p> <p>Alarm Tone/Video Assign Tone/Video: → Select folder → Select tone/file → Confirm or → Save or • Select start point if required.</p> <p>Duration Duration: → Select time → Confirm or → Save or </p> |
| Changing Alarm tone/video & duration | |
| Changing Alarm volume | <p>MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Options or → Alarm Settings → Alarm Volume: → Adjust level</p> |

| | |
|---|--|
| Changing Vibration option | <p>MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Options or → Alarm Settings → Vibration: → Select option</p> |
| Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode | <p>MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Options or → Alarm Settings → For Manner Mode: → Ring → Yes</p> |
| ■ Managing Entries | |
| Searching entries | <p>Start Here MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → See below</p> <p>By Subject Options or → Find → By Subject → Enter text → Done or • Alternatively, press to search by subject.</p> <p>By Category Options or → Find → By Category → Select Category • Alternatively, press to search by Category.</p> |
| | <p>MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Highlight date → Options or → Memory Status</p> |
| | <p>MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Options or → Delete → All Appointments → Enter Handset Code → OK or → Yes</p> |
| Checking memory status | |
| Deleting all schedules | |



| | |
|--|--|
| Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View) | [Start Here] MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → See below |
| | Within One Week Highlight date → Options or → Delete → All This Week → Yes |
| | Up to the End of Previous Week Highlight date → Options or → Delete → Up to Last Week → Yes |
| Deleting entries by specifying month (Month/3Month View) | [Start Here] MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → See below |
| | Within One Month Highlight date → Options or → Delete → All This Month → Yes |
| | Up to the End of Previous Month Highlight date → Options or → Delete → Up to Last Month → Yes |
| Deleting entries in six months (6Month View) | MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar → Options or → Delete → All This 6Months → Yes |

Tasks

■ Task List

| | |
|----------------|--|
| Hiding entries | MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Highlight task → Options or → Edit → Secret: → On → Save or |
|----------------|--|

■ Saving/Editing Entries

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Editing tasks | MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Highlight task → Options or → Edit → Select item → Edit in the same manner as saving tasks → Save or |
| Setting priority | MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Highlight task → Options or → Edit → Priority: → Select option → Save or |
| Changing Alarm tone/video & duration | [Start Here] MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Highlight task → Options or → Edit → Alarm: → See below Alarm Tone/Video Assign Tone/Video: → Select folder → Select tone/file → Confirm or → Save or • Select start point if required. Duration Duration: → Select time → Confirm or → Save or |
| Changing Alarm volume | MENU or → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Options or → Alarm Settings → Alarm Volume: → Adjust level |



| | |
|---|--|
| Changing Vibration option | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Alarm Settings</i> → <i>Vibration:</i> → Select option |
| Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Alarm Settings</i> → <i>For Manner Mode:</i> → <i>Ring</i> → <i>Yes</i> |

■ Managing Entries

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Searching tasks | <small>(Start Here)</small> <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Find</i> → See below |
| | By Subject <i>By Subject</i> → Enter text → <i>Done</i> or |
| | By Due Date <i>By Due Date</i> → Enter date → <i>Accept</i> or |
| Sorting entries by priority | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Sort</i> → <i>Priority</i> |
| Checking memory status | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Memory Status</i> |
| Deleting all tasks | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Tasks</i> → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Delete</i> → <i>All Tasks</i> → Enter Handset Code → <i>OK</i> or → <i>Yes</i> |

Alarms

| | |
|--|---|
| Editing entries | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Alarms</i> → Select entry → Select item → Edit in the same manner as saving entries → <i>Save</i> or |
| Saving entry name | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Alarms</i> → Select entry → <i>Subject:</i> → Enter name → <i>Done</i> or → <i>Save</i> or |
| Changing Alarm tone/video | <small>(Start Here)</small> <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Alarms</i> → Select entry → <i>Assign Tone/Video:</i> → See below |
| | Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder → Select tone/file → <i>Save</i> or • Select start point if required. |
| | Using Customized Screen Tone/Video <i>Customized Screen</i> → <i>Save</i> or |
| Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Alarms</i> → Select entry → <i>Vibration:</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Link to Sound</i> → <i>Save</i> or • Select <i>Link to Sound</i> to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration. |
| Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Alarms</i> → <i>Settings</i> → <i>For Manner Mode</i> → <i>Ring</i> → <i>Yes</i> |
| Activating Alarm based on World Clock time | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Alarms</i> → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Link to World Clk</i> → <i>On</i> |



Wakeup TV

| | |
|---|--|
| Editing entries | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Wakeup TV</i> → Select entry → Select item → Edit in the same manner as saving entries → <i>Save</i> or |
| Changing Alarm tone/video | <small>(Start Here)</small> <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Wakeup TV</i> → Select entry → <i>Assign Tone/Video</i> : → See below Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder → Select tone/file → <i>Save</i> or • Select start point if required. Using Customized Screen Tone/Video <i>Customized Screen</i> → <i>Save</i> or |
| Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Wakeup TV</i> → <i>For Manner Mode</i> → <i>Ring</i> → Yes |

Calculator

| | |
|--|---|
| Copying calculation results | While result appears, <i>Options</i> or → <i>Copy</i> |
| Changing exchange rate for currency conversion | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calculator</i> → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Money Converter</i> → <i>Exchange Rate</i> → <i>Domestic</i> or <i>Foreign</i> → Enter rate → <i>Accept</i> or |
| Converting currencies | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calculator</i> → Enter amount of money → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Money Converter</i> → <i>To Domestic</i> or <i>To Foreign</i> • Set Exchange Rate first. |

Expenses Memo

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Changing Category of saved entry | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Expenses Memo</i> → <i>Totals</i> → Select entry → Select Category |
| Changing amount | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Expenses Memo</i> → <i>Totals</i> → Highlight entry → <i>Options</i> or → <i>Change Amount</i> → Edit → <i>Accept</i> or |
| Renaming Categories | <i>MENU</i> or → <i>Tools</i> → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Expenses Memo</i> → <i>Edit Category</i> → Select Category → Enter name → <i>Done</i> or |



| Osaifu-Keitai® | |
|--|---|
| Enabling to view e-money balances | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → Balance Info → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙ → Empty → S/ Appli or Lifestyle-Appli → Select application</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For use with compatible Lifestyle-Applications. • Start Lifestyle-Appli once before adding it to Balance Info list. |
| Moving applications up/down Balance Info list | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → Balance Info → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙ → Highlight application → Options or ✉ → Move → Select location</p> |
| Removing applications from Balance Info list | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → Balance Info → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙ → Highlight application → Options or ✉ → Delete</p> |
| Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → Interface Settings → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙ → Select item → Off</p> |
| Opening IC Card properties | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → IC Card Status</p> |

| | |
|--|--|
| Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient | <p>Start Here MENU or ⊙ → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → Remote Lock → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙ → Mail Remote Lock → Notice Settings → Send Notice → See below</p> <p>Changing Recipient</p> <p>To Set Recipient → Set Recipient → Select method → Select/set number/address → CLEAR/BACK or CLEAR ON → Save or Y</p> |
| | <p>Disabling Notice</p> <p>Off → CLEAR/BACK or CLEAR ON → Save or Y</p> |
| Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → Remote Lock → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙ → Call Remote Lock → Count for Lock → Enter Missed Call count → Accept or ⊙ → Save or Y</p> |
| Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai → IC Card Settings → Set to Default → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙ → Yes</p> |



Pretense Call

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Starting via Pretense Call menu | <p>MENU or ● → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Pretense Call → Run Pretense Call → Yes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pretense Call starts immediately regardless of Calling Timing setting. • Settings remain even after starting Pretense Call during setup. |
| Clearing caller information | <p>MENU or ● → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Pretense Call → Set Caller → Reset or ☒/ → Yes → OK or \y1 → Save or \y1</p> |
| Overriding Silent volume setting | <p>MENU or ● → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Pretense Call → Set Silent → Ring → Yes → Save or \y1</p> |




Osaifu-Keitai®

? Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai® (S! FeliCa)

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Recognition via reader/writer takes time

- Check  logo area. Foreign articles can block/hamper recognition.

? Call Remote Lock does not activate even after specified number of Missed Calls

- Missed Call count is reset by calls from other numbers. If series is interrupted, start over from the beginning.
- When Call Forwarding is active, Missed Calls may not be recorded.

Wakeup TV

? TV does not activate with specified channel

- If Wakeup TV Time arrives while TV is active, channel does not switch to the specified one.



| | |
|------------------------------|-------------|
| Stopwatch | 14-2 |
| Using Stopwatch..... | 14-2 |
| Countdown Timer | 14-3 |
| Using Countdown Timer | 14-3 |
| World Clock | 14-4 |
| Opening World Clock..... | 14-4 |
| Hour Minder | 14-5 |
| Using Hour Minder..... | 14-5 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| Pedometer | 14-6 |
| Using Pedometer..... | 14-6 |
| Compass | 14-8 |
| Using Compass | 14-8 |
| S! GPS Navi | 14-9 |
| Using S! GPS Navi | 14-9 |
| Battery Meter | 14-11 |
| Using Battery Meter | 14-11 |
| Additional Functions | 14-12 |

14

Clocks/Gauges Tools






Using Stopwatch

Stopwatch stops when battery runs low.

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ Highlight **Clocks/Gauges** tab ➔ **Stopwatch**



Stopwatch Window

- 2 **Start** or  ➔ **Stopwatch starts**
- 3 **Stop** or  ➔ **Stopwatch stops**
 - Press **Resume** or  to resume.

- 4  or  ➔ **Yes** ➔ **Stopwatch ends**



- Records are deleted when Stopwatch ends.

Recording Lap Times




While Stopwatch is running,

Measure or 

Saving Records to Notepad

After , **Options** or  ➔ **Save to Notepad**

Resetting Records

After , **Reset** or  ➔ **From** 

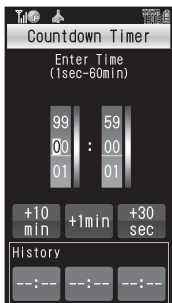
Incoming Calls

- Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.



Using Countdown Timer

- 1** **MENU** or **⊙** → **Tools** →
Highlight Clocks/Gauges
tab → **Countdown Timer**



Timer Entry Window

- 2** **Enter minutes** → **Enter seconds**
- Tap **+10min**, **+1min** or **+30sec** as needed.

- 3** **Accept** or **⊙**



Countdown Timer Window

- Press **Edit** or **✉** to change time.
- 4** **Start** or **⊙** → **Countdown starts**
- Press **Pause** or **⊙** to stop. (Press **Resume** or **⊙** to resume.)
- 5** **Set time elapses** → **Tone sounds**
- 6** **⏸** or **⊙** → **Yes** →
Countdown Timer ends

Resetting Timer

Before countdown, **Edit** or **✉** →
Reset or **Y**

Incoming Calls

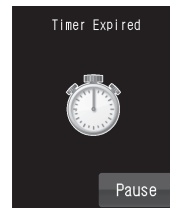
- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Timer Records

- Recent timer records appear below **History** in timer entry window. Tap record to enter the corresponding time.

When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds.



To stop tone instantly, press **Pause** or **⊙**, or a Side Key. (Tone stops automatically after a period of time.)

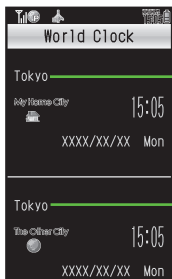
When Timer Time Elapsed during a Call

- Tone sounds after the call.



Opening World Clock

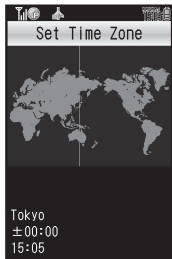
- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ Highlight **Clocks/Gauges** tab ➔ **World Clock**



Local Time Zone

World Time Zone


- 2 **Edit** or 




Set Time Zone Window

- 3 **Select area** ➔ **Accept** or 
- 4  or  ➔ **World Clock ends**


Advancing One Hour (Daylight Saving)


[Set Time Zone Window] **Summer** or .

- To cancel, press **Summer** or .

Adding Custom Time Zone

[Set Time Zone Window] **Custom** or

 ➔ **Enter city name** ➔ **Done** or

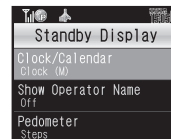
 ➔ **Highlight + or -** ➔ **Enter time**

difference ➔ **Accept** or 

Opening World Clock in Standby

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Settings** ➔ In Phone menu, **Display**

- 2 **Standby Display**



- 3 **Clock/Calendar**

- 4 **World Clock (L)**, etc.



Using Hour Minder

Setting Hour Minder

Follow these steps to activate the hourly time signal at selected hours:

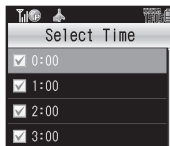
- 1** **MENU** or **⊙** → **Tools** → **Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab** → **Hour Minder**



Hour Minder Menu

- 2** **Switch On/Off** → **On**

- 3** **Select Time**



- 4** **Select hour** (⇌) → **Complete selection** → **Confirm** or **Y**

- 5** **Save** or **Y** → **Saved**

- 6** **⏪** or **⏩** → **Hour Minder setting ends**

Adjusting Hour Minder Volume

In **⊙**, **Advanced** → **Volume:** → **Adjust level** → **Confirm** or **Y** → **From** **⊙**

Changing Hour Minder Duration

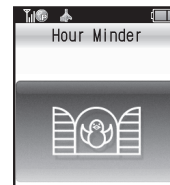
In **⊙**, **Advanced** → **Duration:** → **Select time** → **Confirm** or **Y** → **From** **⊙**
 ■ For custom Duration, select **Other**.

Selecting/Canceling All Hours

In **⊙**, **Options** or **ⓧ** → **Check All** or **Uncheck All**

At Hour Minder Time

Hour Minder activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



To stop tone instantly, press **Stop** or any key.

When Another Function is Active

- Hour Minder does not activate.
- Active Hour Minder stops for incoming calls.

Canceling Hour Minder

- 1** In **Hour Minder menu**, **Switch On/Off** → **Off** → **Save** or **Y**

Advanced

- Changing Hour Minder tone/video
- Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time
- Sounding Hour Minder Time tone even in Manner mode
- Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time (P.14-12)



Using Pedometer

Getting Started

- Count based on a pace of approximately 100 steps per minute over even terrain.
- Accuracy may be affected by course, terrain, walking style, etc.
- Avoid holding the handset; use a body worn case or a strap, or place handset inside a pocket or bag.
 - Avoid sudden/erratic movements.
- Steps are not counted in the following cases:
 - While handset is off
 - For the first few steps
 - While handset vibrates
- Handset use may affect accuracy.
- Use Pedometer only as a rough guide.

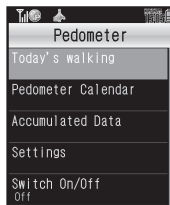
Adjusting Counter Sensitivity

- MENU** or **⊙** ➔ **Tools** ➔ **Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab** ➔ **Pedometer** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Step Sensitivity** ➔ **Select option**
- Select **Low** when steps seem overcounted; select **High** when they seem undercounted.

Saving Body Information

Weight and pace entry required to view full Pedometer data.

- 1 MENU** or **⊙** ➔ **Tools** ➔ **Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab** ➔ **Pedometer**



Pedometer Menu

- 2 Settings** ➔ **Body Info.**
- 3 Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or **⊙**



Body Info Menu

- 4 Height** ➔ **Enter height** ➔ **Accept** or **⊙**

- 5 Weight** ➔ **Enter weight** ➔ **Accept** or **⊙**

- 6 Pace** ➔ **Yes or No**
- Select **Yes** to enter pace automatically based on height.

- 7 Enter pace** ➔ **Accept** or **⊙** ➔ **Save** or **Y**

Editing Body Information

- [Body Info Menu] **Select item** ➔ **Enter value** ➔ **Accept** or **⊙** ➔ **Save** or **Y**
- For **Pace**, automatic calculation confirmation appears (when height is entered).

Activating Pedometer

- 1 In Pedometer menu, Switch On/Off**

- 2 On**

Canceling Pedometer

- In **2**, **Off**



Pedometer Indicator

When Pedometer is active, today's step count appears in Standby.



When step count does not appear, press or .

Viewing Step Count Records

- 1 Tap Pedometer indicator
 - Today's and yesterday's data appears.
- 2 Log or



Steps Window

- Use or tap **Hourly/Daily** tab to toggle daily/weekly view. Press or to open previous day/week, and or to open next day/week.

- 3 Select time/date
 - Hourly/daily step counts appear.
- 4 CLEAR/BACK or → CLEAR/BACK or → Pedometer menu returns

Resetting Today's Step Count

In , **Options** or → **Reset Day's Data** → **Yes**

Resetting Log

[Steps Window] **Options** or → **Walk Data Reset** → **Enter Handset Code** → **OK** or → **Yes**

- Today's data is also reset.

Setting Targets

Information window opens, etc. when target is achieved for these items:

| | |
|----------|--------------|
| Steps | Walking Time |
| Exercise | Calories |
| Distance | Fat burned |

- 1 In Pedometer menu, **Settings** → **Target**
 - 2 **Target Settings**
 - 3 Select item → Enter value/time → **Accept** or
- Other target settings may consequently change.

Editing Targets

[Pedometer Menu] **Settings** → **Target** → **Target Settings** → Highlight item → **Edit** or → Enter value/time → **Accept** or

When Target is Achieved

- A tone sounds and Information window opens. (Highlight **Goal Achievement** and press to open Pedometer Calendar.) Follow these steps to mute achievement tone:

[Pedometer Menu] **Settings** → **Target** → **Goal Announce** → **Off**

About Exercise (Ex)

- Ex and MET indicate amount and intensity of physical activity, respectively. Ex for walking is calculated by multiplying 3 METs by walking duration (hour).

Advanced

- Changing Pedometer indicator
- Using Pedometer Calendar
- Checking accumulated data
- Resetting accumulated data
- Customizing achievement notice (P.14-12)



Using Compass

Opening Compass

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Tools**
- 2 Highlight **Clocks/Gauges** tab ➔ **Compass**




Compass Window

- Compass opens; use as a rough guide.

Adjusting Compass

- 1 In **Compass** window, **Adjust** or  ➔ **Next** or 
 - Follow onscreen instructions.

Compass Indicator

- When map is open, compass indicator appears; follow these steps to hide it:
MENU or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ **Highlight Clocks/Gauges** tab ➔ **S! GPS Navi** ➔ **NAVI Settings** ➔ **Compass Indicator** ➔ **Off**



Using S! GPS NAVI

Use this GPS navigation service to pinpoint current location, find routes to destinations, and more.

Precautions

- Location Information accuracy may be affected when GPS satellite/radio station signal reception is poor. Use S! GPS NAVI under the open sky.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from the provided Location Information.

Positioning

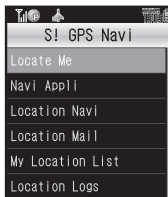
- Pinpoints current location using signals transmitted from GPS satellites.

Location Information Accuracy



- Probable distance from the actual position is classified into three levels, from Accuracy 1 (low) to Accuracy 3 (high).
- A confirmation appears when accuracy level is 1 or 2; select **Yes** or **No**.

Starting NAVI Appli

- 1 **MENU** or  **Tools** **Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab** **S! GPS NAVI**



S! GPS NAVI Menu

- 2 **NAVI Appli**
 - To disable confirmation, press **Check** or  before .
- 3 **Yes**

Opening NAVI Appli List

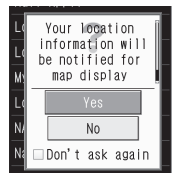
- [S! GPS NAVI Menu] **NAVI Appli List**
- To activate NAVI Appli, select one.



Selecting NAVI Appli for S! GPS NAVI

- [S! GPS NAVI Menu] **NAVI Settings** **Select NAVI Appli** **Select application**

Pinpointing Current Location


- 1 In S! GPS NAVI menu, **Locate Me**




- To disable confirmation, press **Check** or  before .

- 2 **Yes** **Positioning starts**
 - Map of your current location appears.

Opening Location Log

- 1 In S! GPS NAVI menu, **Location Logs**
- 2 **Select record**
 - Details appear.
- 3 **CLEAR/BACK** or  **Menu returns**

Advanced

-  ● Sending current location via mail ● Changing map source URL ● Disabling positioning (P.14-13)

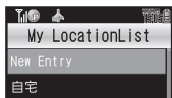


Using My Location

Saving Location Information

Follow these steps to save current location as a new entry:

1 In S! GPS Navi menu, My Location List



My LocationList Menu

2 New Entry

3 Name → Enter name → Done or

4 Location Info

5 From Current Loc. → Positioning complete

6 OK or

- When accuracy level is 1 or 2, select **No** and proceed to 7.

7 Save or

Advanced

- Selecting Location Information transmission option ● Using My Location & Location Log ● Saving Location Log records to My Location ● Deleting Location Log records (P.14-13)

Saving as Home

In , **自宅** → From

Saving from Location Log

In , **From Location Logs** → Select record → Save or

Opening Entries

1 In My LocationList menu, select entry

2 Location Info



3 CLEAR/BACK or → Details closes

Deleting Entries

1 In My LocationList menu, highlight entry

2 Options or → Delete → Yes

Using Location Navi (Japanese)

Locate other S! GPS Navi-compatible handset users or a lost handset.

- Location Navi requires a separate contract and initial settings.
- If Double Number is active, service uses Line A regardless of usage mode setting.
- For more about Location Navi, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (P.19-18).

1 In S! GPS Navi menu, Location Navi

- Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.



Using Battery Meter

- 1 **MENU** or **⊙** ➔ **Tools**
- 2 Highlight **Clocks/Gauges** tab ➔ **Battery Meter**



Battery Meter Window

- Approximate battery strength appears.

Changing Battery Strength Indicator Pattern [Battery Meter Window] *MiniBat* or

✉ ➔ **Select pattern**

- Remaining time is approximated for current handset usage pattern.



Hour Minder

| | |
|--|--|
| Changing Hour Minder tone/video | <p>[Start Here] MENU or [Home] → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → Hour Minder → Advanced → Assign Tone/Video: → See below</p> <p>Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder → Select tone/file → Confirm or [Y] → Save or [Y]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select start point if required. |
| | <p>Using Customized Screen Tone/Video Customized Screen → Confirm or [Y] → Save or [Y]</p> |
| | |
| Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time | <p>MENU or [Home] → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → Hour Minder → Advanced → Vibration: → On or Link to Sound → Confirm or [Y] → Save or [Y]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select <i>Link to Sound</i> to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration. |
| Sounding Hour Minder Time tone even in Manner mode | <p>MENU or [Home] → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → Hour Minder → Advanced → For Manner Mode: → Ring → Yes → Confirm or [Y] → Save or [Y]</p> |
| Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time | <p>MENU or [Home] → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → Hour Minder → Advanced → Link to World Clk: → On → Confirm or [Y] → Save or [Y]</p> |

Pedometer

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Changing Pedometer indicator | <p>MENU or [Home] → Settings → In Phone menu, Display → Standby Display → Pedometer → Select Item</p> |
| Using Pedometer Calendar | <p>MENU or [Home] → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → Pedometer → Pedometer Calendar → Select date</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Degree of achievement appears. • Press [Left Arrow] / [Right Arrow] or [*] / [#] to view previous or next month. |
| Checking accumulated data | <p>MENU or [Home] → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → Pedometer → Accumulated Data</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change in body information is reflected in the data. |
| Resetting accumulated data | <p>MENU or [Home] → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → Pedometer → Accumulated Data → Options or [Envelope] → Reset Walk Data → Enter Handset Code → OK or [Home] → Yes</p> |
| Customizing achievement notice | <p>[Start Here] MENU or [Home] → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → Pedometer → Settings → Target → Goal Announce → On → See below</p> |
| | <p>Changing Tone Goal Sound → Select pattern</p> |
| | <p>Changing Tone Volume Goal Volume → Adjust level</p> |
| | <p>Changing Vibration Pattern Vibration → Select pattern</p> |
| | <p>Changing Duration Duration → Select time</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For custom Duration, select <i>Other</i>. |



| S! GPS Navi | |
|--|---|
| Sending current location via mail | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → S! GPS Navi → Location Mail → Positioning complete → OK or ⊙ → Complete message → Send or ↵</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When accuracy level is 1 or 2, select No after positioning, then complete message. |
| Changing map source URL | <p>Start Here MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → S! GPS Navi → NAVI Settings → Map URL Settings → See below</p> <p>Adding URLs <Not set> → Enter URL → Done or ⊙</p> <p>Setting Destination URL Select URL</p> <p>Viewing/Editing/Deleting URLs Highlight URL → Options or ⊞ → Display, Edit or Delete</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions. |
| Disabling positioning | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → S! GPS Navi → NAVI Settings → Positioning Lock → On → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙</p> |
| Selecting Location Information transmission option | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → S! GPS Navi → NAVI Settings → Send Location Info → Select option → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙</p> |

| | |
|--|--|
| Using My Location & Location Log | <p>Start Here MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → S! GPS Navi → My Location List or Location Logs → Highlight entry or record → See below</p> |
| | <p>Opening Map Map or ↵ → Yes</p> |
| | <p>Showing Routes via Navi Appli Options or ⊞ → Go to → Yes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions. |
| | <p>Inserting into Message Text Options or ⊞ → As Msg. Text → Complete message → Send or ↵</p> |
| Saving Location Log records to My Location | <p>Saving to Phone Book Options or ⊞ → Save to Ph.Book → As New Entry → Complete other fields → Save or ↵</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail. |
| | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → S! GPS Navi → Location Logs → Highlight record → Options or ⊞ → Set as My Location → Name → Enter name → Done or ⊙ → Save or ⊞</p> |
| Deleting Location Log records | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Clocks/Gauges tab → S! GPS Navi → Location Logs → Highlight record → Options or ⊞ → Delete or Delete All → Yes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Omit record selection step when deleting all records. |



| | |
|------------------------------|-------------|
| Dictionary | 15-2 |
| Using Dictionaries..... | 15-2 |
| Search | 15-4 |
| Searching Text..... | 15-4 |
| Document Viewer | 15-5 |
| Opening PC Documents..... | 15-5 |
| Notepad..... | 15-6 |
| Saving Text | 15-6 |
| Scratch Pad | 15-7 |
| ASCII Art | 15-8 |
| Using ASCII Art | 15-8 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| Voice Recorder..... | 15-9 |
| Recording/Playing Voice..... | 15-9 |
| Scan Barcode..... | 15-10 |
| Create QR Code | 15-11 |
| Scan Card | 15-12 |
| Scanning Business Cards | 15-12 |
| Text Scanner | 15-13 |
| Scanning Text..... | 15-13 |
| Additional Functions | 15-14 |
| Troubleshooting..... | 15-20 |

15

Doc./Rec. Tools



Using Dictionaries

Available Dictionaries:

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Preloaded Dictionaries | Meikyo Japanese Dictionary, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary |
| Online Dictionaries* | Wikipedia, Meikyo J-Dic MX.net, Genius EJ-Dic MX.net, Genius JE-Dic MX.net, Imidas Encyclopedia, Encyclopedia Nipponica, Digital Daijisen, PROGRESSIVE English-Japanese Dictionary, PROGRESSIVE Japanese-English Dictionary, Hot Pepper Pockets, and more |

*Online dictionary use requires Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply. Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.


Searching As-You-Type

1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ **Highlight Doc./Rec. tab** ➔ **Dictionary**

2 **Switch** or  ➔ **Select dictionary**



Dictionary Window

- Alternatively, to activate Dictionary, Long Touch  in Standby.
- Last used dictionary appears first.

3 **Enter reading (spelling for English-Japanese dictionary)**


- Search results appear as you type.

4 **Select word**




Definition/Translation Window

Looking Up in Online Dictionaries

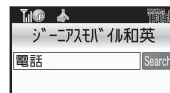
[Definition/Translation Window]
Options or  ➔ **WebDict.Search**
➔ **Search** ➔ **Yes** ➔ **Select word**

Searching by Keyword

1 **In Dictionary window, Options** or 

2 **Search Method** ➔ **Keyword Search**

3 **Select entry field** ➔ **Enter text** ➔ **Done** or 



4 **Search** ➔ **Select word**


Advanced

-  ● Viewing dictionary information ● Changing Font Size ● Copying Index Word (P.15-14)




Using History & Bookmarks

Saving Bookmarks



- 1 In definition/translation window, *Options* or 
- 2 *Bookmark*

Opening History or Bookmarks

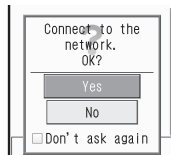
- 1 In Dictionary window, *Options* or 
- 2 *History* or *Bookmark List*
- 3 *Select word*

- Definition/translation window opens.

Using Online Dictionaries


- 1 In Dictionary window, *Switch* or  ➔ *辞書*
 - Terms of service appear when using online dictionary for the first time. Read and then press *OK* or .
- 2 *Select pull-down menu* ➔ *Select dictionary*

- 3 *Select entry field* ➔ *Enter text* ➔ *Done* or  ➔ *Search*




- 4 *Yes*
- 5 *Select word*
 - Definition/translation window opens.

Disabling Confirmation

In 4, *Check* or  (➔) ➔ From 5


Adding Downloaded Dictionary

- 1 In Dictionary window, *Options* or 
- 2 *Add Dictionary*
- 3 *Select file*

Canceling Added Dictionary

In 2, *Cancel Dictionary* ➔ *Yes*

Using Dictionaries during Text Entry

To use dictionaries before entering text, Long Touch .

- 1 *Type text* ➔ *Before pressing*  *to complete entry*,  (Long)



- 2 *Select dictionary*
- 3 *Search* ➔ *Select word*
 - Definition/translation window opens.

Inserting Index Word into Text

After 3, *Options* or  ➔ *Paste Index Word*

Advanced

-  ● Looking up copied words in dictionaries ● Deleting History & bookmarks ● Updating dictionary list (P.15-14)



Searching Text

Web Search

1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔
Highlight **Doc./Rec. tab**

2 **Search**



Search Window


- **Web Search** is selected by default.

3 Select entry field ➔ Enter
search text ➔ **Done** or 

4 **Search**

- Search results appear.

Searching within PC Sites

[Search Window] **Options** or  ➔
Change Browser ➔ **PC Site Browser**


Mail Search

1 In Search window, **Mail Search**

2 Select entry field ➔ Enter
search text ➔ **Done** or 

3 **Search** ➔ Select option

Searching within Received or Sent Messages

[Search Window] **Options** or  ➔
Change Mail Folder ➔ **Received Messages** or **Sent Messages**



Opening PC Documents

Supported File Formats:



























| |
|-------------------------------|
| PDF (.pdf) |
| Microsoft® Excel® (.xls) |
| Microsoft® Word (.doc) |
| Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt) |

- Some files may not appear correctly.
- Download files via the Internet.
- When transferring files from PCs, save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.12-5).

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ Highlight **Doc./Rec. tab** ➔ **Document Viewer**





- 2 Select file

| Key Assignments | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| View Whole Page | Whole or  |
| Scroll |  |
| View Upper Left |  |
| Toggle Full Screen View On/Off |  |
| View Upper Right |  |
| Zoom Out |  or  /  |
| Continuous Zoom Out |  (Long) /  (Long) |
| View Center |  |
| Zoom In |  or  /  |
| Continuous Zoom In |  (Long) |
| View Lower Left |  |
| Jump to Page |  or  |
| View Lower Right |  |
| Open Help |  |
| Next Page |  or  |
| Previous Page |  or  |
| Fit Width |  |
| Rotate 90° | V/H or  |

Alternatively, to scroll, touch Display and drag finger.

Zooming In/Out with Loupe (Magnifier)

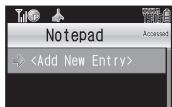
In open file, tap Display or 
(Long) ➔ Specify portion ➔ **Options**
or  ➔ **Zoom Out** or **Zoom In**



Saving Text

New Notepad Entry

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ **Highlight Doc./Rec. tab** ➔ **Notepad**



Notepad List

- 2 **<Add New Entry>**



- 3 Enter text ➔ **Done** or 

- 4 Select Category ➔ **Saved**


Sorting Entries Temporarily

[Notepad List] **Sort** or 

- Press repeatedly to toggle sort options (Modified, Created, Category and Accessed).


Changing Landscape Notepad List View

[Notepad List] **Highlight entry** ➔

- Options** or  ➔ **Setting/Manage** ➔ **Landscape Display** ➔ **Select option**

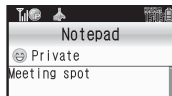
Inserting Notepad Text during Text Entry

In a text entry window, **Options** or

-  ➔ **Notepad** ➔ **Call Notepad** ➔ **Select entry**

Opening Notepad

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry



- 2 **CLEAR/BACK** or  ➔ **List returns**


Deleting Entries

- **One Entry**

- 1 In Notepad list, highlight entry ➔ **Options** or 


- 2 **Delete Item** ➔ **Yes**

- **All Entries**

- 1 In Notepad list, highlight entry ➔ **Options** or  ➔ **Setting/Manage**

- 2 **Delete All** ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or  ➔ **Yes**

Advanced



-  ● Editing Notepad ● Searching text within all entries ● Inserting Notepad text into message text ● Sending entries via S! Mail ● Creating text files
- Importing text files ● Checking memory status ● Opening properties (P.15-14 - 15-15)

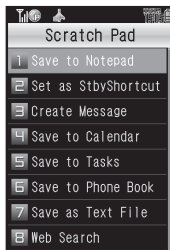


Scratch Pad

Open Scratch Pad to jot down text, and more.

Follow these steps to save text as a Notepad entry:


- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ Highlight **Doc./Rec. tab**
- 2 **Scratch Pad**
 - Text entry window opens.
- 3 Enter text ➔ **Done** or 



Scratch Pad Menu

- 4 **Save to Notepad**
 - Open saved entries from Notepad.

Other Scratch Pad Usage


| Usage | Operation |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Paste to Standby | <i>Set as StbyShortcut</i> ➔ Select sheet |
| Enter Mail Message Text | <i>Create Message</i> ➔ Select mail type |
| Enter Schedule Subject/Details | <i>Save to Calendar</i> |
| Enter Task Subject/Details | <i>Save to Tasks</i> |
| Add Last Name or Note to Phone Book | <i>Save to Phone Book</i> ▪ Reading is not entered. |
| Save Text File | <i>Save as Text File</i> ➔ Enter name ➔ Done or  ➔ <i>Save here</i> ▪ Saved to Data Folder (Other Documents). |
| Search Internet | <i>Web Search</i> ➔ Select browser |

For more, see corresponding function description or follow onscreen instructions.



Using ASCII Art

Inserting ASCII Art



- 1 In message text entry window, **Options** or  → **Call ASCII Art**



- 2 Select entry



Previewing ASCII Art

- In ②, **View** or 
 - Press **OK** or  to insert ASCII Art.

Editing Entries


- 1 **MENU** or  → **Tools** → **Highlight Doc./Rec. tab** → **ASCII Art**




ASCII Art List

- 2 Select entry → **Edit** → **Done** or 


Opening Entries

- In ②, highlight entry → **Options** or  → **View**

Adding New Entries

- In ②, **<Empty>** → **Create ASCII Art** → **Done** or 

Deleting Entries

- 1 In ASCII Art list, highlight entry → **Options** or  → **Delete**
- 2 **Yes**

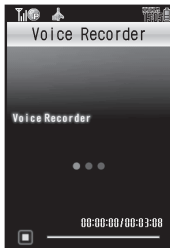


Recording/Playing Voice

Recording

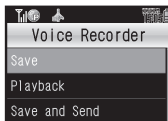
- If battery runs low while recording, Voice Recorder shuts off.
- Record conversations during calls via *Record Caller Voice* (P.5-15).

- 1** **MENU** or ➔ **Tools** ➔ **Highlight Doc./Rec. tab** ➔ **Voice Recorder**



Recording Window

- 2** or ➔ **Recording starts**
- 3** or ➔ **Recording stops**



- For *Extended Voice*, recording is saved automatically.

- 4** **Save**

Play Before Saving

In **4**, **Playback** ➔ **Playback starts** ➔ **CLEAR/BACK** or ➔ **Playback stops**

Starting Over

In **4**, **CLEAR/BACK** or ➔ **From 2**

Playback

- 1** In recording window, **Options** or ➔ **Ring Songs·Tones**



- 2** **Select file**

- Use or to adjust volume.
- Press or to pause, then or to resume. Press **CLEAR/BACK** or to stop playback.

Playing Data Folder Files

MENU or ➔ **Data Folder** ➔ **Ring Songs·Tones** ➔ **Select file**

Advanced

- Saving longer recordings
- Sending Voice files via S! Mail
- Switching storage media (P.15-15)

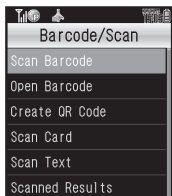


Scanning Barcodes

Scan UPC/JAN (1D barcodes) or QR Codes (2D barcodes).

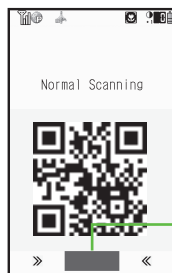
- Membership file or password may be required when scanning barcodes.
- Some barcodes may not be scanned.

- MENU** or **Tools** → **Highlight Doc./Rec. tab** → **Barcode/Scan**



Barcode/Scan Menu

- Scan Barcode**
- Frame barcode in center of Display**

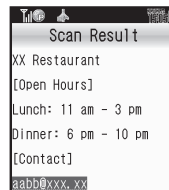


Scan Window

Focus Adjustment Bar

- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).
- Scan** or **Scan starts**
- If recognition takes time, slowly adjust the distance between handset and barcode.
 - Press **Cancel** or **[X]** to stop scan.

- Tone sounds** → **Scan results appear**



Barcode Scan Results Window

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle focus mode: **[F]**

Focus Lock: **Tap Display** or **[L]**

Mobile Light on/off: **Light** or **[#]**

Adjust brightness: **Exposure** or **[E]**

Open Help: **[H]**

Split Data

- After scanning, confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).
- Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.

Starting Over

After **[C]**, **CLEAR/BACK** or **[X]** →

Yes → From **[E]**

Advanced

- Scanning during text entry
- Scanning continuously
- Reading saved barcode images
- Saving scan results
- Saving to Notepad
- Saving linked info to Phone Book
- Opening saved scan results
- Using linked info
- Using images as Wallpaper
- Saving images & melodies (And more on **P.15-15 - 15-17**)



Creating QR Codes

Create QR Codes from these items on handset:

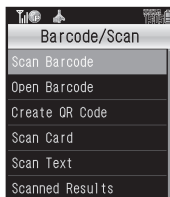


Large items are divided into multiple QR Codes.

Procedure

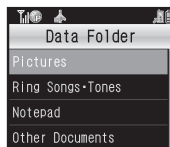
Follow these steps to create QR codes from Data Folder files:

- MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ **Highlight Doc./Rec. tab** ➔ **Barcode/Scan**



- Create QR Code**

- Data Folder**




- Select folder** ➔ **Select file or entry**

- QR Code is created.

- Save or** 

- QR Code is saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

From Phone Book Entries



In , **Phone Book** ➔ **Select entry** ➔ 

From My Details

In , **My Details** ➔ **Select item** ➔ 


From Entered Text

In , **Text Input** ➔ **Enter text** ➔

Done or  ➔ 

Switching Storage Media

In , **Options** or  ➔ **Save to** ➔

Phone or **Memory Card** ➔ **Save** or 

Attaching to S! Mail

In , **Options** or  ➔ **Send As** ➔

Complete message ➔ **Send** or 

Incoming Calls

- QR Code creation is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

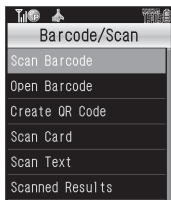


Scanning Business Cards

Scan business cards and save names, addresses, etc. to Phone Book.

- English business cards may not be scanned correctly.
- Some cards may not be scanned.

- MENU** or  ➔ **Tools** ➔ **Highlight Doc./Rec. tab** ➔ **Barcode/Scan**



- Scan Card**

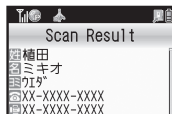
- Frame card on Display**



Scan Window

- Read** or 
 - Press **Cancel** or  to stop scan.

- Scan** or  ➔ **Scan results appear**




Card Scan Results Window


- Assign** or  ➔ **Save** or 
 - New Phone Book entry is saved.

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle focus mode: 

Focus Lock: Tap Display or 

Mobile Light on/off: **Light** or 




Adjust brightness: **Exposure** or 

Open Help: 



If Text Exceeds Phone Book Entry Item Character Limit

- Confirmation appears. To delete overage, select **Yes**.

Changing Save Location

After  **Options** or  ➔ **Save to** ➔ **Select location** ➔ 

Saving Scanned Image as Phone Book Picture





After  **Options** or  ➔ **Add Image** ➔ **On**

Starting Over

After  **Cancel** or  ➔ **Yes** ➔ **From** 



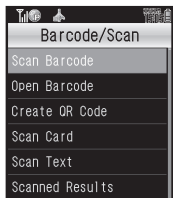
Advanced

-   Saving to Notepad  Pasting to message text  Copying text (P.15-17)

Scanning Text

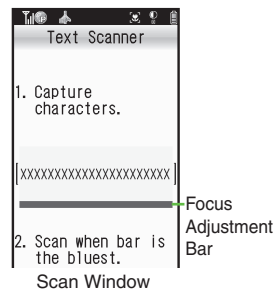
Some text cannot be scanned.

- 1** MENU or ➔ **Tools** ➔
Highlight Doc./Rec. tab ➔
Barcode/Scan



- 2** **Scan Text**

- 3** **Frame text in center of Display**



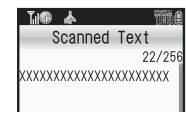
- Adjust to frame text in [].
- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).

- 4** **Scan** or

- Press **Cancel** or to stop scan.

- 5** **Highlight line** ➔ **Select** or ➔ **Scan results appear**

- 6** or



Scanned Text Window

Key Assignments in Scan Window

- Toggle focus mode:**
- Focus Lock:** Tap Display or
- Mobile Light on/off:** **Light** or #
- Adjust brightness:** **Exposure** or
- Open Help:**
- Correcting Text Type**
 After , **Options** or ➔ **Change Mode** ➔ **Select type** ➔
- Editing Scanned Text**
 After , **Options** or ➔ **Select/Edit** ➔ **Highlight character** ➔ **Highlight alternative from list or edit directly** ➔
- Starting Over**
 In , **Back** or ➔ **Yes** ➔ **From**

Advanced

- Scanning during text entry
- Scanning more text
- Saving scan results
- Saving linked info to Phone Book
- Saving to Notepad
- Opening saved scan results
- Using linked info
- Pasting to message text
- Copying text (P.15-18 - 15-19)



Dictionary

| | |
|---|--|
| Viewing dictionary information | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Dictionary → Options or → Information |
| Changing Font Size | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Dictionary → Options or → Font Size → Select size |
| Copying Index Word | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Dictionary → Switch or → Select dictionary → Enter reading (or spelling) → Select word → Options or → Copy Index Word |
| Looking up copied words in dictionaries | After copying text, (Long) → Options or → By Copy Text → Search → Select word |
| Deleting History & bookmarks | <small>[Start Here]</small> MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Dictionary → Options or → History or Bookmark List → See below |
| | One Word Highlight word → Options or → Delete → Yes |
| Updating dictionary list | All Words Options or → Delete All → Enter Handset Code → OK or → Yes |
| | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Dictionary → Switch or → 外辞書 → Options or → Update Dictionaries → Yes |

Notepad

| | |
|--|---|
| | <small>[Start Here]</small> MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Notepad → Highlight entry → Options or → See below |
| Editing Notepad | Editing Text Edit Text → Edit → Done or |
| | Changing Category Change Category → Select Category |
| Searching text within all entries | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Notepad → Highlight entry → Options or → Search → Enter text → Done or |
| Inserting Notepad text into message text | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Notepad → Highlight entry → Options or → Send → As Message Text → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message → Send or • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. |
| Sending entries via S! Mail | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Notepad → Highlight entry → Options or → Send → Via Message → Complete message → Send or |
| Creating text files | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Notepad → Highlight entry → Options or → Setting/Manage → Create Text File → Enter name → Done or → Save here |
| Importing text files | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Notepad → Highlight entry → Options or → Setting/Manage → Import Text File → Select file |



| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Checking memory status | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Notepad → Highlight entry → Options or → Setting/Manage → Memory Status |
| Opening properties | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Notepad → Highlight entry → Options or → Details |

Voice Recorder

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Saving longer recordings | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Voice Recorder → Options or → Record Time → Extended Voice |
| Sending Voice files via S! Mail | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Voice Recorder → or → Recording starts → or → Recording ends → Save and Send → Complete message → Send or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Available in For Message mode. |
| Switching storage media | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Voice Recorder → Options or → Save Recording to → Select option <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Available in For Message mode. • Set to Ask Each Time to select media after every recording. |

Scan Barcode

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Scanning during text entry | <small>(Start Here)</small> In a text entry window, Options or → Scan → Scan Code → Frame barcode in center of Display → Scan or → See below |
| | Pasting All Scan Results OK or |
| Scanning continuously | Pasting a Part of Scan Results Cut or → Highlight first character → Start or → Highlight text range → End or |
| | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Barcode/Scan → Scan Barcode → Options or → Continuous Scan → On |
| Reading saved barcode images | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Barcode/Scan → Open Barcode → Select file |
| Saving scan results | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Barcode/Scan → Scan Barcode → Frame barcode in center of Display → Scan or → Options or → Save |
| Saving to Notepad | MENU or → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Barcode/Scan → Scan Barcode → Frame barcode in center of Display → Scan or → Options or → Notepad |



| | |
|---|---|
| Saving linked info to Phone Book | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Barcode/Scan → Scan Barcode → Frame barcode in center of Display → Scan or ⊙ → Highlight number or mail address → Options or ☒ → Save to Ph.Book → As New Entry → Complete other fields → Save or ↵</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail. • When MEMORY: appears in scan results, press ⊙ to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book entry window. |
| Opening saved scan results | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Barcode/Scan → Scanned Results → Select file</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Highlight a file and press Options or ☒ to rename files, open properties or delete files. • Some files may not open. |
| Using linked info | <p><small>[Start Here]</small> MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Barcode/Scan → Scan Barcode → Frame barcode in center of Display → Scan or ⊙ → See below</p> |
| | <p>Dialing Numbers Select phone number → Call or ⊙ → Call</p> |
| | <p>Sending Messages Select mail address → Complete message → Send or ↵</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When MAIL TO: appears in scan results, press ⊙ to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Composition window. |
| <p>Accessing Internet Sites Select URL</p> | |

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Using images as Wallpaper | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Barcode/Scan → Scan Barcode → Frame barcode in center of Display → Scan or ⊙ → Highlight image → Options or ☒ → Set as Wallpaper → Vertical or Horizontal → Assign or ⊙</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If Wallpaper Display options appear, follow onscreen prompts. |
| Saving images & melodies | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Barcode/Scan → Scan Barcode → Frame barcode in center of Display → Scan or ⊙ → Highlight file → Options or ☒ → To Data Folder</p> |
| Opening or playing files | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Barcode/Scan → Scan Barcode → Frame barcode in center of Display → Scan or ⊙ → Select file</p> |
| Using images for System Graphics | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Tools → Highlight Doc./Rec. tab → Barcode/Scan → Scan Barcode → Frame barcode in center of Display → Scan or ⊙ → Highlight image → Options or ☒ → As System → Select item → Specify display area → Assign or ⊙</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Some images may be usable without specifying display area. |

































| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Pasting to message text | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ⊙ ➔ Tools ➔ Highlight Doc./Rec. tab ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ Scan Barcode ➔ Frame barcode in center of Display ➔ Scan or ⊙ ➔ Options or ☒ ➔ Send Message ➔ See below</p> <p>All Text OK or ⊙ ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ Complete message ➔ Send or ☒</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. |
| | <p>Selected Text Cut or ☒ ➔ Highlight first character ➔ Start or ⊙ ➔ Highlight text range ➔ End or ⊙ ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ Complete message ➔ Send or ☒</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. |
| Copying text | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ⊙ ➔ Tools ➔ Highlight Doc./Rec. tab ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ Scan Barcode ➔ Frame barcode in center of Display ➔ Scan or ⊙ ➔ See below</p> |
| | <p>Text Options or ☒ ➔ Copy ➔ Highlight first character ➔ Start or ⊙ ➔ Highlight text range ➔ End or ⊙</p> |
| | <p>Number, Address or URL Highlight number, mail address or URL ➔ Options or ☒ ➔ Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL</p> |


| Scan Card | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Pasting to message text | <p>MENU or ⊙ ➔ Tools ➔ Highlight Doc./Rec. tab ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ Scan Card ➔ Frame card in center of Display ➔ Read or ⊙ ➔ Scan or ⊙ ➔ Options or ☒ ➔ Notepad</p> |
| Pasting to message text | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ⊙ ➔ Tools ➔ Highlight Doc./Rec. tab ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ Scan Card ➔ Frame card in center of Display ➔ Read or ⊙ ➔ Scan or ⊙ ➔ Options or ☒ ➔ Send Message ➔ See below</p> <p>All Text OK or ⊙ ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ Complete message ➔ Send or ☒</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. |
| | <p>Selected Text Cut or ☒ ➔ Highlight first character ➔ Start or ⊙ ➔ Highlight text range ➔ End or ⊙ ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ Complete message ➔ Send or ☒</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. |
| Copying text | <p>MENU or ⊙ ➔ Tools ➔ Highlight Doc./Rec. tab ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ Scan Card ➔ Frame card in center of Display ➔ Read or ⊙ ➔ Scan or ⊙ ➔ Options or ☒ ➔ Copy ➔ Highlight first character ➔ Start or ⊙ ➔ Highlight text range ➔ End or ⊙</p> |




Scan Text






| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Scanning during text entry | In a text entry window, <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Scan</i> \rightarrow <i>Text Scanner</i> \rightarrow Frame text in center of Display \rightarrow <i>Scan</i> or  \rightarrow Highlight line \rightarrow <i>Select</i> or  \rightarrow  or  |
| Scanning more text | <i>MENU</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Tools</i> \rightarrow Highlight <i>Doc./Rec.</i> tab \rightarrow <i>Barcode/Scan</i> \rightarrow <i>Scan Text</i> \rightarrow Frame text in center of Display \rightarrow <i>Scan</i> or  \rightarrow Highlight line \rightarrow <i>Select</i> or  \rightarrow  or  \rightarrow <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Continue Part</i> or <i>Scan More</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select <i>Continue Part</i> to enter additional text or <i>Scan More</i> to enter text after a line break. |
| Saving scan results | <i>MENU</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Tools</i> \rightarrow Highlight <i>Doc./Rec.</i> tab \rightarrow <i>Barcode/Scan</i> \rightarrow <i>Scan Text</i> \rightarrow Frame text in center of Display \rightarrow <i>Scan</i> or  \rightarrow Highlight line \rightarrow <i>Select</i> or  \rightarrow  or  \rightarrow <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Save</i> |
| Saving linked info to Phone Book | <i>MENU</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Tools</i> \rightarrow Highlight <i>Doc./Rec.</i> tab \rightarrow <i>Barcode/Scan</i> \rightarrow <i>Scan Text</i> \rightarrow Frame text in center of Display \rightarrow <i>Scan</i> or  \rightarrow Highlight line \rightarrow <i>Select</i> or  \rightarrow  or  \rightarrow Highlight number or mail address \rightarrow <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Save to Ph.Book</i> \rightarrow <i>As New Entry</i> \rightarrow Complete other fields \rightarrow <i>Save</i> or  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>. |
| Saving to Notepad | <i>MENU</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Tools</i> \rightarrow Highlight <i>Doc./Rec.</i> tab \rightarrow <i>Barcode/Scan</i> \rightarrow <i>Scan Text</i> \rightarrow Frame text in center of Display \rightarrow <i>Scan</i> or  \rightarrow Highlight line \rightarrow <i>Select</i> or  \rightarrow  or  \rightarrow <i>Options</i> or  \rightarrow <i>Notepad</i> |

Opening saved scan results

MENU or  \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow Highlight *Doc./Rec.* tab \rightarrow *Barcode/Scan* \rightarrow *Scanned Results* \rightarrow Select file

- Highlight a file and press *Options* or  to rename files, open properties or delete files.
- Some files may not open.

Using linked info

[Start Here] *MENU* or  \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow Highlight *Doc./Rec.* tab \rightarrow *Barcode/Scan* \rightarrow *Scan Text* \rightarrow Frame text in center of Display \rightarrow *Scan* or  \rightarrow Highlight line \rightarrow *Select* or  \rightarrow  or  \rightarrow See below

Dialing Numbers

Select phone number \rightarrow *Call* or  \rightarrow *Call*

Sending Messages

Select mail address \rightarrow Complete message \rightarrow *Send* or 

Accessing Internet Sites

Select URL



| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Pasting to message text | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ⇒ Tools ⇒ Highlight Doc./ Rec. tab ⇒ Barcode/Scan ⇒ Scan Text ⇒ Frame text in center of Display ⇒ Scan or ⇒ Highlight line ⇒ Select or ⇒ ○ or ⇒ Options or ⇒ Send Message ⇒ See below</p> <p>All Text OK or ⇒ S! Mail or SMS ⇒ Complete message ⇒ Send or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. <hr/> <p>Selected Text Cut or ⇒ Highlight first character ⇒ Start or ⇒ Highlight text range ⇒ End or ⇒ S! Mail or SMS ⇒ Complete message ⇒ Send or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. |
| Copying text | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ⇒ Tools ⇒ Highlight Doc./ Rec. tab ⇒ Barcode/Scan ⇒ Scan Text ⇒ Frame text in center of Display ⇒ Scan or ⇒ Highlight line ⇒ Select or ⇒ ○ or ⇒ See below</p> <p>Text Options or ⇒ Copy ⇒ Highlight first character ⇒ Start or ⇒ Highlight text range ⇒ End or </p> <p>Number, Address or URL Highlight number, mail address or URL ⇒ Options or ⇒ Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL</p> |



Voice Recorder

? Cannot record properly

- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

? Noise/skipping occurs

- Avoid shocks to handset while recording; may cause noise or skipping.

? Recording takes time to start

- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

Scanning Barcode/Card/Text

? Cannot read barcodes properly

- Scan may fail if barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Scan may fail if barcode is scanned under inadequate light.
- Scan may fail if multiple barcodes are captured at one time.

? Cannot read barcodes during text entry

- Scanning is not available during calls or when mobile camera is active.

? Cannot read barcode images in Data Folder automatically

- When scan fails, follow onscreen instructions and select next barcode image manually.

? Cannot scan business cards properly

- Scan fails if business card is printed in light-colored text on a dark background, handwritten or printed in casual/decorative fonts, decorated with a background pattern, or designed with both vertical and horizontal text.
- Scan may fail if business card is printed in light-colored text on a light background, printed in italics or extremely small fonts, decorated with a logo or logo-like text, printed on a glossy paper or other material, or dirty/folded.

? Cannot scan text properly

- Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- Adjust to frame text in []. Letters at the ends may be distorted.



| | |
|---|-------------|
| Mobile Widget | 16-2 |
| Customizing Standby Display (Japanese) | 16-2 |
| S! Quick News | 16-5 |
| Receiving Content Updates (Japanese) | 16-5 |
| S! Information Channel | 16-6 |
| S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)..... | 16-6 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| e-Books | 16-7 |
| Reading e-Books (Japanese)..... | 16-7 |
| Additional Functions | 16-8 |
| Troubleshooting | 16-13 |

16

Entertainment



Customizing Standby Display (Japanese)

Paste various widgets (applications) to Standby to access/activate information/ functions immediately from Standby.



Obtaining Widgets

- 1 **MENU** or **HOME** → **Entertainment** → **Mobile Widget**



Mobile Widget Menu

- 2 **Widget Contents**



Widget List

- 3 **Download**

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Installing Widgets

- Some widgets may need to be installed manually; follow these steps:

[Widget List] Highlight widget → Options or → Install → Yes

Activating Single Widgets

[Widget List] Select widget

Advanced

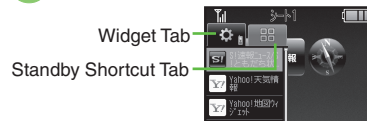
- Opening properties
- Opening widget notification history
- Canceling automatic updates
- Receiving updates automatically while abroad
- Disabling widget notifications
- Disabling cookies
- Deleting cookies (P.16-8)






Saving Widgets to Standby

Most operations are described for Touch Panel.

1 (OPEN)



- When  (OPEN) does not appear, press  or .

2 Drag widget to Standby

- Corresponding icon appears in Standby.

3 (CLOSE) ➔ Completed

Removing Widgets from Standby

Long Touch widget ➔ *Remove* ➔ *Yes*



Moving Widgets

- Drag widget to target location.

Using Widgets

Most operations are described for Touch Panel.




1 Tap widget

- Widget activates; follow onscreen instructions.
- When no widget appears, press  or .

Toggling Sheets

Toggle sheets to use widgets and Standby shortcuts pasted on each sheet.




1 While (OPEN) appears, swipe finger left or right across Display


















- When  (OPEN) does not appear, press  or .
- Sheet name appears at the top, then disappears.
- Save widgets as needed; corresponding icons appear on the current sheet.

Using Locked Sheets

 ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ *OK* or 

Handling with Handset Keys

To handle widgets with handset keys, press  to activate pointer () first. When finished, press  (pointer disappears).

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Saving Widgets | Use  to point to  (OPEN) ➔  ➔ Select widget ➔  |
| Using Widgets | Use  to point to widget ➔  |
| Removing Widgets | Use  to point to widget ➔  ➔ <i>Remove</i> ➔ <i>Yes</i> |
| Moving Widgets | Use  to point to widget ➔  ➔ <i>Change Layout</i> ➔ Specify target location ➔  |
| Moving Widgets to Front/Back | Use  to point to widget ➔  ➔ <i>To Front or To Back</i> |
| Updating View | Use  to point to widget ➔  ➔ <i>Update View</i> |
| Switching Sheets | Use  to point to blank area (no widgets or icons) ➔  |


Advanced

-  ● Logging in to Yahoo!JAPAN ● Viewing widget-related information ● Slowing pointer speed ● Editing sheet names ● Locking sheets (P.16-8 - 16-9)




Deleting Widgets

■ One Entry

- 1 In Widget list, highlight widget ➔ *Options* or  ➔ *Delete* ➔ *Yes*

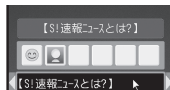
■ All Entries

- 1 In Widget list, *Options* or  ➔ *Delete All* ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ *OK* or  ➔ *Yes*

- If there is widget saved in Standby, a confirmation appears.



Using S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget


S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況 (preloaded S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget) shows S! Quick News and S! Friend's Status information in Standby.





View Settings

■ Setting View Pattern

- 1  ➔ Point to S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget ➔ *Operation* or  ➔ *Pattern Setting*


- 2 Select item (⇄) ➔ *Save* or 

■ Switching View

- 1  ➔ Point to S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget ➔ *Operation* or  ➔ *Switch Pattern*

- Repeat the above steps to switch the view.

Advanced

-  ● Adding news items ● Changing news scroll speed ● Showing unread news only ● Showing news images ● Assigning members ● Managing members (P.16-9)

Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)

View content updates or breaking news.
Transmission fees apply.

Registering S! Quick News Items

- 1 **MENU** or **HOME** → **Entertainment**
→ **S! Quick News**



- 2 **S! Quick News List**

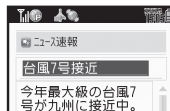


- 3 **登録はこちら** → **Yes**
 - Handset connects to the Internet.
- 4 **Select item**
 - Follow onscreen instructions.

Opening Information

- 1 **In S! Quick News List, select item**
 - Title list appears.

- 2 **Select title**



- Press **一覧** or **戻る** to return to title list, or **次へ** or **右** to open next title.

Updating Items Manually

[S! Quick News List] Highlight item
→ **メニュー** or **右** → **更新** → **一件** or **全件**

Indicators

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| | Unread Special news |
| | Read Special news |
| | Unread News Flash |
| | Read News Flash |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Unread General news |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Read General news |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Auto update disabled |

Advanced

- Receiving S! Loop Item updates
- Updating list automatically
- Checking update schedule
- Changing background image
- Deleting S! Quick News items
- Updating S! Loop items manually
- Accessing source sites
- Disabling image download
- Deleting S! Loop items
- Resetting S! Quick News List and S! Loop List (P.16-10 - 16-11)

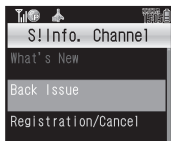


S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically.
Transmission fees apply.

Service Registration & Content Subscription

- 1 **MENU** or **⊙** ➔ **Entertainment**
➔ **S! Information Channel/Weather**



S! Information Channel Menu

- 2 **Registration/Cancel**
- Handset connects to the Internet.
Follow onscreen instructions.

New Received Information

Information window opens for new S! Information Channel info delivery.

- 1 **While Information window appears, S! Info. Channel**
- S! Information Channel page opens.
Follow onscreen instructions.
 - S! Information Channel page handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.

- 2 **⏪** or **⏩** ➔ **Page closes**

Opening Unread Latest Issue

[S! Information Channel Menu]
What's New

Opening Back Issues

[S! Information Channel Menu] **Back Issue** ➔ Select date

Using Weather Indicator

After S! Information Channel registration, local area weather indicator appears in Standby.

| | | | |
|--|---------------------|--|------------------|
| | Clear skies (day) | | Snow |
| | Clear skies (night) | | Thunder showers |
| | Cloudy | | Then |
| | Rain | | Partly/chance of |

Example: / ➔ Partly cloudy with a chance of rain

Indicators other than the above also appear for more information.

Manual Update

[S! Information Channel Menu]
Weather Indicator ➔ **Manual Update**
➔ **Yes**

Advanced

- Hiding Information window for new received info
- Changing Display Size
- Changing scroll unit
- Copying text
- Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby
- Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates
- Hiding Information window for weather updates (And more on **P.16-11**)



Reading e-Books (Japanese)

Use e-Book Viewer and BookSurfing® to view e-media (books, dictionaries, comics, photo books, etc.).

Downloading e-Books

1 **Y?** or **Y?** ➔ **メニューリスト**

2 **書籍・コミック・写真集**

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).

Note

- Alternatively, visit SH-web to download e-Books.

e-Book Viewer

Read XMDf books and dictionary files. Some files may not be supported.

1 **MENU** or **●** ➔ **Entertainment**



Entertainment Menu

2 **e-Book Viewer**

- e-Book Viewer starts. Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

BookSurfing®

Download Contents Keys and read CCF files. Some files may not be supported.

1 **In Entertainment menu, BookSurfing**

- BookSurfing® S! Application starts. Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.

Moving CCF Files via Memory Card

- When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files and retrieve Contents Keys to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.



Advanced

- ☞ ● Copying text ● Opening non-931SH e-Books (Library) ● Using Library (P.16-12)








Mobile Widget




Managing

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Opening properties | <p>MENU or  → Entertainment → Mobile Widget → Widget Contents → Highlight widget → Options or  → Details</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Highlight widget other than <i>S!選報ニュース/S!ともだち状況</i>. |
|--------------------|--|

Widget History







| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Opening widget notification history | <p><small>(Start Here)</small> MENU or  → Entertainment → Mobile Widget → Widget History → See below</p> |
| | <p>Showing All Text Highlight record → Options or  → View full text</p> |
| | <p>Deleting a Record Highlight record → Options or  → Delete → Yes</p> |
| | <p>Deleting All Records Highlight record → Options or  → Delete All → Enter Handset Code → OK or  → Yes</p> |

Settings



| | |
|--|--|
| Canceling automatic updates | <p>MENU or  → Entertainment → Mobile Widget → Settings → Auto Refresh → Off</p> |
| Receiving updates automatically while abroad | <p>MENU or  → Entertainment → Mobile Widget → Settings → AutoConnect Abroad → On</p> |
| Disabling widget notifications | <p>MENU or  → Entertainment → Mobile Widget → Settings → Notification Setting → Off</p> |

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| Disabling cookies | <p>MENU or  → Entertainment → Mobile Widget → Settings → Cookies → Disabled</p> |
| Deleting cookies | <p>MENU or  → Entertainment → Mobile Widget → Settings → Delete Cookies → Yes</p> |




Operations in Standby

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Logging in to Yahoo!JAPAN | <p> → Options or  → Yahoo!JAPAN log in</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Follow onscreen instructions. • To log out, select <i>Yahoo!JAPAN log out</i> in the above steps. |
| Viewing widget-related information | <p> → Options or  → Information</p> |
| Slowing pointer speed | <p> → Options or  → Cursor Speed → Slow</p> |









Sheets

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| Editing sheet names | <p><small>(Start Here)</small> Long Touch blank area in Standby (no Softkeys, icons or widgets) → Change Sheet Name → See below</p> |
| | <p>Renaming Select sheet → Enter name → Done or </p> <p>Resetting All Sheet Names Reset or  → Yes</p> |












| | |
|----------------|---|
| Locking sheets | <p>Start Here Long Touch blank area in Standby (no Softkeys, icons or widgets) → <i>Set Sheet Lock</i> → Enter Handset Code → OK or  → See below</p> <p>Activating Lock Select sheet → On</p> |
| | <p>Changing Method for Temporary Access <i>Unlock Method</i> → <i>Action</i> → OK or </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Swipe a finger down across  to unlock sheet temporarily. |

■ S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Quick News)























| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Adding news items | <p> → Point to S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → <i>Operation</i> or  → <i>Contents Menu</i> → <i>Add News</i> → <i>S! Quick News List</i> → <i>登録はごちら</i> → Yes → Select genre → Select item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Follow onscreen instructions. |
| Changing news scroll speed | <p> → Point to S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → <i>Operation</i> or  → <i>Contents Menu</i> → <i>News Display</i> → <i>News Speed</i> → Select speed</p> |
| Showing unread news only | <p> → Point to S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → <i>Operation</i> or  → <i>Contents Menu</i> → <i>News Display</i> → <i>Target News</i> → <i>Unread Only</i></p> |
| Showing news images | <p> → Point to S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → <i>Operation</i> or  → <i>Contents Menu</i> → <i>News Display</i> → <i>Display Image</i> → On</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Available when only S! Quick News area is set to appear on the Panel. |


































■ S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Friend's Status)

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| Assigning members | <p>When Pattern Setting is Not Friend's Status(List)  → Point to member field → <i>Operation</i> or  → <i>Contents Menu</i> → <i>Assign Member</i> → Select category → Select entry/member</p> |
| | <p>When Pattern Setting is Friend's Status(List)  → Point to S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → <i>Operation</i> or  → <i>Contents Menu</i> → <i>Assign Member</i> → Select category → Select entry/member → <i>(Empty)</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a member instead of <i>(Empty)</i> to replace the member. |
| Managing members | <p>Start Here  → Point to member → <i>Operation</i> or  → <i>Contents Menu</i> → See below</p> <p>Deleting Members <i>Delete</i> → Yes</p> |
| | <p>Changing Member Order <i>Move</i> → <i>Up/Down</i> or  /  → OK or </p> |
| | <p>Changing Member Icons <i>Change Icon</i> → Select Pictogram</p> |



S! Quick News

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Receiving S! Loop Item updates | <p>[Start Here] MENU or  Entertainment  S! Quick News  S! Loop List  See below</p> <p>Registering with S! Loop Items <i>S!ループにアクセス</i>  Yes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Handset connects to the Internet. Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions. |
| | <p>Opening Information Select item  Select title</p> |
| Updating list automatically | <p>[Start Here] MENU or  Entertainment  S! Quick News  Settings  Automatic Update  See below</p> <p>S! Quick News List S! Quick News  Select item  OK or   Select interval or <i>On</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a confirmation appears, press <i>OK</i> or . When Special is set to <i>On</i>, items are updated every four hours. When General is set to <i>On</i>, items are updated once a day. To cancel automatic update, select <i>Off</i>. Updating items may incur high charges. Only available in Japan. |
| | <p>S! Loop List S! Loop  OK or   <i>On</i>  OK or  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Items are updated about four times a day. Only available in Japan. |

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Checking update schedule | MENU or  Entertainment  S! Quick News  Settings  Check Schedule |
| Changing background image | MENU or  Entertainment  S! Quick News  Settings  Change Skin  Select pattern |
| Deleting S! Quick News items | <p>[Start Here] MENU or  Entertainment  S! Quick News  S! Quick News List  Highlight item  削除 or   See below</p> <p>One Entry 一件  Yes</p> <p>All Entries 全件  Enter Handset Code  OK or   Yes</p> |
| | Updating S! Loop items manually |
| Accessing source sites | MENU or  Entertainment  S! Quick News  Select list  Select item  Select title  Select title  Yes |
| Disabling image download | MENU or  Entertainment  S! Quick News  Settings  Show Image  Off |



| | |
|---|---|
| Deleting S! Loop items | <p>[Start Here] MENU or ⊙ → Entertainment → S! Quick News → S! Loop List → Highlight item → 削除 or ☐ → See below</p> |
| | <p>One Entry 一件 → Yes</p> |
| | <p>All Entries 全件 → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙ → Yes</p> |
| Resetting S! Quick News List and S! Loop List | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Entertainment → S! Quick News → Settings → Delete S! Quick News Lists → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙ → Yes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not available during automatic updates. |














S! Information Channel

| | |
|---|--|
| Hiding Information window for new received info | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Entertainment → S! Information Channel/Weather → Notification → Off</p> |
| Changing Display Size | <p>On a page, Options or ☐ → Settings → Display Size → Select size</p> |
| Changing scroll unit | <p>On a page, Options or ☐ → Settings → Scroll Unit → Select unit</p> |
| Copying text | <p>On a page, Options or ☐ → Copy Text → Highlight first character → Start or ⊙ → Highlight text range → End or ⊙</p> |

| | |
|---|--|
| Saving files to Data Folder | <p>On a page, Options or ☐ → Save Items → Select file → Save → Enter name → Done or ⊙ → Save here</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Some files are saved automatically. |
| Changing weather forecast page font size | <p>On a page, Options or ☐ → Settings → Font Size → Select size</p> |
| Opening page properties | <p>On a page, Options or ☐ → Page Information</p> |
| Requesting re-delivery | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Entertainment → S! Information Channel/Weather → Get Latest Contents → Yes</p> |
| Checking weather forecast | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Entertainment → S! Information Channel/Weather → Weather Indicator → Weather</p> |
| Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Entertainment → S! Information Channel/Weather → Weather Indicator → Settings → Standby Setting → Off</p> |
| Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Entertainment → S! Information Channel/Weather → Weather Indicator → Settings → Icon Update → Off</p> |
| Hiding Information window for weather updates | <p>MENU or ⊙ → Entertainment → S! Information Channel/Weather → Weather Indicator → Settings → Weather Notif. → Off</p> |



e-Books

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Copying text | In open page,  → 文字列表化 - → Select first character → Select text range • Available with handset keys only. |
| Opening non-931SH e-Books (Library) | MENU or  → Entertainment → Highlight e-Book Viewer → Library or  → Select file • Some files may not open. |
| Using Library | <small>Start Here</small> MENU or  → Entertainment → Highlight e-Book Viewer → Library or  → See below |
| | Adding Folders Options or  → New Folder → Enter name → Done or  |
| | Switching Folders Options or  → Switch Folders → Select folder |
| | Renaming Folders/Files Highlight folder/file → Options or  → Change Name → Enter name → Done or  |
| | Moving Files Highlight file → Options or  → Move → Select folder → Move here |
| | Deleting Folders/Files Highlight folder/file → Options or  → Delete → Yes |
| | Opening File Properties Highlight file → Options or  → Details |



S! Quick News**Cannot receive content updates**

- Update may fail out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
- Automatic Update does not affect S! Quick News List News Flash or S! Loop List update items overnight.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.



| | |
|---|-------------|
| S! Town & S! Loop | 17-2 |
| Using S! Town & S! Loop (Japanese) | 17-2 |
| S! Friend's Status | 17-3 |
| Using S! Friend's Status | 17-3 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| S! Circle Talk | 17-6 |
| Using S! Circle Talk | 17-6 |
| Near Chat | 17-8 |
| Using Near Chat (Japanese)..... | 17-8 |
| Additional Functions | 17-9 |
| Troubleshooting | 17-11 |

17

Communication Services



Using S! Town & S! Loop (Japanese)

S! Town

Select an avatar to enter this 3D virtual town, where you can play games and meet other users.

- To use S! Town, agree to the terms of service then complete free user registration.
- Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.

1 **MENU** or  **➔**
Communication

2 **S! Town**

- S! Town (S! Application) starts.
- Refer to the S! Town help menu for operational instructions.
- When an upgrade notice appears, follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.

S! Town Library

- Downloaded S! Town-compatible S! Applications are saved to S! Town Library. To start an application in S! Town Library, follow these steps:

MENU or  **➔** **Communication** **➔**
Highlight S! Town **➔** **Library** or 
➔ **Select application**

S! Loop

S! Loop is an online communication service. Share your diary, join BBS, etc. Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.

1 **MENU** or  **➔**
Communication

2 **S! Loop**

- Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.



Using S! Friend's Status

- S! Friend's Status requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Set Connection status to **Online** beforehand.

Changing My Status


Follow these steps to change Status, Availability and Comment; new status is sent to the members.

1 MENU or **Communication** **S! Friend's Status**

If Connection status is **Online**, skip ahead to 3.

2 Yes

3 No

- Select **Yes** to register members.
- Omit  if a member is already registered.



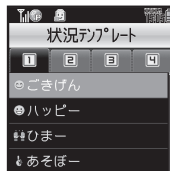
4 私の状況



Connection Status

My Status Window

5 Select Status, e.g., **ごきげん**



Status Template Window


6 Select new Status

7 Select Availability, e.g., **Answer OK** Select new Availability







8 <Add Comment> Enter text **Done** or

9 Update or Update starts



Changing Connection Status

[My Status Window] **Online** (or **Offline**)  Select status

Changing Status Icon/Label

[Status Template Window] Highlight Status  **Edit** or   **Status Icon** or **Status Label**  Select Pictogram or enter text  **Save** or 

Changing Availability Settings at Once

In , **Answer Status**  Select new **Answer Status**  From 



Editing My Status Name

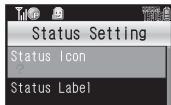
[My Status Window] **Options** or   **Edit Name**  **Edit**  **Done** or 






Creating Status Templates


Save custom combinations of Status Icon and Status Label to each template.

- 1 In Status Template window, *Options* or  ➔ *New Entry*
- 2 Enter name ➔ *Done* or 
- 3 *<未定>*



- 4 *Status Icon* ➔ Select Pictogram
- 5 *Status Label* ➔ Enter text ➔ *Done* or  ➔ *OK* or 
- 6 Repeat 3 - 5 ➔ *Save* or  ➔ *Saved*



Saving to Data Folder

[Status Template Window] Highlight tab (template) ➔ *Options* or  ➔ *Save to DF* ➔ *Save here*

Loading Templates via Data Folder


[Status Template Window] *Options* or  ➔ *Add Template* ➔ Select template

Renaming Templates


[Status Template Window] Highlight tab (template) ➔ *Options* or  ➔ *Edit Temp. Name* ➔ Enter name ➔ *Done* or 

Resetting Templates

One Template

- 1 In Status Template window, highlight tab (template) ➔ *Options* or 
- 2 *Reset* ➔ *Yes*

All Templates

- 1 In Status Template window, *Options* or 
- 2 *Reset All* ➔ *Yes*
 - Status Template window returns to the default setting.



Registering Members

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book for the first time. To add members, see P.17-9.

- 1 MENU or  ➔ Communication ➔ S! Friend's Status ➔ Yes**



- 2 Phone Book ➔ Highlight katakana row ➔ Select entry**

- 3 Select phone number**

- Omit  if only one number is saved.


- 4 Yes**

- Registration request is sent to the number. Registration is complete when an acceptance notice arrives.

When Registration is Complete

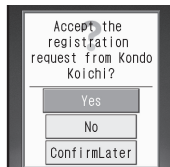
- My Status is sent and member's status appears on handset.

Direct Entry

In **2**, **Add New Entry** ➔ Enter phone number ➔ **Done** or  ➔ **4**

Registering from Received Request

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.



- 1 Yes**

- Acceptance notice is sent; the number is registered.

Rejecting

In **1**, **No** ➔ **Yes**

- Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.
- For **Confirm Later**, Information window opens.

Opening Member Status

- 1 MENU or  ➔ Communication ➔ S! Friend's Status ➔ Select Group**



- 2 Select member**



When Cancellation Notice Arrives

- Member is deleted from S! Friend's Status member list.

Advanced

-  ● Adding members ● Deleting members ● Updating manually ● Sending My Details image ● Rejecting requests (And more on P.17-9)



Using S! Circle Talk

- A subscription to S! Friend's Status is required.
- Transmission fees apply during S! Circle Talk.

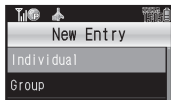
Registering Members

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book:

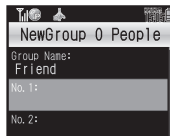
1 **MENU** or  **Communication** \rightarrow **S! Circle Talk**

- When registering a member for the first time, a confirmation appears. Select **Yes**, then skip ahead to **3**.

2 **<Add New Entry>**



3 **Group** \rightarrow **Group Name:** \rightarrow
Enter name \rightarrow **Done** or 



4 **Select number, e.g., No.1:**

5 **Phone Book** \rightarrow **Highlight katakana row** \rightarrow **Select entry**

6 **Select phone number**



- Omit **5** if only one number is saved.
- Repeat **4** - **6** to add members.

7 **Save** or  **Save**

Saving as Individuals

- In **3**, **Individual** \rightarrow **5** - **6**
 Saving from S! Friend's Status Member List
 In **5**, **Member List** \rightarrow **Select member**
 \rightarrow **7**
 ■ Omit **7** when **Individual** is selected in **3**.

Advanced

-  ● Editing individual members ● Editing Groups (P.17-10)




Initiating S! Circle Talk



Follow these steps to send S! Circle Talk requests to members:
Set My Status to **Online** first (P.17-3).

- MENU** or  ➔ **Communication** ➔ **S! Circle Talk**





- Select member or Group ➔ **Call** or 
 - S! Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.

Direct Entry


Enter phone number ➔ **Call** or  ➔ **Call S! Circle Talk** ➔ **Call** or 

S! Circle Talk Operations

Speaking



- Press and hold  when **Press and Hold**  appears ➔ **You have the floor**






-  **My Turn** appears when you have the floor.



- Keep holding  to speak ➔ Release  ➔ **Floor is released**
 - Warning tone sounds before time limit.

Canceling Loudspeaker




During S! Circle Talk,  or 

- To reactivate, follow these steps:
 -  or  ➔ **While message appears, OK** or 


Exiting S! Circle Talk

-  or  ➔ **Connection ends**
 - S! Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.




Rejoining S! Circle Talk

-  or  ➔ **Highlight tab (log type)** ➔ **Highlight record** ➔ **Options** or  ➔ **Rejoin Circle Talk**
- An error message appears when S! Circle Talk has ended or maximum number of participants are already engaged.

Accepting S! Circle Talk Request

- While handset is ringing/vibrating, **Answer** or  ➔ **S! Circle Talk starts**
 - S! Circle Talk Operations: left

Advanced

-   Disabling Loudspeaker
-  Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls (P.17-10)



Using Near Chat (Japanese)

- In the event that this handset may be used by a minor, access to this application may be password restricted by a supervising adult. In this case, Handset Code access must also be managed to prevent the execution of Memory All Clear (P.11-4) that may be used to reset the application password.
- Because this application employs Bluetooth® wireless technology transmission/connection fees do not apply.

Sending Near Chat Request

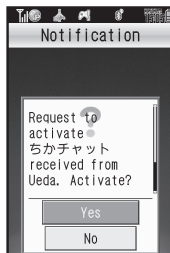
- MENU** or  →
Communication → **Near chat**



- Yes**
 - Near Chat S! Application starts.
 - For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

Receiving Near Chat Request

When a Near Chat request arrives, a tone sounds and S! Appli Notification appears.



After a period of inactivity, Information window opens, tone sounds and notification appears.

- Yes**
 - Near Chat S! Application starts.
 - For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

Rejecting Request

In **1**, **No**



S! Friend's Status

■ Members/Groups

| | |
|------------------|--|
| Adding members | MENU or → Communication → S! Friend's Status → Highlight Group → Options or → Add Member → Select method → Select entry or set phone number → Yes |
| Deleting members | MENU or → Communication → S! Friend's Status → Select Group → Highlight member → Options or → Registration Release → Yes → Yes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cancellation notice is sent; deleted members cannot be re-registered for 24 hours. |
| Moving members | MENU or → Communication → S! Friend's Status → Select Group → Highlight member → Options or → Change Group → Select target Group |
| Renaming Groups | MENU or → Communication → S! Friend's Status → Highlight Group → Options or → Edit Group Name → Enter name → Done or |

■ Member Status & Notices

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| Updating manually | MENU or → Communication → S! Friend's Status → Highlight Group → Options or → Settings → Status Update |
| Opening notices | MENU or → Communication → S! Friend's Status → Highlight Group → Options or → Status Notif. List → Select notice |

■ My Details

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Sending My Details image | MENU or → Communication → S! Friend's Status → Select Group → Highlight member → Options or → Send Image → Yes |
|--------------------------|--|













■ Settings

| | |
|--|--|
| | <small>Start Here</small> MENU or → Communication → S! Friend's Status → Options or → Settings → Request Reply → See below |
| Rejecting requests | <p>Rejecting Requests from Unsaved Numbers Confirm if Registered</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rejection notice is sent to rejected numbers automatically. <p>Rejecting All Requests Always Ignore</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rejection notice is sent to all requesters automatically. |
| Saving custom Availability combinations | MENU or → Communication → S! Friend's Status → Options or → Settings → Answer Status → User Setting → Select type → Select Availability → Save or |
| Changing Status Icon Pictogram or Status Label description | MENU or → Communication → S! Friend's Status → Options or → Settings → Status Setting → Highlight tab (template) → Select Status → Status Icon → Select Pictogram → Status Label → Enter text → Done or → Save or |



S! Circle Talk

■ Member List

| | |
|---|--|
| Editing individual members | Start Here MENU or  → Communication → S! Circle Talk → Highlight member → Options or  → See below |
| | Replacing Members Edit → Change or  → Select method → Select entry |
| | Deleting Members Delete → Yes |
| Editing Groups | Start Here MENU or  → Communication → S! Circle Talk → Highlight Group → Options or  → See below |
| | Editing Group Name/Members Edit → Select target → Edit/enter → Save or  |
| | Deleting Group Members Edit → Highlight member → Options or  → Delete → Yes → Save or  |
| | Deleting Groups Delete → Yes |
| ■ Settings | |
| Disabling Loudspeaker | MENU or  → Communication → S! Circle Talk → Options or  → Loudspeaker → Off |
| Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls | MENU or  → Communication → S! Circle Talk → Options or  → Incoming Calls → Voice Calls or Video Calls → Accept Calls |



S! Friend's Status

? Cannot use S! Friend's Status

- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

? Handset rejected a registration request automatically

- Rejection notice is sent automatically when 30 members are already registered or handset fails to respond within two hours.

? Registration request arrived from a deleted member

- Registration request arrives when a member fails to receive cancellation notice within 24 hours.

? Registration request was sent to a member automatically

- Registration request is sent automatically when handset fails to receive rejection/cancellation notice within 24 hours.

? Cannot create Status Templates

- Three templates may already be added; reset one and retry.

S! Circle Talk

? Cannot use S! Circle Talk

- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

? S! Circle Talk starts automatically

- Check My Status; handset accepts S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Auto Join*.

? Cannot accept S! Circle Talk requests

- Check My Status; handset rejects S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Join NG*.

Near Chat

? Cannot receive Near Chat requests

- S! Appli Request may be set to *Off*.



| | |
|---|-------------|
| Infrared | 18-2 |
| Transferring Files via Infrared | 18-3 |
| IC Transmission | 18-5 |
| Transferring Files via IC Transmission | 18-5 |
| Bluetooth® | 18-7 |
| Transferring Files via Bluetooth® | 18-8 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| Mass Storage | 18-10 |
| Connecting to PC | 18-10 |
| Additional Functions | 18-11 |
| Troubleshooting | 18-13 |

18

Connectivity



Infrared

Wirelessly transfer the following files between 931SH and compatible devices.

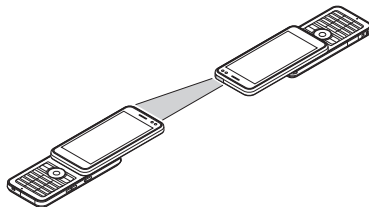
| | |
|------------|---------------|
| Phone Book | Received Msg. |
| Calendar | Sent Messages |
| Tasks | Drafts |
| Notepad | Templates |
| Bookmarks | Data Folder |

- Copy/forward protected files are not transferable.
- Some files may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not be saved properly. (For details, see **P.18-13** "Troubleshooting.")

Getting Started

Infrared Precautions

Align Infrared Ports of both devices.



- Do not place objects between devices.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions. Eyesight may be affected.

Transfer Options

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| One File Transfer | Transfer single files |
| All File Transfer | Transfer all files by function |
| IrSS Transfer | Exchange single image files with compatible devices at high speed |

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for infrared transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)



Transferring Files via Infrared

Receiving Files

- 1 **MENU** or **⊙** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Highlight Connectivity tab** ➔ **Infrared**
- 2 **Switch On/Off** ➔ **On(3 min.)**
 - Infrared is activated.
 - Handset receives files if sent within three minutes.
 - Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.
 - Alternatively, Long Press **⊙** to toggle Infrared on/off.
- 3 **Connection request arrives**



Request Window

4 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press **Cancel** or **Y7**.

Subsequent Operations

■ One File Transfer

Yes ➔ **Yes**

- When save location confirmation appears, select a location.

■ All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **OK** or

⊙ ➔ **Enter Authorization Code** ➔

OK or **⊙** ➔ **As New Items**

■ IrSS Transfer

Yes

- Files are saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

Advanced

- 👉 **Overwriting existing files (P.18-11)**

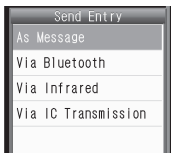


Sending Files

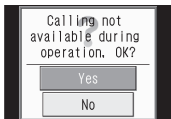
One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

- 1  or 
- 2 Highlight entry \rightarrow *Options*
or  \rightarrow *Send Entry*





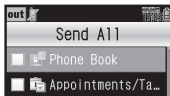
- 3 *Via Infrared*






- 4 **Yes** \rightarrow **Transfer starts**
 - When finished, entry search window returns.

All File Transfer

- 1 **MENU** or  \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow Highlight *Connectivity* tab \rightarrow *Infrared*
- 2 *Send All*
- 3 **Yes** \rightarrow Enter Handset Code \rightarrow *OK* or 





- 4 Select item (\leftrightarrow) \rightarrow *Send* or 
- 5 Enter Authorization Code \rightarrow *OK* or  \rightarrow **Transfer starts** \rightarrow *OK* or 
 - Infrared menu returns.

Sending Phone Book

- In  , Picture transfer confirmation appears.



Sending JPEG Images at High Speed

- 1 **MENU** or  \rightarrow *Data Folder*
- 2 *Pictures* or *DCIM*
For *DCIM*, select a folder.
- 3 Highlight image \rightarrow *HOLD:IrSS (Long)* or  (Long)



- 4 **Yes** or **No** \rightarrow **Transfer starts**
 - When finished, file list returns.
 - Transfers are one-way; end even if files are not received.

Advanced

-   Sending My Details  Sending non-Phone Book files (P.18-11)

Transferring Files via IC Transmission

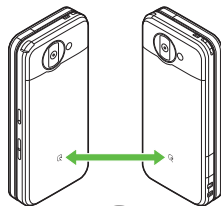
Wirelessly transfer files between 931SH and compatible devices.

- For transferable files, see P.18-2.
- Cancel IC Card Lock beforehand.
- Disconnect Headphones, USB Cable and AC Charger beforehand.

Getting Started

IC Transmission Precautions

Align  logos of both devices.



Align  logos

Keep  logos aligned during transfer.

Transfer Options

| | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| One File Transfer | Transfer single files |
| All File Transfer | Transfer all files by function |

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for IC transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

Disabling One File Reception

- 1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Highlight Connectivity tab** ➔ **IC Transmission**



IC Transmission Menu

- 2 **Recv. Forwarded** ➔ **Off(Disabled)**




Receiving Files

1 Connection request arrives



Request Window

2 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press **Cancel** or .

Subsequent Operations

■ One File Transfer

Yes → **Yes**

- When save location confirmation appears, select a location.

■ All File Transfer (Adding Files)

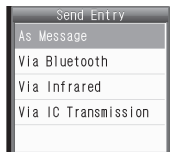
Yes → **Enter Handset Code** → **OK** or

 → **Enter Authorization Code** → **OK** or  → **As New Items**

Sending Files

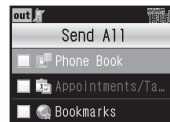
■ One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1  or 2 Highlight entry → **Options** or  → **Send Entry**3 **Via IC Transmission**4 **Yes** → **Transfer starts**

- When finished, entry search window returns.


All File Transfer

1 In IC Transmission menu, **Send All**2 **Yes** → **Enter Handset Code** → **OK** or 3 Select item (⇌) → **Send** or 4 **Enter Authorization Code** → **OK** or  → **Transfer starts**

→ **OK** or 

- IC Transmission menu returns.

Sending Phone Book

- In , Picture transfer confirmation appears.

Advanced

-  Overwriting existing files
-  Sending My Details
-  Sending non-Phone Book files (P.18-11)



Bluetooth®

Wirelessly transfer files/data between 931SH and compatible devices (watches, handsfree devices, etc.).

- Bluetooth® connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth® devices.
 - Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth SIG.
 - Data transfers may fail depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth® devices.
 - Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations.
- 931SH supports simultaneous connection with two devices. (May be unavailable depending on the device type.)

Getting Started

Bluetooth® Precautions

- Bring handsets to within ten meters. (Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate may vary depending on conditions.)
- TV audio is supported only on SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® devices.

Handsfree Device Precautions

Handle call operations on the device in use.

Bluetooth® Watches

Compatible Bluetooth® watches support these functions:

Time Correction

Alarm Notice

News Notice

Mail Notice

Remote Shutter

Mode Settings

Quick Silent

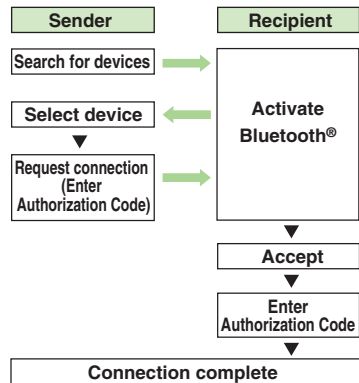
Caller ID Notice

Hold Calls

Operator Notice

For details about functions/operations, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.

Bluetooth® Connection



Authorization Code

- 4 to 16-digit code required for Bluetooth® connections. Pairing possible when codes match.

Advanced

- Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests
- Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled (And more on P.18-11)
- Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset
- Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses (And more on P.18-12)



Transferring Files via Bluetooth®


1 Toggling Bluetooth® On/Off

- 1** MENU or  ➔ **Settings** ➔ Highlight **Connectivity** tab ➔ **Bluetooth**



Bluetooth Menu

- 2** **Switch On/Off** ➔ **On or Off**


- Alternatively, Long Press  to toggle Bluetooth® on/off.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from unpaired handsfree devices, etc.

2 Connecting to Bluetooth® Devices


Device Search & Pairing

Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.

- 1** In Bluetooth menu, **Add Device**

- To disable confirmation, press **Cancel** or  before **2**.

- 2** **OK** or 

- Found devices are listed after search.
- Press **Cancel** or  to cancel.

- 3** **Select device**

When a confirmation appears, select **Yes**.

- 4** Enter the same Authorization Code for handset and the other device ➔ **OK** or  ➔ **Pairing complete**

- On the other device, complete code entry within 30 seconds.
- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorization Code.
- Authorization Codes are not necessary for paired devices.

Connecting to Paired Devices

- 1** In Bluetooth menu, **Paired Devices**








All Paired Devices List

- 2** **Select device**

When a confirmation appears, select **Yes**.

- The device is connected and (preferred) appears.

Advanced

-   Editing All Paired Devices list
-  Disconnecting devices
-  Connecting to devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service
-  Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection (P.18-12)



Accepting Connection Requests

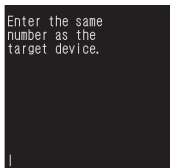
Follow these steps to accept connection requests from unpaired devices:

1 Connection request arrives



Request Window

2 Yes



3 Enter the same Authorization Code as sender's ➔ OK or

- Complete code entry within 30 seconds.
- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorization Code.

Transferring Files


Follow the steps below to exchange files with paired devices.

- For transferable files, see P.18-2.
- When requested, enter Authorization Code.


Receiving

1 Connection request arrives ➔ Yes

2 Yes

- When save location confirmation appears, select a location.
- To cancel transfer, press **Cancel** or .

All File Transfer (Adding Files)

In , enter Handset Code ➔ OK or ➔ **As New Items**

One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1 or

2 Highlight entry ➔ Options or ➔ **Send Entry**

3 Via Bluetooth

4 Select device ➔ Yes ➔ Transfer starts

- When finished, entry search window returns.

All File Transfer

1 In Bluetooth menu, **Send All**

2 Select device ➔ Yes ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ OK or

3 Select item () ➔ Send or ➔ Transfer starts ➔ OK or

- Bluetooth menu returns.

Sending Phone Book

- In , Picture transfer confirmation appears.

Advanced

-  Overwriting existing files Sending My Details Sending non-Phone Book files (P.18-12)



Connecting to PC

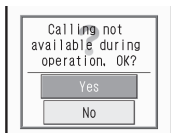
Accessing Memory Card from PC

Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing the card from handset.

- USB Cable may be purchased separately.
- If handset is connected to a PC via USB Cable, disconnect it first.

1 **MENU** or  ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Highlight Connectivity** tab ➔ **USB Mode**

2 **Mass Storage**



3 **Yes**

4 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**

- Use PC to access Memory Card.

5 **Cancel** or  ➔ **Yes** ➔ **Connection ends**

- Safely remove handset (recognized as removable hardware device) on the PC, then disconnect USB Cable.

Utility Software (Japanese)

For more PC-related operations, download Utility Software (including USB Cable driver) from the following URL.

■ **Utility Software**
<http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/download/tools/utility/>

Mobile Data Communication Fees

- Using the Internet by connecting handset to PC/PDA via USB Cable or Bluetooth® may incur high charges as large-volume packet transmissions tend to occur in a short period of time.



Infrared

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Overwriting existing files | When connection request arrives, Yes → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙ → Enter Authorization Code → OK or ⊙ → Delete All & Save → Yes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well. |
| Sending My Details | MENU or ⊙ → Phone → My Details → Options or ☒ → Send My Card → Via Infrared → Yes → Transfer starts |
| Sending non-Phone Book files | In file list, highlight file → Options or ☒ → Send → Via Infrared → Yes → Transfer starts |

IC Transmission



| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Overwriting existing files | When connection request arrives, Yes → Enter Handset Code → OK or ⊙ → Enter Authorization Code → OK or ⊙ → Delete All & Save → Yes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well. |
| Sending My Details | MENU or ⊙ → Phone → My Details → Options or ☒ → Send My Card → Via IC Transmission → Yes → Transfer starts |
| Sending non-Phone Book files | In file list, highlight file → Options or ☒ → Send → Via IC Transmission → Yes → Transfer starts |

Bluetooth®







| | |
|--|---|
| General | |
| Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests | MENU or ⊙ → Settings → Highlight Connectivity tab → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Visibility → Hide My Phone |
| Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled | MENU or ⊙ → Settings → Highlight Connectivity tab → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Bluetooth Timeout → Select time |
| Switching audio output to wireless device | MENU or ⊙ → Settings → Highlight Connectivity tab → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Sound Output → Bluetooth Device <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bluetooth Device is set automatically when connection is made from wireless Headphones. |
| Changing Bluetooth® name for handset | MENU or ⊙ → Settings → Highlight Connectivity tab → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Device Name → Enter name → Done or ⊙ |
| Talking on handsfree device | MENU or ⊙ → Settings → Highlight Connectivity tab → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Handsfree Setting → Handsfree Mode |
| Avoiding connection requests from Bluetooth®-compatible S! Applications in Standby, etc. | MENU or ⊙ → Settings → Highlight Connectivity tab → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → S! Appli Request → Off |
| Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties | MENU or ⊙ → Settings → Highlight Connectivity tab → Bluetooth → My Device Details <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press Help or ☒ to view service details. |






Bluetooth® Watches





| | |
|---|---|
| Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset | <i>MENU</i> or  ⇒ <i>Settings</i> ⇒ <i>Highlight Connectivity</i> tab ⇒ <i>Bluetooth</i> ⇒ <i>Setting Watch</i> ⇒ <i>Set BT-Watch Time</i> ⇒ <i>Yes</i> • Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch beforehand. |
| Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses | <i>MENU</i> or  ⇒ <i>Settings</i> ⇒ <i>Highlight Connectivity</i> tab ⇒ <i>Bluetooth</i> ⇒ <i>Setting Watch</i> ⇒ <i>Notification</i> ⇒ <i>Select item</i> ⇒ <i>Permit</i> or <i>Prohibit</i> • Register a Bluetooth® watch beforehand. |

Paired Devices

| | |
|--|--|
| Editing All Paired Devices list | <small>[Start Here]</small> <i>MENU</i> or  ⇒ <i>Settings</i> ⇒ <i>Highlight Connectivity</i> tab ⇒ <i>Bluetooth</i> ⇒ <i>Paired Devices</i> ⇒ <i>Highlight device</i> ⇒ <i>Options</i> or  ⇒ <i>See below</i> |
| | Renaming Paired Devices <i>Change Name</i> ⇒ <i>Enter name</i> ⇒ <i>Done</i> or  |
| | Deleting Paired Devices <i>Delete</i> ⇒ <i>Yes</i> • To delete a device connected to handset, select <i>Yes</i> . |
| Disconnecting devices | <i>MENU</i> or  ⇒ <i>Settings</i> ⇒ <i>Highlight Connectivity</i> tab ⇒ <i>Bluetooth</i> ⇒ <i>Paired Devices</i> ⇒ <i>Select device</i> |
| Connecting to devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service | <i>MENU</i> or  ⇒ <i>Settings</i> ⇒ <i>Highlight Connectivity</i> tab ⇒ <i>Bluetooth</i> ⇒ <i>Paired Devices</i> ⇒ <i>Highlight device</i> ⇒ <i>Options</i> or  ⇒ <i>Select service</i> ⇒ <i>Handsfree function</i> or <i>Audio function</i> |

| | |
|---|--|
| Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection | <small>[Start Here]</small> <i>MENU</i> or  ⇒ <i>Settings</i> ⇒ <i>Highlight Connectivity</i> tab ⇒ <i>Bluetooth</i> ⇒ <i>Paired Devices</i> ⇒ <i>Highlight device</i> ⇒ <i>Options</i> or  ⇒ <i>Set to Prior Connect</i> ⇒ <i>See below</i> |
| | For Handsfree Telephony <i>Handsfree On</i> • For <i>Handsfree On</i> , specified device reconnects to handset when placing/receiving calls. |
| | For Audio Output <i>Audio On</i> • For <i>Audio On</i> , Media Player/TV audio output is redirected to specified device automatically when  Sound Output is set to <i>Bluetooth Device</i> . |

File Transfer

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Overwriting existing files | When connection request arrives, <i>Yes</i> ⇒ <i>Enter Handset Code</i> ⇒ <i>OK</i> or  ⇒ <i>Delete All & Save</i> ⇒ <i>Yes</i> • For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well. |
| Sending My Details | <i>MENU</i> or  ⇒ <i>Phone</i> ⇒ <i>My Details</i> ⇒ <i>Options</i> or  ⇒ <i>Send My Card</i> ⇒ <i>Via Bluetooth</i> ⇒ <i>Select device</i> ⇒ <i>Yes</i> ⇒ <i>Transfer starts</i> |
| Sending non-Phone Book files | In file list, highlight file ⇒ <i>Options</i> or  ⇒ <i>Send</i> ⇒ <i>Via Bluetooth</i> ⇒ <i>Select device</i> ⇒ <i>Yes</i> ⇒ <i>Transfer starts</i> |



File Transfer

? Phone Book settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
 - Category, Tone/Video, Light, Vibration, Secret
- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

? Calendar/Tasks settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
 - Alarm Tone/Video, Secret, S! Friend's Status

? Cannot find streaming Bookmarks

- In All File Transfers, received streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

? Messages are not saved properly

- Files received via One File Transfer are saved to Other Documents folder and cannot be used as messages.
- Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail when transferred from other SoftBank handsets via All File Transfer.

? Received messages are not saved properly

- Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- All File Transfers may save Spam Folder messages to the incoming message folder on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 931SH).

? Received Msg. folder settings are lost

- In All File Transfers, overwriting messaging folders deletes sort keys.

? Draft messages are not saved properly

- In All File Transfers, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 931SH).

? Cannot find files in DCIM folder

- Received files in DCIM folder are saved to Pictures folder.

? Cannot receive some files

- Messages may not be received depending on the size.
- Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.

? Some files are not received

- If the limit is reached during transfers, remaining files will not be received.

? Cannot receive/accept connection requests even when Infrared/Bluetooth® is On

- Handset may not be in Standby.
- Keypad Lock/Function Lock may be active.
- Software Update may be in progress.

Infrared

? Infrared transfer fails

- Infrared Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.; clean with a soft cloth.
- Transfers may fail in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment.



| | |
|------------------------------|-------------|
| Troubleshooting | 19-2 |
| Key Assignments | 19-4 |
| Pager Codes | 19-6 |
| Pager Code List | 19-6 |
| Character Codes | 19-7 |
| Character Code List..... | 19-7 |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| Weather Indicators | 19-13 |
| Weather Indicator List | 19-13 |
| Specifications | 19-14 |
| Menu List | 19-19 |
| Index | 19-26 |
| Warranty & Service | 19-33 |
| Customer Service | 19-34 |




19

Appendix



Troubleshooting

■ General

| Problem | Possible Cause | Solution |
|---|---|--|
| Handset won't turn on | Was  pressed long enough? | Press  longer. |
| | Battery may need to be charged or replaced. | Charge battery or install a charged battery. |
| | Battery may not be properly installed. | Install battery properly (P.1-6). |
| Handset won't respond | Is Switch On/Off in PIN Entry On ? | If On , PIN is required. Enter PIN according to onscreen prompt. |
| Insert USIM Card appears | USIM Card may not be properly inserted. | Turn power off and check that USIM Card is properly inserted, then restart handset. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged. |
| | The correct USIM Card may not be inserted. | Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid. |
| | There may be debris on IC chip/terminals. | Clean relevant parts with a dry cloth and re-insert. |
| REFRESH appears and handset returns to Standby | Handset may have been dropped or subjected to shocks. | Handset failed to recognize USIM Card temporarily. This is not a malfunction. |
| Keypad won't respond | Keypad Lock may be active ( appears). | Cancel Keypad Lock (P.2-2). |
| | Function Lock may be active. | Cancel Function Lock (P.2-24). |

| Problem | Possible Cause | Solution |
|---|--|--|
| Battery strength indicator flashes when not charging | Ambient temperature may be outside 5°C to 35°C. | Use within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C. |
| Saved entry/folder does not appear on handset | Entry/folder may be set to Secret. | Activate Show Secret Data (P.2-25). |
| Cannot use Predictive | Show Secret Data may be active. | Cancel Show Secret Data. |
| Handset/AC Charger feels warm | Handset/AC Charger may warm while charging. | Unless handset/ AC Charger is too hot to touch, warmth is considered normal. Always avoid prolonged skin contact to prevent burn injuries. |
| | Handset may warm during extended periods of use. | |
| | Handset may warm during Video Calls. | |
| Cannot access Memory Card files | Memory Card may not be properly formatted. | Use 931SH-formatted Memory Cards. |
| Clock settings are lost | Did you leave handset without battery? | Clock settings remain even when removing battery for replacement, etc. However, if handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one for an extended period of time (approximately 30 hours), Clock will need to be reset. |



■ Charger/Battery

| Problem | Possible Cause | Solution |
|--------------------------------|--|---|
| Battery charges quickly | Remaining charge shortens charging time. | This is normal. |
| | Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Small Light flashes red.) | Replace battery with a new one. |
| Battery charges slowly | Charging slows during Video Calls. | End the call to charge faster. |
| | Battery may be charging via USB. | Use AC Charger. |
| Battery won't charge | AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset. | Make sure connector is securely inserted and retry. |
| | AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet. | Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and retry. |
| | Battery may not be properly installed. | Install battery properly (P.1-6). |
| | Battery, AC Charger, or Charging Terminals, or Device Port may be obstructed by dust, etc. | Clean terminals, connector and Port with a dry cotton swab and retry. |
| | Charger, etc. may not be supported. | Use specified AC Charger, etc. only; others may damage battery. |

| Problem | Possible Cause | Solution |
|--|--|--|
| Battery Time seems shorter than usual | High power consuming operations are in use. | Keep Slider closed in Standby; reduce TV, S! Application, Media Player and Camera use, and limit transmissions/external connections. |
| | Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time. | Avoid prolonged use of handset out-of-range or in poor signal conditions. |
| | Power hungry settings may be active. | Lower Brightness, select shorter Display Saving/ Backlight time, etc. |



Key Assignments














| Key | Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte] | Katakana [Double & Single-byte] | Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte] | Numbers [Single-byte] | Character Codes |
|--------|---|------------------------------------|---|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 | あいうえお あいうえお | アイウエオ アイウエオ | @,/-1 □ (space) | 1 | 1 |
| 2 | かきくけこ | カキクケコ | ABCabc2 | 2 | 2 |
| 3 | さしすせそ | サシスセソ | DEFdef3 | 3 | 3 |
| 4 | たちつとっ | タチツテトツ | GHIghi4 | 4 | 4 |
| 5 | なにぬねの | ナニヌネノ | JKLjkl5 | 5 | 5 |
| 6 | はひふへほ | ハヒフヘホ | MNOmno6 | 6 | 6 |
| 7 | まみむめも | マミムメモ | PQRSpars7 | 7 | 7 |
| 8 | やゆよやゆよ | ヤユヨヤユヨ | TUVtuv8 | 8 | 8 |
| 9 | らりるれろ | ラリルレロ | WXYZwxyz9 | 9 | 9 |
| 0 | わをんー ・ | ワヲンー ・ ・ _1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| * ☰ | Log, Pictogram List (double-byte), Symbol List ³ | | | | _____ |
| # ☎ | ☎ (line break) ? ! □ (space) | | _____ | # | _____ |

¹ - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.

² Available for phone number entry; some characters may not be enterable in some windows.


³ May not be enterable in some windows.



| Key | Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte] | Katakana [Double & Single-byte] | Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte] | Numbers [Single-byte] | Character Codes |
|---|---|--|---|--------------------------|-----------------|
|  | Conversion (up) ⁴ | Cursor up | | | |
|  | Conversion (down) ⁵ | Cursor down ↓ (line break) | | | |
|  | Cursor left | | | | |
|  | Cursor right | | | | |
|  | Change entry mode | | | | |
|  | Toggle case (for some characters) | | | _____ | |
| | _____ | Toggle mode (upper/ lower and lower case) | | _____ | |
|  | Delete one character | | | | |
| | Cancel conversion | _____ | | | Delete code |
|  (Long) | Delete before or after cursor | | | | |
|  | Recover characters deleted with  | | | | |
| | Re-convert ⁶ | _____ | | | |
|  | OK | | | | |
|  | Phonetic Conversion | _____ | | | |
|  | Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion | _____ | | | |

⁴Cursor moves up except during conversion.

⁵Cursor moves down except during conversion.


⁶Press  immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them.





Pager Code List

Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press  to switch immediately after character entry.

■ Double-byte Upper Case

| | | Second Digit (Press Next) | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---|---------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|----|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First Digit (Press First) | 1 | あ | い | う | え | お | A | B | C | D | E |
| | 2 | か | き | く | け | こ | F | G | H | I | J |
| | 3 | さ | し | す | せ | そ | K | L | M | N | O |
| | 4 | た | ち | つ | て | と | P | Q | R | S | T |
| | 5 | な | に | ぬ | ね | の | U | V | W | X | Y |
| | 6 | は | ひ | ふ | へ | ほ | Z | ? | ! | - | / |
| | 7 | ま | み | む | め | も | ¥ | & | |  | *1 |
| | 8 | や | (| ゆ |) | よ | * | # | Space |  | *2 |
| | 9 | ら | り | る | れ | ろ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| | 0 | わ | を | ん | 。 | 。 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |

■ Single-byte Upper Case

| | | Second Digit (Press Next) | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---|---------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|----|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First Digit (Press First) | 1 | ア | イ | ウ | エ | オ | A | B | C | D | E |
| | 2 | カ | キ | ク | ケ | コ | F | G | H | I | J |
| | 3 | サ | シ | ス | セ | ソ | K | L | M | N | O |
| | 4 | タ | チ | ツ | テ | ト | P | Q | R | S | T |
| | 5 | ナ | ニ | ヌ | ネ | ノ | U | V | W | X | Y |
| | 6 | ハ | ヒ | フ | ヘ | ホ | Z | ? | ! | - | / |
| | 7 | マ | ミ | ム | メ | モ | ¥ | & | |  | *1 |
| | 8 | ヤ | (| ユ |) | ヨ | * | # | Space |  | *2 |
| | 9 | ラ | リ | ル | レ | ロ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| | 0 | ワ | ヲ | ン | 。 | 。 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |



■ Double-byte Lower Case

| | | Second Digit (Press Next) | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---|---------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First Digit (Press First) | 1 | あ | い | う | え | お | a | b | c | d | e |
| | 2 | | | | | | f | g | h | i | j |
| | 3 | | | | | | k | l | m | n | o |
| | 4 | | | つ | | | p | q | r | s | t |
| | 5 | | | | | | u | v | w | x | y |
| | 6 | | | | | | z | | | | |
| | 7 | | | | | | | | | | *1 |
| | 8 | や | | ゆ | | よ | | | | | *2 |
| | 9 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | | | | 、 | 。 | | | | | |

■ Single-byte Lower Case




















| | | Second Digit (Press Next) | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---|---------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First Digit (Press First) | 1 | ア | イ | ウ | エ | オ | a | b | c | d | e |
| | 2 | | | | | | f | g | h | i | j |
| | 3 | | | | | | k | l | m | n | o |
| | 4 | | | ツ | | | p | q | r | s | t |
| | 5 | | | | | | u | v | w | x | y |
| | 6 | | | | | | z | | | | |
| | 7 | | | | | | | | | | *1 |
| | 8 | ヤ | | ユ | | ヨ | | | | | *2 |
| | 9 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | | | | 、 | 。 | | | | | |





*1 Press   to insert ¶ (line break) in mail message text, Notepad, etc.





*2 Press   to toggle upper and lower case modes.











Weather Indicator List




| Basic Status | |
|---|----------------------|
|  | Clear skies (day) |
|  | Clear skies (night) |
|  | Cloudy |
|  | Rain |
|  | Snow |
|  | Thunder showers |
|  | Chance of rain: 0% |
|  | Chance of rain: 10% |
|  | Chance of rain: 20% |
|  | Chance of rain: 30% |
|  | Chance of rain: 40% |
|  | Chance of rain: 50% |
|  | Chance of rain: 60% |
|  | Chance of rain: 70% |
|  | Chance of rain: 80% |
|  | Chance of rain: 90% |
|  | Chance of rain: 100% |
|  | Then |
|  | Partly/chance of |



| Pollen Count | |
|---|----------|
|  | Low |
|  | Moderate |
|  | High |
|  | Extreme |


| Cherry Blossom | |
|---|-------------------------|
|  | Flowering |
|  | Almost full bloom |
|  | Full bloom |
|  | Beginning of petal fall |

| Fall Foliage | |
|---|------------------|
|  | No color change |
|  | Colors appearing |
|  | Peak |
|  | Defoliating |

| Ultraviolet | |
|---|----------|
|  | Low |
|  | Moderate |
|  | High |
|  | Extreme |

| Typhoon | |
|---|-------------------|
|  | Forming |
|  | Approaching |
|  | Caution necessary |

| Disaster | |
|---|------------|
|  | Heavy rain |
|  | Gale |

| Information | |
|---|--------------|
|  | Notification |



Specifications

SoftBank 931SH

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Weight | Approximately 130 g |
| Continuous Talk Time | Approximately 250 minutes (3G) Approximately 230 minutes (GSM) |
| Continuous Standby Time | Approximately 340 hours (3G) Approximately 320 hours (GSM) (Slider closed) |
| Charging Time (power off) | AC Charger: Approximately 140 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 140 minutes |
| Dimensions (W x H x D) | Approximately 52 x 115 x 16 mm (Slider closed, without protruding parts) |
| Maximum Output | 0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM) |

- Above values calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with Slider closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. In Japan (3G service area), the value is calculated with IP Service Setting, Decoration Call, S! Appli Notification Setting and Mobile Widget Notification Setting set to **Off**.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may vary with environment, status, settings, etc.
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

Handset Materials

| Parts | Materials & Finishing |
|---|--|
| Housing (Display side, Keypad side, battery side), Battery Cover, camera cover | ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting) |
| Housing (Display back) | Magnesium alloy, ABS, PC, urethane resin/Acrylic baking finish (sealer: epoxy baking finish) |
| Slider stop damper (Display back) | Elastomeric resin |
| Lens cover, Mobile Light cover | Acrylic resin |
| Screw cover (Display back) | PET |
| Display window | Tempered glass |
| Infrared Port | ABS resin (infrared grade) |
| Antenna (for TV reception) | ABS resin/Brass/PA/SUS/NiTi alloy/Piano wire/Elastomeric resin |
| Battery, Multi Selector, Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Shortcuts & A/a Key, TV & Text Key, Start Key, Power On/Off Key, Clear/Back Key, Keypad | PC resin |

| Parts | Materials & Finishing |
|--|---|
| Side Keys | PC resin/UV painting |
| Headphone Port Cover, External Device Port Cover | Elastomeric resin, PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting) |
| Charging Terminals | SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel) |
| Screw (all pieces) | SWCH16A/Ni plating |

Accessory

Battery

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Voltage | 3.7V |
| Battery Type | Lithium-ion |
| Capacity | 800 mAh |
| Dimensions (W x H x D) | Approximately 35.2 x 54.9 x 3.9 mm (without protruding parts) |



Basic Operations

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| Standby Shortcut | 30 per sheet |
|-------------------------|--------------|

Text Entry

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| User Dictionary | 250 entries (5 per reading) Word: 30 characters Reading: 8 hiragana |
| Acquire Dictionary | 5 dictionaries |
| Paste List | 10 text strings |
| Recoverable Deleted Characters | 15,360 characters (messaging character entry limit) |

Phone Book

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Entry | 1,000 entries |
| Name/Reading | Last/First: 32 characters each |
| Phone Number | 5 numbers (32 digits each) |
| Mail Address | 5 addresses (128 characters each) |
| Category | 16 Categories |
| Address | Postal Code: 20 characters Country: 32 characters Others: 64 characters each |
| Office | 32 characters per item |
| Homepage | 1,024 bytes |
| Note | 256 characters |
| Mail Groups | 20 Groups (20 members each) Group name: 16 characters |
| S! Addressbook Back-up | Log: 10 Backup/Restore/ Synchronization records |

Calling

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Dialed Numbers | Dialed Numbers: 30 records Dialed Frequency: 10 records |
| Received Calls | 30 records |
| Answer Phone/ Caller Voice | 20 messages or 90 seconds |
| Auto Answer List | 10 numbers |
| Decoration Call | 100 KB including 20 characters |

Messaging

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---|---|
| Memory | Received Msg. | 10 MB or 3,000 messages |
| | Drafts | |
| | Sent Messages | 5 MB (or 1,000 messages for Sent Messages) |
| | Unsent Messages | |
| | Templates | 100 MB (shared with Data Folder and S! Appli Library) |
| PC Mail/S! Mail Subject | 512 single-byte characters | |
| PC Mail/S! Mail Message | Approximately 30,000 single-byte characters | |
| SMS Message | 160 single-byte alphanumerics | |
| Auto Resend | 2 times | |
| Attachment | 20 files or 300 KB | |
| Send Reservation | 10 messages | |
| Speed Dial/Mail | 100 numbers/addresses | |
| Signature | 256 single-byte characters | |
| Recipient | 20 numbers/addresses | |
| Folder | 20 folders (20 sort keys each) | |
| Chat Folder | Memory | 300 messages per folder |
| | Folder | 10 folders (20 members each) |

| | | |
|---------------------------|---|------------|
| Graphic Mail | 1 sound or Flash® file, or 40 images/ My Pictograms (with 1 sound or Flash® file) | |
| 3D Pictogram | 150 characters | |
| Auto Reply | 20 numbers/addresses (256 single-byte characters each) | |
| Anti Spam Measures | Individual Permitted List | 20 entries |
| | | 20 entries |

PC Mail Settings

| | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| PC Mail Account | Account | 3 accounts |
| | Account Name | 20 characters |
| Set Receiving | User Name | 128 characters |
| | Password | 40 characters |
| | ReceivingServer | 128 characters |
| | Port Number | 1 to 65535 |
| Set Sending | Sender Name | 20 characters |
| | Mail Address | 128 characters |
| PC Mail DL | Individual Address | 20 addresses |

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

| | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|
| Download | Yahoo! Keitai | 300 KB per page |
| | PC Site Browser | 1 MB per file |
| History | 300 pages | |
| URL Entry Log | 10 URLs | |
| Bookmarks/ Saved Pages | 100 pages | |
| Tab | 3 tabs at one time | |
| Input Memory | 20 entries | |
| Streaming History | 20 URLs | |
| RSS Feeds | 30 entries (60 KB per entry) | |



Digital TV

| | | |
|---------------------------------|---|--|
| Recorded File | ISDB-T mobile Video profile (SD-Video standard) | |
| Recording Time (example) | Handset | Approximately 30 minutes |
| | Memory Card | Approximately 80 minutes on 256 MB Memory Card |
| Marker | 99 Markers (10 per file) | |
| Split File | 99 portions per file | |
| Time Shift Recording | 30 minutes | |
| Reservation List | 5 entries (4 hours each on 1 GB Memory Card) | |

Camera & Imaging

Mobile Camera

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| Effective Pixels | 5.2 Megapixels |
| Auto Shut-off Time | Approximately 3 minutes |

Photo Camera

| | | |
|--|--|-----------------------|
| Zoom | 1x - 31x | |
| Record Size (W x H dots) | 5M | 1944 x 2592 |
| | 3M | 1536 x 2048 (QXGA) |
| | Full HD | 1080 x 1920 |
| | 2M | 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) |
| | 1.2M | 960 x 1280 (Quad-VGA) |
| | Wallpaper | 480 x 1024 |
| | VGA | 480 x 640 |
| | Mail L | 240 x 320 (QVGA) |
| | Mail S | 120 x 160 (QQVGA) |
| Scanner Image Size (W x H dots) | Free, 1200 x 640, 480 x 1488, 1280 x 960 | |

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| File Format | JPEG |
| Memory | Approximately 1,065 files with default settings |
| File Name | yymmdd_hhmmss |
| Recording Distance | Macro: 10 cm |
| Face Auto Focus | VGA or larger |
| Other | Use 40 KB or smaller transparent PNG files as Frames |

Video Camera

| | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| Zoom | 1x - 15.9x (SubQCIF) | |
| Record Size (W x H dots) | Extended Video | 864 x 480 (Wide) |
| | | 640 x 480 (VGA) |
| | | 320 x 240 (QVGA) |
| | | 240 x 176 (HQVGA) |
| | | |
| | For Message | 176 x 144 (QCIF) |
| | | 128 x 96 (SubQCIF) |
| File Format | 3GP | |
| Recording Time per Shot | Extended Video | 30 minutes* on Memory Card |
| | For Message | 295 KB |
| File Name | yymmdd_hhmmss | |
| Recording Distance | 1.5 m in good light | |
| Still Image Capture | 3 images | |
| Recording Pause Supported | HQVGA or larger | |

*Varies with handset usage, location or settings.

Editing Images

| | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---|
| Picture Editor | Resize (W x H dots) | Wallpaper (480 x 1024) |
| | | Power On/Off (480 x 1024) |
| | | Incoming Call (320 x 320) |
| | | Alarm (480 x 208) |
| | | Pictogram (96 x 96) |
| | | VGA (480 x 640) |
| | | QVGA (240 x 320) |
| | | Cut |
| | Retouch | 52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images |
| | Paste | 16 characters |
| | Correction | 52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images |
| Composite | Merge Panorama | JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 240 x 320 dots |



Media Player

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Supported Formats | WMA (.wma), AAC (.mp4/.3gp/.m4a), Secure AAC (SD-Audio standard) (Some files may not play depending on sampling frequency and bit rate) |
|--------------------------|--|

S! Applications

| | |
|---------------|---|
| Memory | 100 items or 100 MB (shared with Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder) |
|---------------|---|

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Remote Control | Approximately 5 m |
|-----------------------|-------------------|

Data Folder & Memory Card

■ Data Folder

| | |
|---------------|--|
| Memory | 100 MB (shared with Templates folder and S! Appli Library) |
|---------------|--|

■ Memory Card

| | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Backup File Name | yymmddXX* (XX: 2 digits/alphabets) |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|

*yymmdd for Contents Keys.

PIM/Lifestyle Tools

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Calendar*/Tasks | 300 entries, Subject: 32 characters Description: 128 characters Location: 16 characters Set Holiday: 10 holidays |
|------------------------|---|

| | |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| Alarms | 5 entries, Subject: 9 characters |
|---------------|----------------------------------|

| | | |
|------------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| Wakeup TV | Auto Shut-off | Approximately 30 minutes |
|------------------|---------------|--------------------------|

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| Calculator | 999,999,999,999 |
|-------------------|-----------------|

| | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| Expenses Memo | 30 entries (999,999.99 yen each) |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| Osaifu-Keitai® | Remote Lock password: 5 - 16 single-byte alphanumerics |
|-----------------------|---|

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Pretense Call | Name: 10 characters Phone Number: 17 digits |
|----------------------|--|

*Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of October 2008.

Clocks/Gauges Tools

| | |
|------------------|--|
| Stopwatch | 23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds in 0.1-second increments Lap time: 4 records |
|------------------|--|

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Countdown Timer | 60 minutes in 1-second increments |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|

| | |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| World Clock | City name: 16 characters |
|--------------------|--------------------------|

Doc./Rec. Tools

| | | |
|-------------------|---|--|
| Dictionary | Meikyo Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 47,100 words/phrases Genius English-Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 45,700 words/phrases Genius Japanese-English Dictionary: Approximately 55,800 words/phrases | |
|-------------------|---|--|

| | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|---|
| Document Viewer | Supported Formats | PDF (.pdf) Microsoft® Excel® (.xls) Microsoft® Word (.doc) Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt) |
| | File Size | 10 MB |

| | |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| Notepad | 500 entries (8,192 characters each) |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|

| | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|----------------------------------|
| Voice Recorder | For Message | Approximately 3 minutes per file |
| | Extended Voice | 99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds |

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------|----------|
| Scan Barcode (Continuous Mode) | UPC/JAN | 50 codes |
|---------------------------------------|---------|----------|

| | |
|----------------|----------|
| QR Code | 16 codes |
|----------------|----------|

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| Create QR Code | Equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji |
|-----------------------|---|

| | |
|------------------|----------------|
| Scan Text | 256 characters |
|------------------|----------------|

Entertainment

| | |
|---------------|---|
| Widget | 4 widgets (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status: 1, other: 3) per sheet |
|---------------|---|

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| S! Quick News | Special: 1 item News Flash: 1 item General: 4 items |
|----------------------|---|

| | |
|----------------|--|
| e-Books | Copy text strings of up to 20 characters |
|----------------|--|

Communication Services

■ S! Loop

| | |
|---------------------|---------|
| S! Loop List | 5 items |
|---------------------|---------|

■ S! Friend's Status

| | |
|---------------|------------|
| Member | 30 members |
|---------------|------------|

| | |
|------------------|--|
| My Status | Name: 7 characters Comment: 15 characters Status Label: 4 characters |
|------------------|--|

| | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| Status Templates | Template name: 12 characters |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|

■ S! Circle Talk

| | |
|--------------------|------------|
| Participant | 11 members |
|--------------------|------------|

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| Speak Time | 30 seconds each |
|-------------------|-----------------|

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Member List | 30 entries (10 members per Group) |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|



Connectivity

■ Infrared

| | | |
|-------------------|---|--------------|
| Infrared Transfer | IrMC 1.1 | |
| | Range | Within 20 cm |
| IrSS Transfer | Receive 2,500 KB or smaller JPEG images | |

■ Bluetooth®

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Communication System | Bluetooth® specification Ver. 2.0 |
| Supported Profiles | Headset Profile |
| | Hands-Free Profile |
| | Dial-up Networking Profile |
| | Object Push Profile |
| | File Transfer Profile |
| | Basic Imaging Profile |
| | Advanced Audio Distribution Profile |
| | Audio/Video Remote Control Profile |
| Output | Bluetooth® Power Class 2 |
| Range | Within 10 m |
| Device Search | 16 devices |
| Pairing | 32 devices |
| Device Name | 16 characters |
| Printing | JPEG/PNG images |

Network

| | |
|-------------|---|
| Add Network | 5 Networks Country/Network code: 3 digits Name: 25 single-byte characters |
|-------------|---|

Reference URLs

■ SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

<http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/>

■ microSD™ Memory Card
Compatibility

From PC (Japanese)

http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html

From Handset (Japanese)

<http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/>

■ S! Addressbook Back-up

<http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/service/advanced/sab/>

■ SVG-T

From Handset (Japanese)

http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svgt/index_pdc.html

■ Association for Promotion of Digital
Broadcasting

From PC

<http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/>

From Handset (Japanese)

<http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>



Menu List

Messaging

| Function | Refer to | |
|-------------------|------------------|--------|
| Received Msg. | P.6-10 | |
| Create Message | P.6-4 | |
| Retrieve New Msg. | P.6-21 | |
| Drafts | P.6-27 | |
| Templates | P.6-20 | |
| Sent Messages | P.6-10 | |
| Unsent Messages | P.6-27 | |
| Chat Folder | P.6-13 | |
| Server Mail Box | Mail List | P.6-21 |
| | Retrieve All | P.6-21 |
| | Delete All | P.6-25 |
| | Mailbox Volume | P.6-27 |
| Create New SMS | P.6-7 | |
| Settings | Address Settings | P.6-3 |
| | General Settings | P.6-27 |
| | S! Mail Settings | P.6-29 |
| | PC Mail Settings | P.6-16 |
| | SMS Settings | P.6-31 |
| | Speed Dial/Mail | P.6-18 |
| Set Mail Group | P.6-14 | |
| Memory Status | P.6-24 | |

Settings: General Settings

| | Function | Refer to |
|------------------|--------------------|----------|
| Send/ Compose | Delivery Report | P.6-28 |
| | Reply to Settings | P.6-28 |
| | Reply With Text | P.6-28 |
| | Auto Reply | P.6-23 |
| | Set Quick Reply | P.6-23 |
| | Auto Resend | P.6-28 |
| | Sending Status | P.6-28 |
| Receive | Message Notice | P.6-28 |
| | Link to Feeling | P.6-29 |
| | 3D Pictogram | P.6-29 |
| | Animation View | P.6-28 |
| | Anti Spam Measures | P.6-12 |
| | Report Spam | P.6-28 |
| | Scroll Unit | P.6-27 |
| | Message List View | P.6-27 |
| | Address View | P.6-27 |
| | Received Msg. View | P.6-28 |
| | Sent Msg. View | P.6-28 |
| Auto Delete | Received Msg. | P.6-28 |
| | Sent Messages | P.6-28 |

Settings: S! Mail Settings

| Function | Refer to |
|--------------------|----------|
| Message DL(Japan) | P.6-29 |
| Message DL(Abroad) | P.6-29 |
| Signature | P.6-18 |
| Picture Appearance | P.6-30 |
| Auto Play File | P.6-30 |
| Send File Settings | P.6-30 |

Settings: PC Mail Settings

| Function | Refer to |
|-----------------|----------|
| PC Mail Account | P.6-16 |
| PC Mail DL | P.6-30 |
| Check New Mail | P.6-31 |
| Word wrap | P.6-30 |

Settings: SMS Settings

| Function | Refer to |
|----------------|----------|
| Expiry Time | P.6-31 |
| Message Center | P.6-31 |
| Char-code | P.6-31 |

Yahoo! Keitai

| Function | Refer to |
|------------------|----------|
| Yahoo! Keitai | P.7-3 |
| Bookmarks | P.7-7 |
| Saved Pages | P.7-7 |
| Enter URL | P.7-3 |
| History | P.7-3 |
| PC Site Browser | P.7-4 |
| Browser Settings | P.7-14 |



■ PC Site Browser

| Function | Refer to |
|---------------|----------|
| Homepage | P.7-4 |
| Bookmarks | P.7-7 |
| Saved Pages | P.7-7 |
| Enter URL | P.7-4 |
| History | P.7-4 |
| RSS Feed | P.7-8 |
| Yahoo! Keitai | P.7-3 |

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|--------|
| PC Site Browser Settings | Font Size | P.7-14 |
| | Scroll Settings | P.7-14 |
| | Cursor Settings | P.7-14 |
| | Downloads | P.7-14 |
| | Memory Operation | P.7-14 |
| | Security Settings | P.7-15 |
| | Download to | P.7-14 |
| | Initialized Browser | P.7-15 |
| | Reset Settings | P.7-15 |
| | Warning Message | P.7-14 |
| Zoom Factor | P.7-10 | |
| Softkey Area | P.7-4 | |

■ Browser Settings

| Function | Refer to |
|---------------------|----------|
| Font Size | P.7-14 |
| Scroll Unit | P.7-14 |
| Cursor Settings | P.7-14 |
| Downloads | P.7-14 |
| Memory Operation | P.7-14 |
| Security Settings | P.7-15 |
| Download to | P.7-14 |
| Initialized Browser | P.7-15 |
| Reset Settings | P.7-15 |

S! Appli

| Function | Refer to |
|----------------------|----------|
| S! Appli Library | P.11-2 |
| Osaifu-Keitai | P.13-12 |
| Notification History | P.11-2 |
| Settings | P.11-4 |
| Information | P.11-4 |

■ Settings

| Function | Refer to | |
|----------------------|-----------------|--------|
| Application Volume | P.11-3 | |
| Backlight | P.11-4 | |
| Vibration | P.11-4 | |
| Synchronization | P.11-4 | |
| Notification Setting | P.11-4 | |
| Calls & Alarms | P.11-3 | |
| Screensaver | Switch On/Off | P.11-3 |
| | Activation Time | P.11-3 |
| | Stop Auto Start | P.11-3 |
| Surround | P.11-3 | |
| Set to Default | P.11-4 | |
| Memory All Clear | P.11-4 | |

TV

| Function | Refer to |
|------------------|----------|
| Digital TV | P.8-4 |
| TV Player | P.8-8 |
| TV-Image Folder | P.8-6 |
| TV Link | P.8-13 |
| TV Listing | P.8-5 |
| Familink Remote | P.11-2 |
| Reservation List | P.8-10 |
| Settings | P.8-12 |

■ Settings

| Function | Refer to | |
|------------------------|--------------------|--------|
| TV Alarm | P.8-16 | |
| Broadcast Data | Set Recording | P.8-14 |
| | Image Location | P.8-14 |
| | Notify Connection | P.8-13 |
| | Location | P.8-13 |
| | Manufacture Number | P.8-13 |
| Delete StationData | P.8-13 | |
| Screen Size(Portrait) | P.8-11 | |
| Screen Size(Landscape) | P.8-11 | |
| Landscape Sets. | Display Icon | P.8-12 |
| | Display Panel | P.8-12 |
| Panel On/Off | P.8-12 | |
| Sound Output | P.8-12 | |
| 🔊 Sound Output | P.8-12 | |
| Set Call Time Shift | P.8-14 | |
| Calls & Alarms | P.8-12 | |
| TV Reserve Prior | P.8-16 | |
| Save Recording to | P.8-14 | |
| Auto Exit Time | P.8-12 | |
| Smooth Mode | P.8-11 | |



Camera

■ Photo Camera

| Function | | Refer to |
|-------------------|--------------------|----------|
| Shooting Settings | Exposure | P.9-15 |
| | Focus Setting | P.9-15 |
| | White Balance | P.9-16 |
| Modes | Add Frame | P.9-7 |
| | Continuous Shoot | P.9-7 |
| | Camera Effects | P.9-8 |
| | Shake Reducing | P.9-16 |
| | Panorama/Scanner | P.9-8 |
| Barcode/Scan | | P.15-10 |
| Data Folder | | P.9-15 |
| Picture Size | | P.9-16 |
| Scene | | P.9-16 |
| Picture Quality | | P.9-15 |
| Self-timer | | P.9-7 |
| Settings | Display Indicators | P.9-16 |
| | Shutter Sound | P.9-16 |
| | Save Pictures to | P.9-15 |
| | Auto Save | P.9-15 |
| | Panorama Settings | P.9-16 |
| | Set Remote Shutter | P.9-16 |
| Help | | P.9-15 |
| Mobile Light | | P.9-15 |

■ Video Camera

| Function | | Refer to |
|------------------|----------------|----------|
| Record Settings | Exposure | P.9-15 |
| | Focus Setting | P.9-15 |
| Display Size | | P.9-16 |
| Data Folder | | P.9-15 |
| Record Time/Size | | P.9-16 |
| Microphone | | P.9-16 |
| Video Quality | | P.9-15 |
| Self-timer | | P.9-7 |
| Settings | Save Videos to | P.9-15 |
| | Auto Save | P.9-15 |
| | Video Encode | P.9-16 |
| Help | | P.9-15 |
| Mobile Light | | P.9-15 |

Entertainment

| Function | | Refer to |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|----------|
| Mobile Widget | | P.16-2 |
| S! Quick News | | P.16-5 |
| S! Information Channel/Weather | What's New | P.16-6 |
| | Back Issue | P.16-6 |
| | Registration/Cancel | P.16-6 |
| | Get Latest Contents | P.16-11 |
| | Notification | P.16-11 |
| | Weather Indicator | P.16-6 |
| BookSurfing | | P.16-7 |
| e-Book Viewer | | P.16-7 |

■ S! Quick News

| Function | | Refer to |
|--------------------|----------------------------|----------|
| S! Quick News List | | P.16-5 |
| S! Loop List | | P.16-10 |
| Settings | Automatic Update | P.16-10 |
| | Show Image | P.16-10 |
| | Check Schedule | P.16-10 |
| | Change Skin | P.16-10 |
| | Delete S! Quick News Lists | P.16-11 |

■ S! Information Channel/Weather: Weather Indicator

| Function | | Refer to |
|---------------|-----------------|----------|
| Weather | | P.16-11 |
| Manual Update | | P.16-6 |
| Settings | Standby Setting | P.16-11 |
| | Weather Notif. | P.16-11 |
| | Icon Update | P.16-11 |



Tools (PIM/Lifestyle)

| Function | Refer to |
|---------------|----------|
| Calendar | P.13-2 |
| Alarms | P.13-6 |
| Wakeup TV | P.13-8 |
| Tasks | P.13-4 |
| Calculator | P.13-10 |
| Expenses Memo | P.13-11 |
| Osaifu-Keitai | P.13-12 |
| Pretense Call | P.13-15 |

■ Osaifu-Keitai

| Function | Refer to | |
|------------------|--------------------|---------|
| Lifestyle-Appli | P.13-12 | |
| IC Card Settings | IC Card Status | P.13-21 |
| | IC Card Lock | P.13-13 |
| | Remote Lock | P.13-13 |
| | Interface Settings | P.13-21 |
| | Balance Info | P.13-21 |
| | Set to Default | P.13-21 |

Tools (Clocks/Gauges)

| Function | Refer to |
|-----------------|----------|
| Stopwatch | P.14-2 |
| Countdown Timer | P.14-3 |
| World Clock | P.14-4 |
| Hour Minder | P.14-5 |
| Pedometer | P.14-6 |
| Compass | P.14-8 |
| S! GPS Nav | P.14-9 |
| Battery Meter | P.14-11 |

Tools (Doc./Rec.)

| Function | Refer to | |
|-----------------|-------------------|---------|
| Dictionary | P.15-2 | |
| Search | P.15-4 | |
| Document Viewer | P.15-5 | |
| Notepad | P.15-6 | |
| Scratch Pad | P.15-7 | |
| ASCII Art | P.15-8 | |
| Voice Recorder | Record Time | P.15-15 |
| | Ring Songs-Tones | P.15-9 |
| | Save Recording to | P.15-15 |
| Barcode/ Scan | Scan Barcode | P.15-10 |
| | Open Barcode | P.15-15 |
| | Create QR Code | P.15-11 |
| | Scan Card | P.15-12 |
| | Scan Text | P.15-13 |
| | Scanned Results | P.15-16 |
| Phone Help | P.2-22 | |

Data Folder

| Function | Refer to |
|-------------------|----------|
| Pictures | P.12-2 |
| DCIM | P.12-2 |
| Ring Songs-Tones | P.15-9 |
| S! Appli | P.11-2 |
| Widget | P.16-2 |
| Music | P.12-2 |
| Videos | P.12-2 |
| Lifestyle-Appli | P.13-12 |
| Books | P.12-2 |
| Customized Screen | P.2-20 |
| Status Templates | P.12-2 |
| Decoration Call | P.5-16 |
| Flash® | P.12-2 |
| Other Documents | P.12-2 |
| Memory Status | P.12-2 |



Media Player

| Function | Refer to | |
|-----------|----------------|--------|
| Music | P.10-5 | |
| Videos | P.10-6 | |
| Streaming | P.7-11 | |
| Settings | Sound Output | P.10-8 |
| | Delete All WMA | P.10-9 |
| MTP Mode | P.10-4 | |

Music

| Function | Refer to | |
|-------------------|---------------|--------|
| Last Played Music | P.10-8 | |
| My Music | P.10-7 | |
| SD AUDIO | P.10-5 | |
| WMA | P.10-5 | |
| Download Music | P.10-3 | |
| Music Search | P.10-3 | |
| Settings | Sound Effects | P.10-8 |
| | Playback Mode | P.10-8 |

Videos

| Function | Refer to | |
|-------------------|------------------|--------|
| Last Played Video | P.10-8 | |
| My Videos | P.10-6 | |
| SD VIDEO | P.10-6 | |
| Download Videos | P.10-3 | |
| Settings | Playback Mode | P.10-8 |
| | Backlight | P.10-8 |
| | Display Size | P.10-8 |
| | Sound Effects | P.10-8 |
| | Web Link Setting | P.10-8 |

Communication

| Function | Refer to |
|--------------------|----------|
| S! Town | P.17-2 |
| S! Loop | P.17-2 |
| S! Friend's Status | P.17-3 |
| S! Circle Talk | P.17-6 |
| Near chat | P.17-8 |

Phone

| Function | Refer to | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|--------|
| Phone Book | P.4-4 | |
| Add New Entry | P.4-2 | |
| Information | P.2-31 | |
| Call Log | P.5-10 | |
| Play Messages | P.5-5 | |
| Call Voicemail | P.5-13 | |
| Category Control | P.4-3 | |
| My Details | P.2-22 | |
| Speed Dial/Mail | P.5-9 | |
| Mail Groups | P.6-14 | |
| S! Addressbook Backup | P.4-7 | |
| Ph.Book Settings | Sort Entries | P.4-4 |
| | Select Phone Book | P.4-10 |
| | Save New Entry | P.4-10 |
| | New Number Prompt | P.4-8 |
| | Vertical Display | P.4-8 |
| Horizontal Display | P.4-8 | |
| Call Log Setting | P.5-18 | |
| Manage Entries | Copy All | P.4-10 |
| | Memory Status | P.4-10 |
| | Change Mode(All) | P.4-10 |
| | Delete All | P.4-10 |

Settings

Phone

| Function | Refer to | |
|------------------------|-----------------|--------|
| Mode Settings | P.2-32 | |
| Display | P.2-19 | |
| Customized Screen | P.2-20 | |
| Sounds & Alerts | P.2-21 | |
| Date & Time | P.2-30 | |
| Set Key Light | P.2-35 | |
| 言語選択 (Language) | P.2-33 | |
| User Dictionary | P.3-7 | |
| Set Key Shortcut | P.2-11 | |
| Motion Control | Display Change | P.2-32 |
| | Quick Shortcut | P.2-32 |
| | Action Settings | P.2-16 |
| | Action Test | P.2-32 |
| Touch Panel | Adjust Sensor | P.2-32 |
| | Touch Reaction | P.2-31 |
| | Keypad Lock | P.2-31 |
| Compensation | P.2-9 | |
| Ringer Output | P.2-36 | |
| Earpiece Volume | P.5-15 | |
| Change Menu | P.2-10 | |
| Double Number Settings | Switch On/Off | P.2-27 |
| | Double Mode | P.2-29 |
| | Password Entry | P.2-37 |
| | Mode Name | P.2-37 |
| | Reject By Line | P.2-37 |
| | Show Missed | P.2-37 |
| | Packet Warning | P.2-37 |
| | Send Priority | P.2-37 |



| Function | | Refer to |
|-----------------|----------------|----------|
| Locks | | P.2-23 |
| Software Update | | P.2-26 |
| Master Reset | Reset Settings | P.2-37 |
| | Reset All | P.2-37 |

Phone: Display

| Function | | Refer to |
|------------------|--------------------|----------|
| Wallpaper | | P.2-19 |
| System Graphics | | P.2-35 |
| VeilView | Pattern Setting | P.2-36 |
| | Density Setting | P.2-36 |
| Display Effects | | P.2-33 |
| Font Settings | | P.2-18 |
| Standby Display | Clock/Calendar | P.2-33 |
| | Show Operator Name | P.2-33 |
| | Pedometer | P.14-12 |
| Vivid Mode | | P.2-33 |
| Mini Battery | | P.2-33 |
| Greeting Message | | P.2-33 |
| Backlight | | P.2-34 |
| Display Saving | | P.2-35 |
| Display Manner | | P.2-35 |
| CLS Disp. Time | | P.2-35 |
| Caller Display | | P.2-35 |
| Dial Number | | P.2-33 |

Phone: Sounds & Alerts

| Function | | Refer to |
|-----------------|--|----------|
| Volume | | P.2-21 |
| Ringtone/videos | | P.2-21 |
| System Sounds | | P.2-34 |
| Vibration | | P.2-21 |
| Event Light | | P.2-34 |
| Status Light | | P.2-34 |
| Any Key Answer | | P.2-35 |
| Surround | | P.2-34 |

Phone: Date & Time

| Function | | Refer to |
|-----------------|--|----------|
| Set Date/Time | | P.2-30 |
| Time Correction | | P.2-30 |
| Daylight Saving | | P.2-30 |
| Set Time Zone | | P.2-30 |
| Clock/Calendar | | P.2-33 |
| World Clock | | P.14-4 |
| Alarms | | P.13-6 |
| Set Holiday | | P.13-16 |
| Time Format | | P.2-30 |
| Date Format | | P.2-30 |
| Calendar Format | | P.2-30 |

Phone: Locks

| Function | | Refer to |
|--------------------|--|----------|
| PIN Entry | | P.2-24 |
| Change PIN2 | | P.2-36 |
| Function Lock | | P.2-24 |
| IP Service Setting | | P.2-36 |
| Application Lock | | P.2-25 |
| History Lock | | P.2-25 |
| Show Secret Data | | P.2-25 |
| Set Lock Message | | P.2-36 |
| Chg. Handset Code | | P.2-23 |

Connectivity

| Function | | Refer to |
|--------------------|------------------------|----------|
| Bluetooth | | P.18-7 |
| Infrared | Switch On/Off | P.18-3 |
| | Send All | P.18-4 |
| IC Transmission | Recv. Forwarded | P.18-5 |
| | Send All | P.18-6 |
| USB Mode | Mass Storage | P.18-10 |
| | MTP Mode | P.10-4 |
| USB Charge | | P.2-36 |
| Memory Card | | P.9-14 |
| Backup/ Restore | Backup All Items | P.12-13 |
| | Backup Selected Items | P.12-10 |
| | Restore All Items | P.12-13 |
| | Restore Selected Items | P.12-10 |
| | Settings/Manage | P.12-13 |



Connectivity: Bluetooth

| Function | Refer to |
|--------------------|----------|
| Switch On/Off | P.18-8 |
| Add Device | P.18-8 |
| Paired Devices | P.18-8 |
| Send All | P.18-9 |
| Setting Watch | P.18-12 |
| My Device Settings | P.18-11 |
| My Device Details | P.18-11 |

Connectivity: Memory Card

| | Function | Refer to |
|------|-------------------|----------|
| DPOF | Number of Copies | P.9-14 |
| | Settings | P.9-18 |
| | Check Settings | P.9-14 |
| | Reset Settings | P.9-18 |
| | SD Local Contents | P.12-12 |
| | Format Card | P.12-7 |
| | Memory Status | P.12-2 |

Call

| | Function | Refer to |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|----------|
| Call Time & Cost | Call Timers | P.5-11 |
| | Data Counter | P.5-19 |
| | Call Costs | P.5-11 |
| | Switch On/Off | P.5-5 |
| Answer Phone | Answer Time | P.5-14 |
| | Outgoing Message | P.5-14 |
| | Volume | P.5-14 |
| | Voicemail | P.5-12 |
| Voicemail/ Divert | Diverts | P.5-12 |
| | Cancel All | P.5-13 |
| | Status | P.5-19 |
| Video Call | Camera Picture | P.5-22 |
| | Incoming Picture | P.5-22 |
| | Outgoing Picture | P.5-22 |
| | Hold Guidance Pict | P.5-22 |
| | Backlight | P.5-22 |
| | Loudspeaker | P.5-22 |
| | Mute Microphone | P.5-22 |
| | Remote Monitor | P.5-14 |
| | Show My Number | P.5-21 |
| | ^[out] Missed Calls | P.5-13 |
| | Int'l Calling | P.5-15 |
| Disp. Time/ Cost | Display Call Cost | P.5-18 |
| | Call Time Counter | P.5-18 |
| Call Barring | Outgoing Calls | P.5-20 |
| | Incoming Calls | P.5-21 |
| | Rejected Numbers | P.5-20 |
| | Change NW Password | P.5-20 |
| | Minute Minder | P.5-18 |

| | Function | Refer to |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------|
| Decoration Call | Switch On/Off | P.5-16 |
| | Play in Receiving | P.5-16 |
| | Notice | P.5-17 |
| Slider Settings | Open to Answer | P.5-21 |
| | Close to | P.5-21 |
| | Auto Answer | P.5-21 |
| | Call Waiting | P.5-19 |

Network

| | Function | Refer to |
|--|------------------|----------|
| | Select Network | P.2-30 |
| | Select Service | P.2-31 |
| | Offline Mode | P.2-17 |
| | Retrieve NW Info | P.2-30 |
| | Network Info | P.2-31 |
| | External Device | P.2-31 |



Index

| Number | |
|----------------------------------|------------|
| 3D Pictogram | 6-8, 6-29 |
| A | |
| AC Charger | 1-7 |
| Accessing Functions | 2-6 |
| Accessory | v |
| After-Sales Services | 19-33 |
| Alarms | 13-6 |
| Canceling | 13-7 |
| Deleting | 13-7 |
| Editing entries | 13-19 |
| For Manner Mode | 13-19 |
| Link to World Clk | 13-19 |
| Animation View | 6-8 |
| Answer Phone | 5-5 |
| Antenna (for TV reception) | 1-2 |
| Anti Spam Measures | 6-12, 6-26 |
| Any Key Answer | 2-35 |
| Application Lock | 2-25 |
| Auto Focus | 9-2 |
| Auto Reply | 6-23 |
| Auto Resend | 6-2, 6-28 |
| Auto Retry Function | 6-2 |
| B | |
| Backlight | 2-34 |
| Backup | 12-9 |
| Battery | 1-6, 1-7 |
| Battery Cover | 1-2 |
| Battery Meter | 14-11 |
| Bluetooth® | 18-7 |
| Bluetooth® Watches | 18-12 |
| Bookmarks | 7-7 |
| Deleting titles | 7-11 |
| Editing titles | 7-11 |

| BookSurfing® | 16-7 |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| C | |
| Calculator | 13-10, 13-20 |
| Calendar | 13-2 |
| Call Barring | 5-12, 5-19 |
| Call Forwarding | 5-12 |
| Call Log | 5-10, 5-17 |
| Call Time & Cost | 5-11 |
| Data Counter | 5-19 |
| Resetting | 5-18 |
| Call Time Counter | 5-18 |
| Call Waiting | 5-12, 5-19 |
| Call Waiting (answering Line 2) | 5-19 |
| Caller ID | 5-12, 5-21 |
| Camera | 9-2 |
| Auto Save | 9-15 |
| Capturing Still Images | 9-4 |
| Macro | 9-15 |
| Light (Mobile Light) | 9-15 |
| Manual (Manual Focus) | 9-15 |
| Quality | 9-15 |
| Recording Video | 9-6 |
| Save to | 9-15 |
| Self-timer | 9-7 |
| Center Access Code | 1-12 |
| Change NW Password | 5-20 |
| Change PIN | 2-36 |
| Change PIN2 | 2-36 |
| Character Code List | 19-7 |
| Charging | 1-7 |
| Charging Terminals | 1-2 |
| Chat Folder | 6-13 |
| Delete Folder | 6-26 |
| Deleting all messages | 6-26 |
| Clock/Calendar | 2-33 |
| Communication Services | 17-1 |
| Compass | 14-8 |

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------|
| Composite | 9-10 |
| Countdown Timer | 14-3 |
| Customer Service | 19-34 |
| Customized Screen (Japanese) | 2-20 |

D

| | |
|-------------------------------------|------------|
| Data Broadcast (Japanese) | 8-5 |
| Change View (Data) | 8-13 |
| Returning to initial window | 8-13 |
| Set Recording | 8-14 |
| Data Folder | 12-2 |
| Date & Time | 2-30 |
| Daylight Saving | 2-30, 14-4 |
| Decoration Call | 5-8 |
| Delivery Report | 6-19, 6-28 |
| Dialing from Call Log records | 5-17 |
| Dictionary | 15-2 |
| Digital TV (→ TV) | 8-2 |
| Adding Reception Areas | 8-3 |
| Area Setup | 8-3 |
| Auto Exit Time | 8-12 |
| Calls & Alarms | 8-12 |
| Change Area | 8-11 |
| Image | 8-12 |
| Program Info. Search | 8-11 |
| Save Recording to | 8-14 |
| Screen (Screen Size) | 8-11 |
| Set Call Time Shift | 8-14 |
| Smooth Mode | 8-11 |
| Sound Output | 8-12 |
| Sound Output | 8-12 |
| Subtitle/Sound | 8-14 |
| Tone | 8-12 |
| TV Alarm | 8-16 |
| Display | 1-2, 2-3 |
| Display (settings) | 2-33 |
| Display Call Cost | 5-18 |
| Display Effects | 2-33 |



| | |
|---------------------------|------|
| Display Saving | 2-35 |
| Document Viewer | 15-5 |
| Double Number | 2-27 |
| Download Dictionary | 3-7 |
| DPOF | 9-14 |
| Add Date | 9-18 |
| Check Settings | 9-14 |
| For All Pictures | 9-14 |
| Index Print | 9-18 |

E

| | |
|--|-------------|
| Earpiece | 1-2 |
| Earpiece Volume | 5-15 |
| e-Book Library | 16-12 |
| e-Book Viewer | 16-7 |
| e-Books (Japanese) | 16-7, 16-12 |
| Emergency Calls | 5-2 |
| English | 2-33 |
| Event Light | 2-34 |
| Expenses Memo | 13-11 |
| Changing amount | 13-20 |
| Changing Category of saved entry | 13-20 |
| External Camera | 1-2 |
| External Device Port | 1-2 |

F

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------|
| Face Arrange | 9-12 |
| Feeling Mail (receiving) | 6-8 |
| Feeling Mail (sending) | 6-5 |
| FeliCa (→ Osaiifu-Keitai®) | 13-12 |
| Focus (locking) | 9-15 |
| Focus (Focus Setting) | 9-15 |
| Font Size | 2-18 |
| Format Card | 12-7 |
| Function Lock | 2-24 |

G

| | |
|---------------------|------------|
| General Notes | xii |
| Graphic Mail | 6-6, 6-20 |
| Group Calling | 5-12, 5-19 |

| | |
|--|------|
| Group Calling (opening another line) | 5-19 |
| Guide Usage Notes | ii |

H

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------------|
| Handset Code | 1-12, 2-23 |
| Handset Keys | 1-3 |
| Handset mail address | 6-3 |
| Handset Parts | 1-2 |
| Handset Power On/Off | 1-9 |
| Handset Responses | 2-21 |
| Headphone Port | 1-2 |
| Headphones (answering calls) | 5-14 |
| History Lock | 2-25 |
| Hold | 5-14 |
| Hour Minder | 14-5, 14-12 |

I

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----------|
| IC Card | 13-13 |
| IC Transmission | 18-5 |
| Indicators | 1-10 |
| Camera (Viewfinder) | 9-3 |
| Messaging (message list) | 6-9 |
| Music Playback Window | 10-5 |
| Video Playback Window | 10-6 |
| Information window | 2-3 |
| Infrared | 18-2 |
| Infrared Port | 1-2 |
| Internal Antenna | 1-2 |
| International calls | 5-4, 5-15 |
| Internet | 7-2 |
| Accessing | 7-3, 7-4 |
| Basic Operations | 7-5 |
| Enter URL | 7-9 |
| Saving pages/Bookmarks | 7-7 |
| IP Service Setting | 2-36 |
| IRSS Transfer | 18-2 |

K

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------|
| Key Assignments | 19-4 |
| Keypad Lock | 2-2, 2-31 |

L

| | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| Language | 2-33 |
| Large Font Menu | 2-18 |
| Light Sensor | 1-2, 2-35, 8-12 |
| Link to Feeling | 6-29 |
| Link to World Clk | 13-19, 14-12 |
| Locks | 2-24 |
| Loudspeaker | 5-15, 5-22, 17-10 |

M

| | |
|--|------------|
| Mail Groups | 6-14 |
| Changing members | 6-26 |
| Deleting | 6-26 |
| Edit Name | 6-26 |
| Main Menu | 2-7 |
| Manner mode | 2-17 |
| Mass Storage | 18-10 |
| Master Reset | 2-37 |
| Format Card | 12-7 |
| Reset All | 2-37 |
| Reset Settings | 2-37 |
| Media Player | 10-2 |
| Delete All WMA | 10-9 |
| Playlists | 10-7, 10-9 |
| Sound Output | 10-8 |
| Memory All Clear (S! Applications) | 11-4 |
| Memory Card | 12-6 |
| Format Card | 12-7 |
| Opening files | 12-8 |
| Memory Card Structure & Contents | 12-5 |
| Menu List | 19-19 |
| Camera | 19-21 |
| Communication | 19-23 |
| Data Folder | 19-22 |
| Entertainment | 19-21 |
| Media Player | 19-23 |
| Messaging | 19-19 |
| Phone | 19-23 |
| S! Appli | 19-20 |



| | |
|--|-----------------------|
| Settings | 19-23 |
| Tools | 19-22 |
| TV | 19-20 |
| Yahoo! Keitai | 19-19 |
| Message List View | 6-27 |
| Message Notice | 6-28 |
| Messages (creating/sending).... | 6-4, 6-7, 6-17 |
| Date & Time | 6-19 |
| Drafts | 6-27 |
| Edit | 6-27 |
| Edit & Send | 6-27 |
| Messaging Settings | 6-19 |
| Preview Message | 6-4 |
| Recipients (adding) | 6-18 |
| Recipients (selecting/entering) | 6-18 |
| Resend | 6-27 |
| Save to Drafts | 6-19 |
| Set Auto Play File | 6-20 |
| Set Sent Cancel | 6-19 |
| Signature | 6-18 |
| Speed Dial/Mail | 6-18 |
| Templates | 6-20 |
| Within the Network | 6-19 |
| Messages (deleting)..... | 6-17, 6-24 |
| Auto Delete | 6-28 |
| Messages (forwarding)..... | 6-27 |
| Messages (protecting)..... | 6-10 |
| Messages (receiving/checking) | 6-8 |
| 3D Pictogram | 6-8 |
| Copying text | 6-22 |
| Mail List | 6-21 |
| Opening new mail out of Standby | 6-21 |
| Retrieve New | 6-25 |
| Retrieving New PC Mail | 6-17 |
| Retrieving new S! Mail manually | 6-21 |
| Save to Data Folder | 6-22 |
| Save to Phone Book | 6-22 |
| Scroll Unit | 6-27 |
| Using linked info | 6-22 |
| View Mail Address | 6-24 |

| | |
|--|-------------------|
| Messages (sorting) | 6-12 |
| Anti Spam Measures | 6-12, 6-26 |
| Classify | 6-26 |
| Move to Folder | 6-25 |
| Messaging (→ SMS, S! Mail, PC Mail) | 6-2 |
| Color Label | 6-24 |
| Folders (adding) | 6-25 |
| Folders (deleting) | 6-25 |
| Folders (renaming) | 6-25 |
| General Settings | 6-27 |
| Search | 6-11, 6-25 |
| Selecting multiple messages | 6-24 |
| Set Secret | 6-11 |
| Sort | 6-24 |
| Unset Secret | 6-25 |
| Window Description | 6-9 |
| Microphone | 1-2 |
| Minute Minder | 5-18 |
| Missed Call Notification | 5-13 |
| Mobile Light | 1-2 |
| Mobile Widget | 16-2 |
| Mode Settings | 2-32 |
| Motion Control | 2-15 |
| MTP Mode | 10-4 |
| Multi Job | 2-14 |
| Music (deleting) | 10-9 |
| Music (downloading) | 10-3 |
| Music (playing) | 10-5, 10-8 |
| My Details | 2-22 |
| Sending via Bluetooth® | 18-12 |
| Sending via IC Transmission | 18-11 |
| Sending via Infrared | 18-11 |

N

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| Near Chat (Japanese) | 17-8 |
| Network Password | 1-12 |
| Notepad | 15-6 |
| Change Category | 15-14 |
| Edit Text | 15-14 |

O

| | |
|--|--------------|
| Offline Mode | 2-17 |
| Optional Services | 5-12 |
| Optional Services (checking status) | 5-19 |
| Osaifu-Keitai® | 13-12 |
| Balance Info | 13-21 |
| IC Card Settings | 13-13 |
| Locking | 13-13 |
| Set to Default | 13-21 |

P

| | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| Pager Code List | 19-6 |
| PC (connecting handset) | 18-10 |
| PC Mail | 6-2, 6-15 |
| PC Mail (sending) | 6-17 |
| PC Mail Settings | 6-30 |
| PC Site Browser | 7-4 |
| PC Site Browser Settings | 7-14 |
| Pedometer | 14-6 |
| Pen Light | 2-22 |
| Phone Book (deleting) | 4-10 |
| Phone Book (editing) | 4-9 |
| Phone Book (saving) | 4-2, 4-8 |
| Phone Book (using) | 4-4, 4-9 |
| Phone Book search | 4-4 |
| Phone Help | 2-22 |
| Picture Editor | 9-10 |
| PIN Entry | 2-24 |
| PIN Lock | 1-4 |
| PIN & PIN2 | 1-4 |
| Playlists | 10-7 |
| Pretense Call | 13-15 |
| Printing (Bluetooth®) | 9-14 |

Q

| | |
|-------------------------------|--------------|
| QR Code | 15-11 |
| Quick Operations | 2-6 |
| Quick Reply | 6-23 |



R

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Received Msg. View | 6-28 |
| Record Caller Voice | 5-15 |
| Reference URLs | 19-18 |
| Reject (calls) | 5-14 |
| Rejected Numbers | 5-20 |
| Remote Lock (Osaifu-Keitai®) | 13-13 |
| Call Remote Lock | 13-14 |
| Count for Lock | 13-21 |
| Mail Remote Lock | 13-13 |
| Notice Settings | 13-21 |
| Remote Monitor | 5-14 |
| Reply | 6-9 |
| Auto Reply | 6-23 |
| Quick Reply | 6-23 |
| Reply With Text | 6-28 |
| Report Spam | 6-23 |
| Reset (→ Master Reset) | 2-37 |
| Reset All | 2-37 |
| Reset Settings | 2-37 |
| Retrieving Network Information | 1-9 |
| RSS Feeds | 7-8 |

S

| | |
|---|-------------|
| S! Addressbook Back-up | 4-5 |
| Confirming user ID & password | 4-11 |
| Set Auto Sync | 4-11 |
| Sync History | 4-11 |
| S! Applications | 11-2 |
| S! Circle Talk | 17-6, 17-10 |
| Accepting requests | 17-7 |
| Editing member list | 17-10 |
| Initiating | 17-7 |
| IP Service Setting | 2-36 |
| Loudspeaker | 17-7 |
| Registering Members | 17-6 |
| S! Friend's Status | 17-3, 17-9 |
| S! GPS Navi | 14-9 |
| S! Information Channel (Japanese) | 16-6 |

| | |
|---|--------------------|
| Get Latest Contents | 16-11 |
| S! Information Channel page Options | 16-11 |
| Weather Indicator | 16-6 |
| S! Loop (Japanese) | 17-2 |
| S! Mail | 6-2 |
| S! Mail Settings | 6-29 |
| S! Mail (sending) | 6-4 |
| S! Quick News (Japanese) | 16-5 |
| Automatic Update | 16-10 |
| Deleting items | 16-10 |
| S! Loop List | 16-10 |
| S! Town (Japanese) | 17-2 |
| Safety Precautions | vi |
| SAR | xviii |
| Saved Pages | 7-7 |
| Scan Barcode | 15-10, 15-15 |
| Scan Card | 15-12, 15-17 |
| Scan Text | 15-13 |
| Scanning during text entry | 15-18 |
| Using scan results | 15-18 |
| Schedules (→ Calendar) | 13-2 |
| Scratch Pad | 15-7 |
| Screenshots (capturing) | 8-6 |
| Search | 6-11, 15-4 |
| Security Codes | 1-12 |
| Sent Msg. View | 6-28 |
| Set as Wallpaper | 6-22, 12-11, 15-16 |
| Set Date/Time | 2-30 |
| Set Key Light | 2-35 |
| Set Key Shortcut | 2-11 |
| Set Sent Cancel | 6-19 |
| Set Time Zone | 2-30 |
| Set to Default (S! Applications) | 11-4 |
| Shortcuts | 2-11 |
| Show My Number | 5-21 |
| Show Secret Data | 2-25 |
| Side Keys | 1-3 |
| Signature | 6-18 |
| Simple Menu | 2-10 |
| Slide W paper | 2-19 |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|
| Slider Closed | 1-2 |
| Slider Open | 1-2 |
| Slider Positions | 1-2 |
| Small Light | 1-2 |
| SMS | 6-2 |
| SMS (sending) | 6-7 |
| SMS Settings | 6-31 |
| Snooze | 13-6 |
| Softkeys | 2-3 |
| Software Update | 2-26 |
| Sounds & Alerts | 2-21 |
| Speaker | 1-2 |
| Specifications | 19-14 |
| Specifications (by function) | 19-15 |
| Calling | 19-15 |
| Camera & Imaging | 19-16 |
| Clocks/Gauges Tools | 19-17 |
| Communication Services | 19-17 |
| Connectivity | 19-18 |
| Data Folder & Memory Card | 19-17 |
| Digital TV | 19-16 |
| Doc./Rec. Tools | 19-17 |
| Entertainment | 19-17 |
| Media Player | 19-17 |
| Messaging | 19-15 |
| Network | 19-18 |
| Phone Book | 19-15 |
| PIM/Lifestyle Tools | 19-17 |
| S! Applications | 19-17 |
| Text Entry | 19-15 |
| Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser | 19-15 |
| Speed Dial/Mail | 5-9, 6-18 |
| Standby | 1-9 |
| Status Templates | 12-2 |
| Status Touch | 2-3 |
| Still images (capturing) | 9-4 |
| Adding Frames | 9-7 |
| Camera Effects | 9-8 |
| Continuous Shoot | 9-7 |
| Panorama Picture | 9-8 |



| | |
|---|------------------|
| Scanner | 9-9 |
| Scene | 9-16 |
| Shutter Sound | 9-16 |
| Size (Picture Size) | 9-16 |
| White Balance | 9-16 |
| Still images (capturing & sending).... | 9-4, 9-8 |
| Still images (capturing while recording video) | 9-6 |
| Still images (editing) | 9-10 |
| Additional editing options | 9-17 |
| Changing sizes | 9-11 |
| Face Arrange | 9-12 |
| Panorama Images | 9-13 |
| Stopwatch | 14-2 |
| Strap Eyelet | 1-2 |
| Streaming | 7-3, 7-11 |
| Swap Calls | 5-19 |
| System Graphics | 2-35 |
| System Sounds | 2-34 |

T

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Table of Contents | iii |
| Tasks | 13-4 |
| Text (editing) | 3-6 |
| Text Entry | 3-2 |
| Emoticons | 3-4 |
| Hiragana & Kanji | 3-3 |
| Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric | 3-5 |
| Conversion | 3-5 |
| Input/Conversion | 3-8 |
| Inserting line breaks | 3-8 |
| Inserting Phone Book entry items | 3-8 |
| Inserting spaces | 3-8 |
| Mail & Web Extensions | 3-5 |
| One-Hiragana Conversion | 3-5 |
| Phonetic Conversion | 3-3 |
| Pictograms & Symbols | 3-4 |
| Quick Conversion | 3-5 |
| Reset Log | 3-8 |
| Switching Entry Modes | 3-2 |

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Undo conversion or recover deleted characters | 3-8 |
| Using Character Codes | 3-8 |
| Using Pager Code | 3-8 |
| When Target Word is Not Listed | 3-3 |
| Time Correction | 2-30 |
| Touch Panel | 2-4 |
| Troubleshooting | 19-2 |
| TV (watching) | 8-4 |
| AV Mode | 8-11 |
| Channels (saving) | 8-11 |
| Data Broadcast (Japanese) | 8-5 |
| Help | 8-11 |
| Program Info | 8-6 |
| TV Listing (Japanese) | 8-5 |
| Using wireless Headphones | 8-12 |
| TV Player | 8-7 |
| TV programs (recording/playing) | 8-7 |

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Markers | 8-15 |
| Memory Remaining | 8-15 |
| Playback Pattern | 8-14 |
| Playing split files | 8-14 |
| Recorded programs (deleting) | 8-15 |
| Recorded programs (renaming) | 8-15 |
| TV Timers (watching/recording) | 8-10 |
| Setting Timer via Program Info | 8-16 |
| Timer entries (editing/deleting) | 8-16 |
| Timer log records (opening/deleting) | 8-16 |
| WakeUp TV | 13-8 |

U

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------|
| USB Charge | 1-7, 2-36 |
| User Dictionary | 3-7 |
| USIM Card | 1-4 |
| USIM PINs (→ PIN) | 1-4 |

V

| | |
|-------------------------------|--------------|
| VeilView | 2-22 |
| Vibration | 2-21 |
| Video (deleting) | 10-10 |

| | |
|---|--------------------|
| Video (downloading) | 10-3 |
| Video (playing) | 10-6, 10-8 |
| Video (recording) | 9-6, 9-16 |
| Video (recording & sending) | 9-6 |
| Video Calling | 5-6 |
| Incoming Picture | 5-22 |
| Loudspeaker | 5-15, 5-22 |
| Outgoing Picture | 5-22 |
| Remote Monitor | 5-14 |
| Video Calls (answering) | 5-6 |
| Video Calls (placing) | 5-7 |
| Voice Calling | 5-3 |
| Voice Calls (answering) | 5-3 |
| Voice Calls (placing) | 5-3 |
| Voice Calls (placing while abroad) | 5-4, 5-15 |
| Voice Recorder | 15-9, 15-15 |
| Voicemail | 5-12 |
| Volume (ringtones) | 2-21 |

W

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| WakeUp TV | 13-8 |
| Wallpaper | 2-19 |
| Warranty | 19-33 |
| Weather Indicator | 16-6, 16-11 |
| Weather Indicator List | 19-13 |
| World Clock | 14-4 |

Y

| | |
|----------------------------|------------|
| Yahoo! Keitai | 7-3 |
|----------------------------|------------|

Objectives

Accessing Secret Files/Entries

| | |
|-------------------------|------|
| Data Folder | 12-4 |
| Messaging folders | 6-11 |
| Phone Book | 4-3 |
| Schedules/tasks | 13-3 |

Accessing the Internet

| | |
|-------------------------|-------|
| From message text | 6-22 |
| From scan results | 15-16 |
| Media Player | 10-3 |



- PC Site Browser.....7-4
 RSS Feeds.....7-8
 Yahoo! Keitai.....7-3
- Browsing/Viewing**
 Document Viewer.....15-5
 e-Books.....16-7
 PC Site Browser.....7-4
 S! Information Channel.....16-6
 S! Quick News.....16-5
 Yahoo! Keitai.....7-3
- Calculating**
 Calculator.....13-10
 Expenses Memo.....13-11
- Canceling**
 Alarm.....13-7
 Call Forwarding.....5-13
 Customized Screen.....2-33
 Download Dictionary.....3-7
 Function Lock.....2-24
 Hour Minder.....14-5
 IC Card Lock.....13-13
 Keypad Lock.....2-2
 Large Font Menu.....2-18
 Manner mode.....2-17
 Offline Mode.....2-17
 S! Information Channel.....16-6
 Secret folders.....6-25, 12-12
 Simple Menu.....2-10
 Speed Dial entries.....5-9
 Voicemail.....5-13
- Changing**
 Font Size.....2-18
 Font Weight.....2-18
 Handset Code.....2-23
 Handset mail address.....6-3
 Network Password.....5-20
 PIN & PIN2.....2-36
- Changing Ringtones**
 Phone Book.....4-3
 Ringtone/videos.....2-21
- Via Data Folder.....12-11
- Composing/Sending Messages**
 Feeling Mail.....6-5
 From Call Log records.....5-17
 From Internet pages.....7-6
 From message text.....6-22
 From Phone Book.....4-9
 From received messages.....6-9
 From scan results.....15-16, 15-18
 From Scratch Pad.....15-7
 From sent messages.....6-27
 Graphic Mail.....6-6, 6-20
 PC Mail.....6-17
 S! Mail.....6-4
 SMS.....6-7
- Copying**
 Calculation results.....13-20
 Data Folder files.....12-4
 From text entry window.....3-6
 Scan results.....15-17, 15-19
 Text (e-Books).....16-12
 Text (Internet pages).....7-10
 Text (Messaging).....6-22
 Text (S! Information Channel pages).....16-11
- Downloading**
 Customized Screen.....2-20
 e-Books.....16-7
 Music.....10-3
 S! Applications.....11-3
 Video.....10-3
 Widgets.....16-2
- Exchanging Files**
 Bluetooth®.....18-7
 IC Transmission.....18-5
 Infrared.....18-2
 IrSS Transfer.....18-2
 Mass Storage.....18-10
 MTP Mode.....10-4
- Hiding Files/Entries**
 Data Folder.....12-4
- Messaging folders.....6-11
 Phone Book.....4-3
 Schedules.....13-16
 Tasks.....13-18
- Inserting/Removing**
 Battery.....1-6
 Memory Card.....12-6, 12-7
 USIM Card.....1-5
- Locking/Restricting**
 Application Lock.....2-25
 Call Log.....2-25
 Function Lock.....2-24
 Incoming/outgoing calls.....5-20, 5-21
 Keypad Lock.....2-2
 Mail records.....2-25
 Osaifu-Keitai®.....13-13
 PIN Entry.....2-24
- Managing Schedules**
 Calendar.....13-2
 Tasks.....13-4
- Measuring Time**
 Countdown Timer.....14-3
 Stopwatch.....14-2
- Notifying Phone Number**
 Opening My Details.....2-22
 Via Bluetooth®.....18-12
 Via IC Transmission.....18-11
 Via Infrared.....18-11
- Placing Calls**
 By entering phone numbers.....5-3
 From Call Log records.....5-17
 From Internet pages.....7-10
 From message text.....6-22
 From Phone Book.....4-4
 From scan results.....15-16, 15-18
 International calls.....5-4
 Speed Dial.....5-9
 Video Calls.....5-7
 While abroad.....5-4
- Playing**



- Answer Phone messages/Caller Voice..... 5-5
- Files (Scan Barcode)..... 15-16
- Music 10-5
- Recorded TV programs 8-8
- Streams 7-11
- Video 10-6
- Voice files 15-9
- Voicemail messages..... 5-13
- Rejecting**
 - Calls from public phones 5-20
 - Calls from specific numbers 5-19
 - Calls from unsaved numbers 5-20
 - Calls with undisplayable Caller ID 5-20
 - Calls without Caller ID 5-20
 - Neat Chat requests 17-8
- Resetting/Formatting**
 - All settings 2-37
 - Handset 2-37
 - Memory Card..... 12-7
- Saving**
 - Backup..... 12-10
 - Captured still images..... 9-4, 9-7, 9-9
 - Draft messages 6-19
 - Edited still images 9-10
 - Files (Internet) 7-9
 - Files (S! Information Channel pages) ... 16-11
 - Graphic Mail templates..... 6-6
 - Mail attachments 6-22
 - Notepad entries 15-6
 - Phone Book entries 4-2
 - Recorded video 9-6
 - Scan results..... 15-15, 15-16, 15-18
 - TV channels 8-11
- Saving Phone Book Entries**
 - Add New Entry 4-2
 - From Call Log records 5-17
 - From message text 6-22
 - From received messages 6-22
 - From scan results 15-16, 15-18
- Scanning**
 - Business cards 15-12
 - QR Codes 15-10
 - Text 15-13
- Searching**
 - By Copy Text..... 15-14
 - Messages 6-11, 15-4
 - Music to download..... 10-3
 - Music to play..... 10-5
 - Notepad entries 15-14
 - Phone Book 4-4
 - Text (Internet pages)..... 7-9
 - TV program information 8-11
 - Video to play 10-6
 - Web Search 15-4
- Sending via Mail**
 - Data Folder files 6-5, 12-3
 - Notepad entries 15-14
 - QR Codes..... 15-11
 - Scan results..... 15-17, 15-19
 - Still images 9-4, 9-8
 - URLs..... 7-10, 7-11
 - Video 9-6
 - Voice files 15-15
- Setting Wallpaper**
 - From attached files 6-22
 - From Phone menu 2-19
 - From scan results 15-16
 - Via Data Folder 12-11
- Showing in Standby**
 - Clock/Calendar 2-33
 - S! Applications 11-3
 - Wallpaper 2-19
 - World Clock 14-4
- Using as Alarm Clock**
 - Alarm 13-6
 - Hour Minder 14-5
 - Wakeup TV 13-8
- Using Away from Home**
 - Alarm 13-6
 - Camera 9-2
- Digital TV 8-2
- Hour Minder 14-5
- Osaifu-Keitai® 13-12
- Pen Light..... 2-22
- Scratch Pad 15-7
- Search 15-4
- Voice Recorder 15-9



Warranty & Service

■ Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

■ After-Sales Services

See **P.19-2** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs.

If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.19-34**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
- Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.19-34**). Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.



Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centers

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**
for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**
(International charges apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

| Subscription Area | Service Center | Phone Number |
|--|---------------------|---------------|
| Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui | General Information | ☎0088-240-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎0088-240-113 |
| Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka | General Information | ☎0088-241-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎0088-241-113 |
| Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama | General Information | ☎0088-242-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎0088-242-113 |
| Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa | General Information | ☎0088-250-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎0088-250-113 |



SoftBank 931SH User Guide

February 2009, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 931SH

Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルに協力も。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.



Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.